



This PDF is generated from authoritative online content, and is provided for convenience only. This PDF cannot be used for legal purposes. For authoritative understanding of what is and is not supported, always use the online content. To copy code samples, always use the online content.

# Performance Management Advisors Deployment Guide

Pulse Advisors 8.5.2

12/30/2021



# Table of Contents

<b>Genesys Performance Management Advisors Deployment Guide</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Planning</b>	<b>5</b>
Deployment Summary	9
Prerequisites	11
Prerequisites for Advisors Platform	21
Prerequisites for AGA	30
Prerequisites for CCAdv and WA	35
Prerequisites for FA	43
<b>Create the Advisors Databases</b>	<b>46</b>
Creating a SQL Server Database	47
Creating the Oracle Schema for Advisors	57
Configure Oracle Metrics Data Sources	67
Least Privileges: How to Configure Advisors Database Accounts with Minimal Privileges	71
Advisors Database Deployment with Data Encryption	100
<b>Create the Advisors User Account</b>	<b>104</b>
Advisors Roles	112
<b>Create the Data Manager Base Object Configuration User</b>	<b>126</b>
<b>Deploying Advisors</b>	<b>128</b>
Overview: Configuring Advisors Application Objects and Deploying Modules that are Controlled by SCS	130
Configuring Advisors as a Solution	132
Deploying Advisors Platform	134
Deploying Advisors Genesys Adapter	153
MCR Extensions	163
Deploying CCAdv and WA	164
Deploying Frontline Advisor	176
Deploying SDS and RMC	183
<b>Post Installation Configuration</b>	<b>196</b>
General	197
Cold Standby Configuration and Switchover	198
Change Memory Allocation	202
Change Encrypted Passwords	205
Switching Advisors Oracle database connectivity from JDBC thin driver to Oracle Call Interface (OCI)	206
Deploy and Configure Apache	210
Customizing the Tomcat HTTPS Connector	214



Change a JDBC Data Source Configuration	215
Adjust Logging Settings	217
Advisors Platform	221
Configure Administrative Actions Logs	222
Advisors Genesys Adapter	224
Manage Advisors Stat Server Instances	225
Configure a TLS Connection Between AGA and Stat Server	229
AGA Configuration Parameters	233
CCAdv and WA	237
Configure Resource Management Console Properties	238
Configure Metric Graphing Properties	241
Importing Contact Groups into Advisors	244
Bulk Configuration Overview	254
CCAdv/WA Bulk Configuration – Integrated Mode	255
CCAdv Bulk Configuration – Independent Mode	270
WA Bulk Configuration – Independent Mode	282
Frontline Advisor	296
Frontline Advisor Configuration Parameters	297
<b>Features Overview</b>	<b>300</b>
Advisors Clusters	301
Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby	302
Scaling the Web Services to Increase Capacity	308
Simplified High Availability Architecture	311
Multiple Advisors Deployments on One System	312
Tenant-based Routing of Advisors Objects Among Multiple Adapters and Stat Servers	315
Application Monitoring	318
Health Check API for the Platform Web Services Node	320
Establishing a TLS Connection to Genesys Configuration Server	321
Data Manager	325
Providing a User Interface for Users with Visual Impairment	338
<b>Advisors Software Distribution Contents</b>	<b>339</b>



# Genesys Performance Management Advisors Deployment Guide

Welcome to the *Genesys Performance Management Advisors Deployment Guide*. This document describes how to deploy all Advisors components for a full implementation.

This document is primarily intended for system implementers and system administrators. It has been written with the assumption that you have a basic understanding of:

- computer-telephony integration (CTI) concepts, processes, terminology, and applications
- network design and operation
- your own network configurations

The organization of this Guide is based on the recommended order in which you should approach deployment of Advisors applications.



# Planning

This page contains information to help you prepare to deploy Genesys Performance Management Advisors.

Before you begin deployment, you will make a plan to meet your specific needs. See the [Genesys Hardware Sizing Guide](#) for information about tested environments for Advisors (architecture, number of users per component per installation, and so on). The information is meant to help you develop sizing guidelines for your enterprise.

## General Information about Advisors

The Advisors dashboards are accessed using a commercial browser, such as Mozilla Firefox. Advisors 8.5.x is incompatible with the Advisors browser from pre-8.5.0 releases. See the [Performance Management Advisors](#) section in the [Genesys Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide](#) for information about supported browsers.

The installation process has several distinct sections to accommodate different stages of system preparation. If some or all of the infrastructure software systems are already installed, various steps can be bypassed. It is important to get specific information about the location of these components from the original installer or the package manager.

You cannot mix database types within an Advisors installation. Each installation must be either wholly MSSQL or wholly Oracle.

The Advisors product suite requires the Genesys Configuration Server to be present, along with all its supporting components. Genesys recommends that you review the [Contact Center Objects](#) section in the *Management Framework Deployment Guide* before creating the Advisors business objects; in particular, note that there are specific requirements for [Person objects' user names](#).

The Advisors product suite requires the Genesys Solution Control Server to be present because some Advisors modules integrate with the Solution Control Server. You require Genesys Management Framework components to support the integration. For those modules, Advisors supports warm standby high availability. See [Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby](#) for more information.

### Important

Integration with the Solution Control Server is not optional – it is required in environments that do not use the warm standby setup, as well as those that do.

You must deploy the Contact Center Advisor (CCAdv) application (including XML Generator) and configure one or more Genesys metric data sources to use the Genesys **Base Object Configuration** page in the Administration module. Data manager requests no statistics for pre-configured objects



until the CCAdv module, XML Generator, and Genesys metric data sources are deployed and working.

Advisors Genesys Adapters (AGA) can request statistics for CCAdv configured objects only after you start XML Generator. Previously, starting the Advisors Platform server was sufficient to have the CCAdv adapters request statistics for the CCAdv configured objects.

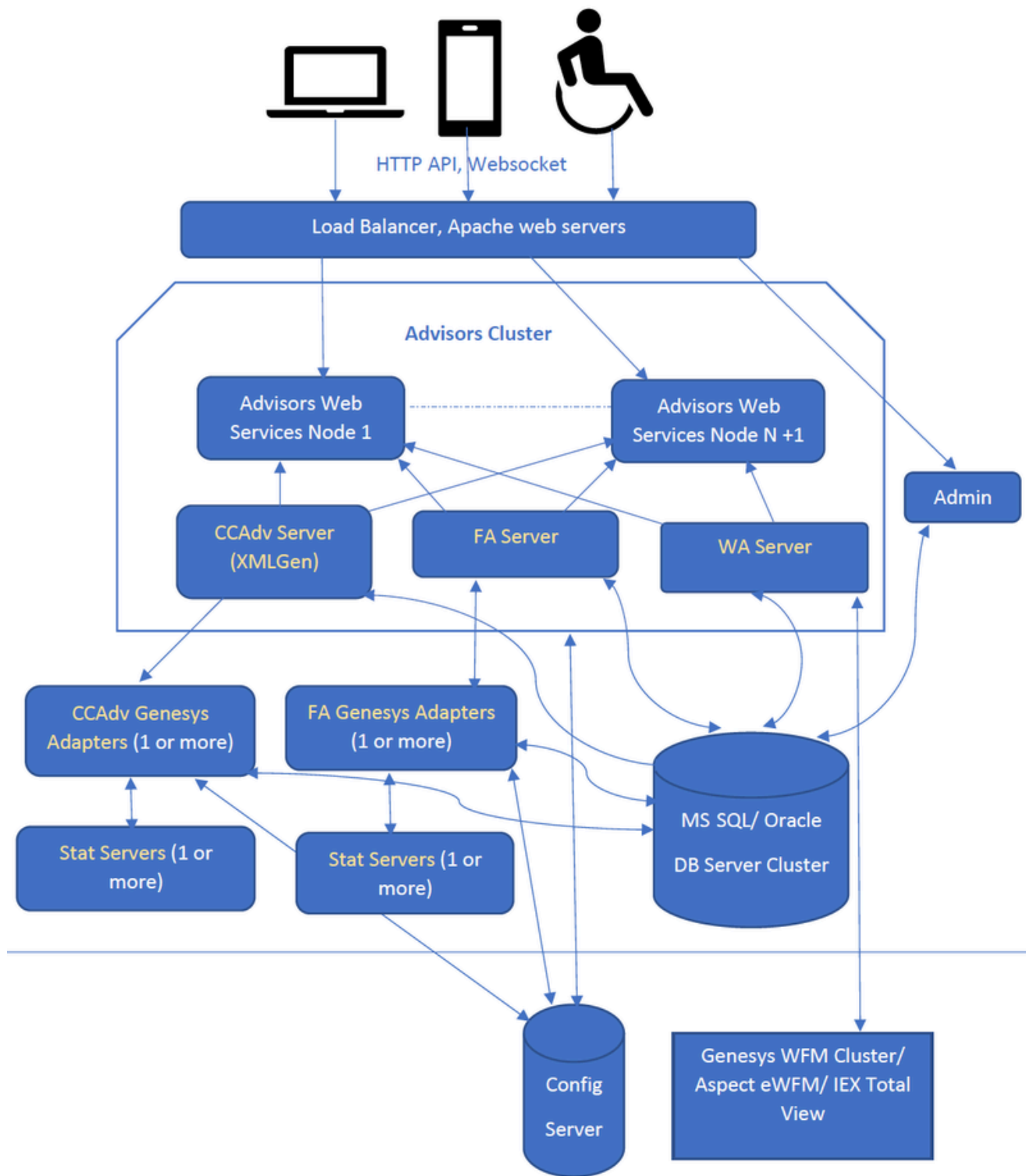
### Important

The Advisors Cisco Adapter is available only for Advisors releases prior to release 8.5.2. Support for Cisco data sources is discontinued starting with Advisors release 8.5.2. Advisors Cisco Adapter release 8.5.100.09 was the final release for this Advisors component.

## Performance Management Advisors Architecture

**NEW** The following figure shows the Performance Management Advisors architecture, including the data flow between Advisors components and other Genesys components. Yellow text in the diagram indicates Advisors components that support primary/backup high availability. Secure connections are supported between the user interfaces and Web servers, and between servers and databases, Genesys Configuration Server, Stat Server, and the Genesys WFM Server.







## About Advisors Applications

The following Table shows the dependencies amongst Advisors components. For each Advisors product in the Application column, the Table identifies any additional Advisor component that must be installed with it.

Application	Requires these Components on the Same System	Requires these Components within the Same Advisors Deployment
Frontline Advisor	Advisors Platform	Advisors Genesys Adapter
Contact Center Advisor	Advisors Platform	Advisors Genesys Adapter in a Genesys environment
Workforce Advisor	Advisors Platform	Contact Center Advisor
Resource Management Console	Advisors Platform Supervisor Desktop Service	Contact Center Advisor

### Important

The startup of CCAAdv XML Generator is no longer dependent on Advisors Platform (Geronimo) startup. Previously, Advisors Platform was required on the server on which you were deploying XML Generator, and you had to start Advisors Platform and ensure it was running before you started XML Generator. XML Generator can be installed on a server with Advisors Platform, but that is not required. XML Generator runs independently of Platform.



# Deployment Summary

The basic sequence of events for deploying Genesys Performance Management Advisors is shown below. This sequence is repeated throughout the book to help you understand where you are in the deployment process.

Advisors integrate with the Genesys Management Layer. The deployment summary below is specific to Advisors deployment; it assumes that you have installed the Local Control Agent (LCA) on any servers that require it, and that you have configured your Application and Host objects. During the deployment of the Advisors components, some installers will prompt you for information about Applications, Hosts, LCA, and the Solution Control Server (SCS).

**NEW** Starting with release 8.5.2, you configure Stat Servers as connections to the Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA) Application object in the Genesys Configuration Server. See [Manage Advisors Stat Server Instances](#) for information.

See the various deployment procedures in [Deploying Advisors](#) for detailed information.

## Deployment Roadmap

1. Install the databases that correspond to the Advisors products you will deploy:
  - a. Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database
  - b. Advisors Platform database
  - c. Metric Graphing database
2. Create the Advisors User and the Object Configuration User accounts.
3. Install the Platform service on servers where it is required for Advisors components. The Platform service is a prerequisite for installing the following components:
  - Advisors Administration
  - Advisors Web Services
  - WA Server
  - FA Server with rollup engine
  - CCAAdv/WA/FA Accessibility services
  - CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console
4. Install each adapter that you will use and configure the adapter Application objects with Stat Server connections.
5. Install the Advisors components for your enterprise:
  - Contact Center Advisor server (CCAAdv XML Generator)
  - Workforce Advisor server
  - Frontline Advisor server



- SDS and the CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console
6. Make any required configuration changes.

## Presentation Nodes

The Platform server nodes on which you install Advisors Web Services are called the *presentation nodes*. These are the nodes to which all user requests will be routed. For example, Apache proxy pass redirects are expected to be routed primarily to these presentation nodes. Installing Advisors Web Services is sufficient to enable all of the Advisors dashboards (that is, the Contact Center Advisor, Workforce Advisor, and Frontline Advisor dashboards).

On these presentation nodes, you can install optional additional services such as the Metric Graphing service, the CCAAdv/WA/FA accessible dashboards, or the Resource Management console.

## Server Nodes

When you install the WA Server or FA Rollup engine server on the Platform server nodes, the nodes are called *server nodes*.

### Important

XML Generator can be installed either in a separate folder or under an existing Platform server installation. In either of those deployments, XML Generator is a separate process from the Platform server process. The only commonality between XML Generator and Advisors Platform is configuration files, which they share; you might decide it's best to install XML Generator in the same folder as the Platform server for that reason.

For performance reasons, Genesys recommends that you avoid installing the server components (WA Server or FA rollup engine) and the Advisors Web Services on the same Platform server node.



# Prerequisites

This page provides general information about the Genesys Performance Management Advisors deployment environment. Also in the **Prerequisites** section is information specific to each Performance Management Advisors component. Read all prerequisites relevant to the components you will deploy before you begin installation. There is a list of questions to consider for each component. There are also Tables in which you can input data for your environment. Use the data in these Tables as a reference guide when you deploy each component. The Advisors components are:

- [Advisors Platform](#)
- [Advisors Genesys Adapter](#)
- [Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor](#)
- [Frontline Advisor and Agent Advisor](#)

If you are migrating your Advisors installation, see the [Pulse Advisors Migration Guide](#).

## Integration with the Genesys Solution Control Server

The following Advisors components are controlled using the Solution Control Server:

- Advisors Genesys Adapter
- Contact Center Advisor XML Generator
- Workforce Advisor WA Server
- Frontline Advisor FA Server (that is, FA with the rollup engine)

Integration with the Solution Control Server means you must:

- Install the Local Control Agent (LCA) on each system that runs any of the preceding components. See the [Management Framework Deployment Guide](#) for installation of LCA.
- Configure a Host in Genesys Configuration Server for each system that runs any of the preceding components. See [Genesys Administrator Extension Help](#) for information.
- Configure an Application in Genesys Configuration Server for each Advisors server that runs one or more of the preceding components. See [Genesys Administrator Extension Help](#) for information.

If you are deploying Advisors in a warm standby configuration, you must also configure a second Application for each Advisors component in Genesys Administrator for the secondary server, and associate the two Applications as a primary and backup pair for failover.

After the Advisors components listed above are installed and controlled by the Solution Control Server, you can monitor them using the Solution Control Interface (SCI) or the Genesys configuration interface that you use, such as Genesys Administrator Extension.

For more details, see [Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby](#) and [Overview](#):



## Configuring Advisors Application Objects and Deploying Modules that are Controlled by SCS.

### Importance of Advisors Platform

Most Performance Management Advisor applications require the installation of Advisors Platform before installation of the application. The applications rely on Advisors Platform to function. The exceptions to this rule are Contact Center Advisor XML Generator and Advisors Genesys Adapter, which do not need the Advisors Platform.

It is very important that you enter complete information on all installation screens when deploying Advisors Platform to ensure correct functionality in the applications.

The Platform installation file installs the following base services:

- Tomcat
- Mail-Delivery service
- Cache service
- Database resource configuration
- Core components for:
  - High availability
  - Authentication
  - Genesys Management Framework integration

### Licenses

For information about licenses (for example, you might require a license for High Availability), see the [Genesys Licensing Guide](#).

### Environmental Requirements

Before you deploy Genesys Performance Management Advisors, ensure you can provide the following operating environment.

#### Networks

Advisors components and all related components (Stat Server, Configuration Server) must be installed on the same network.



## Genesys Configuration Interface

You can use Genesys Administrator for much of the post-deployment configuration associated with Genesys Performance Management Advisors, however you must have access to the Genesys Configuration Manager to perform some of the administrative functions related to Role-Based Access Control (RBAC). While you can use any Genesys configuration interface (Configuration Manager, Genesys Administrator, or GAX) to import Advisors privileges into a Role, or to assign Role-based permissions to Persons, Users, or Access Groups for access to the Advisors business attributes, you can view the Advisors privileges associated with a Role only in Genesys Configuration Manager.

## Operating systems

You can deploy Performance Management Advisors on Microsoft Windows or on Red Hat Linux (64-bit applications running on a 64-bit operating system). The installation of the Advisors products on a Red Hat Linux server differs from the installation of those same products on a Windows operating system. See [Deploying Advisors](#) for procedures.

For information about operating system versions compatible with your Advisors release, see the [Genesys Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide](#) and [Genesys Interoperability Guide](#).

## Using Advisors Installation Wizards on Linux Servers

If you install Advisors components on Linux machines, be aware that there are additional security concerns related to Advisors installation. The Advisors installation wizards are graphical installers. To run these installers as they were intended, you require the X Windows System on your Linux machines.

Without the X Windows System, passwords that you enter during the installation process display in plain text; therefore, during installation, Genesys recommends that you take extra precautions to ensure that only users with the correct security permissions are allowed to view the screen where you are running the Advisors installers.

## Software

The following external software must be installed on the appropriate physical computer involved in Advisors installation:

- Java Development Kit (JDK)
- Apache HTTP Server
  - If the Apache server is installed on the same machine as Advisors Platform, the Apache server must use a port other than 8080 (which is used by Advisors Platform). In most cases, Apache can use port 80.
- One of the following Relational Database Management Systems (RDBMS) – for detailed information, see [Databases](#):
  - Microsoft SQL Server
  - Oracle

If you use Oracle, the appropriate Oracle JDBC driver is also required. You can obtain the driver from the Oracle Web site ([www.oracle.com](http://www.oracle.com)).



The latest supported Oracle drivers are the following:

- For Oracle Database 12c Release 1 (12.1.0.1), use ojdbc7.jar
- For Oracle Database 12c Release 2 (12.2.0.1), use ojdbc8.jar

For information about specific versions of the preceding software components that are compatible with the Advisors release to which you are migrating, see the [Genesys Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide](#).

## MS SQL Server Databases/Oracle Schemas

The following MS SQL Server databases/Oracle schemas are required in an Advisors installation:

- Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database(s)/Oracle schema(s) – Contain transient raw metric data and base object metadata processed by AGA instance(s) and used by CCAdv and WA components.
- Advisors Platform database – Contains various configurations and pre-processed transient metric data. Used by all Advisors components: AGA, FA, CCAdv, and WA.
- Advisors metrics graphing database – Used for storing Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor data for metric graphing. The installation is mandatory even if the metric graphing feature is not used.

Genesys Performance Management Advisors applications support Microsoft SQL Server and Oracle RDBMS. You cannot mix database types within an Advisors installation; each installation must be either wholly MS SQL Server or wholly Oracle. See the [Genesys Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide](#) for supported RDBMS versions and features.

### Warning

Do not use the database scripts that were supplied with the Platform distribution for Hot Fix release 8.5.202.10. Instead, use the database scripts supplied with release 8.5.202.09. If you have already migrated the Platform schema to release 8.5.202.09, no migration scripts need to be applied to the Platform schema during migration to release 8.5.202.10. For migration, follow the relevant [Data Migration Path](#) section in the *Pulse Advisors Migration Guide*.

## Database Recommendations for MS SQL Server Users

If you use MS SQL Server, including SQL Server Cluster, Genesys recommends that you use MS SQL Server Enterprise Edition for optimal performance, although Standard Edition is also supported. You can install the metric graphing feature with or without the MS SQL Server partitioning feature. The partitioning feature provides flexibility and can improve performance; partitioning has more options than non-partitioning for organizing the metric graphing data that comes from Workforce Advisor and Contact Center Advisor. You must use MS SQL Server Enterprise Edition if you plan to install metric graphing and use partitioning. MS SQL Server Standard Edition does not support the partitioning feature.

If you use MS SQL Server Enterprise Edition, but you do not want to use partitioning, install the metric graphing database by running the metric graphing database script located in the folder for the Standard MS SQL Server edition. To be precise, in installations prior to Release 8.5.2, use the script(s)



located in the `\ip\mssql-standard` directory of your CCAdv/WA installation package; starting with Release 8.5.2, use the script(s) located in the `ip\metric-graphing-database-sql\mssql-standard` directory of your Platform installation package.

Starting with Advisors release 8.5.2, Advisors applications support the MS SQL Server AlwaysOn Availability Groups and AlwaysOn Failover Cluster Instances features. However, for performance reasons, Genesys does not recommend placing Advisors databases in MS SQL Server environments where the simple recovery model is not allowed. Advisors databases are very small in size. The data persisted during application operation is transient and, in case of any failure, there is no danger of any data loss as long as you keep a backup of the Platform database that was made after the Advisors configuration was put in place or updated. Any other data will be re-populated once the application is up and running again. If you decide to install the databases with other than simple recovery model, then a thorough schedule of transaction log back up must be put in place, and tuned to achieve the best database performance.

### Database Recommendations for Oracle Users

You achieve the best performance from an Advisors application when it uses an Oracle non-RAC database, ideally dedicated to the Advisors application, or shared with OLTP applications that do not have long-running transactions. Advisors operates with large amounts of data, but all of the data is transient. The data that is permanently saved in an Advisors database is Advisors configuration data, populated during application installation and rarely modified later. Therefore, for recovery purposes, it is sufficient to keep a Data Pump Export of Advisors schemas that includes the latest configuration, as well as all Grants and Roles. In case of a failure, the configuration can be imported from the export files, while all of the operational data will be recovered automatically once the application is up and running again. To improve Advisors application performance, maintain periodic Data Pump Export files and run the database in NOARCHIVELOG mode, if possible.

A well-tuned redo log structure is very important for Advisors performance, as well. Issues with the redo log structure, such as frequent log switches, will negatively impact Advisors performance.

Another condition for good application performance is the presence of adequate statistics for the Advisors schemas. The statistics for Advisors schemas need to be gathered during the typical application load, rather than on the weekends when the contact center activity is low, in order to ensure that the optimizer operates with the representative statistics. The preferred method of gathering statistics for Advisors schemas is the following:



---

```
exec dbms_stats.gather_schema_stats( ownname => '<PLATFORM SCHEMA OWNER>', estimate_percent => DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE, method_opt
=> 'FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO', cascade => true);
exec dbms_stats.gather_schema_stats( ownname => '<AGA METRICS SCHEMA OWNER' , estimate_percent => DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE, method_opt
=> 'FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO', cascade => true);
exec dbms_stats.gather_schema_stats( ownname => '<METRIC GRAPHING SCHEMA OWNER>', estimate_percent => DBMS_STATS.AUTO_SAMPLE_SIZE,
method_opt => 'FOR ALL COLUMNS SIZE AUTO', cascade => true);
```



Any database maintenance event that involves the removal of optimizer data will require that you gather Advisors statistics the next business day, during the typical call activity.

If you use Oracle databases, you can install the metric graphing feature with or without the Oracle database partitioning feature. The partitioning feature provides flexibility; partitioning has more options than non-partitioning for organizing the metric graphing data that comes from Workforce Advisor and Contact Center Advisor. Ensure you have Oracle Database Enterprise Edition with the partitioning option if you plan to install metric graphing and use partitioning.

If you use Oracle database software that does not include the partitioning option or you do not want to use partitioning, use the metric graphing schema scripts contained in the {{oracle-without-partitions}} directory. To be precise, in the installations prior to Release 8.5.2, use the script(s) located in the \ip\oracle-without-partitions directory of your CCAAdv/WA installation package; starting with Release 8.5.2, use the script(s) located in the ip\metric-graphing-database-sql\oracle-without-partitions directory of your Platform installation package. Otherwise, use the script from the oracle-with-partitions directory.

Advisors applications support Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC).

If you use Oracle databases with the Advisors applications, then you also require the appropriate Oracle JDBC driver. You can obtain the driver from Oracle's website, [www.oracle.com](http://www.oracle.com). Advisors requires versions compatible with supported JDK versions. Drivers containing tracing code or compiled with the -g option are not necessary. See the *Genesys Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide* for supported versions of JDK and Oracle JDBC drivers.

Starting with Advisors release 8.5.2, you either need to grant the execute privilege on the SYS.DBMS\_LOCK package to the Platform schema owner, or you need the Oracle JServer component to be installed in the Oracle database.

Note that there are different scripts for installations with or without JServer. In installations without JServer, use the scripts located in the /ip/sql/platform-database-sql/oracle/oracleNoJserver directory of your Platform Installation Package. In installations with JServer, use the scripts from the ip/sql/platform-database-sql/oracle/ folder.

The Advisors Platform schema owner requires some inter-schema privileges, such as the select privilege on all AGA metrics views, the EXECUTE privilege on SYS.GENADVISORSJOBCLASS, or, in Oracle installations without JServer, the EXECUTE privilege on SYS.DBMS\_LOCK, which might disappear after certain operations are applied to Advisors database schemas. Genesys recommends that you always run the verification script, shown below, *after* you have performed one of the following actions and *before* you start an Advisors application:

- you have manually added or modified a data source (ICM\_DATABASE)
- you have implemented a restore operation, such as Data Pump Import
- you have just completed installing or migrating the application

```
DECLARE v_temp NUMBER;
BEGIN

BEGIN
SPADDSOURCEVIEWS();
END;

BEGIN
```



```

SPCOMPILEINVALID();
END;

BEGIN
SELECT 1 INTO v_temp FROM DUAL WHERE EXISTS(SELECT 1 FROM USER_SCHEDULER_JOBS WHERE
                                           JOB_NAME='JOB_R_SPUPDATEDATASOURCESTATUS');
    DBMS_SCHEDULER.DROP_JOB(job_name => 'JOB_R_SPUPDATEDATASOURCESTATUS',
                           defer => false,
                           force => true);
    EXCEPTION WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN NULL;
END;

DECLARE
    M VARCHAR2(4000);
    R NUMBER;
BEGIN
    SPTRUNCATESTAGINGTABLES(
        M => M,
        R => R
    );
END;

BEGIN
SELECT 1 INTO v_temp FROM DUAL WHERE EXISTS(SELECT 1 FROM USER_SCHEDULER_JOBS WHERE
                                           JOB_NAME='JOB_R_SPUPDATEDATASOURCESTATUS');
    DBMS_SCHEDULER.disable(name=>'JOB_R_SPUPDATEDATASOURCESTATUS', force => TRUE);
    EXCEPTION WHEN NO_DATA_FOUND THEN NULL;
END;
END;

```

Start the application only if the preceding script is successful. Otherwise, recover/grant the privileges and re-run the script until it is successful.

If you get the following error, `ORA-28511: lost RPC connection`, then re-run the script right after it fails with this error. This error is not related to insufficient privileges. Normally, this is a temporary issue that is caused by a temporary connection loss, which can occur if you have a data source connected through Oracle heterogeneous services. If the problem persists, ask your DBA to verify the related connectivity setup.

See more details in the [Oracle database creation](#) section of this guide, or in the corresponding Readme files in the `ip\platform-database-sql\oracle` folder of your Platform Installation Package.

## Database Connections Secured with TLS 1.2

Starting with release 8.5.2, you can enable TLS 1.2 for encryption and authentication on Advisors MS SQL Server database connections.

The following are prerequisites for TLS 1.2 connections on MS SQL Server installations:

- Java version 8, as a minimum. See the [Genesys Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide](#) for details about supported Java versions for Advisors releases.
- Any supported version of MS SQL Server starting with MS SQL Server 2008 R2 to MS SQL Server 2014, configured to accept encrypted connections.
- Microsoft JDBC driver 6.2 for SQL Server. This driver is supplied in the Advisors Installation Packages. Advisors installation wizards automatically place the file, `mssql-jdbc-6.2.1.jre8.jar`, in the `lib` folder of each component that requires database access.



- Every machine that hosts Advisors components and that communicates with Oracle over SSL must have a list of trusted certificates installed in a keystore.
- Review all Microsoft recommendations associated with TLS support, as well as descriptions of known issues related to enabling TLS for the database server:

[TLS 1.2 support for Microsoft SQL Server](#)

[SQL Server Release Services](#)

## Database Recommendations for Advisors Cluster Installations

In a situation where CCAdv/WA is deployed on one Platform cluster and FA is deployed on another Platform cluster, Genesys recommends that you use a separate Platform database per cluster; the Platform server clusters should not share a Platform database in this situation.

When the various types of Platform server clusters share one Platform database, those servers are sharing the same Data Manager configuration – especially the Adapter pool configuration that is present in the Platform database – and this can lead to service interruptions when one service is restarted.

If it is absolutely necessary to have the various Platform server clusters for each application share one Platform database, ensure the Administration workbench is installed with only one of the Platform installations. The Advisors Platform installation file gives you the option to install this component. As part of your planning, you should decide which Platform server will have the Administration workbench.

## Database Management Tools

Genesys recommends the following tools to manage Advisors database operations:

- Oracle: SQLPlus
- Microsoft SQL Server: Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio

## Installing Services under Windows 2008 Server

For installations on Windows 2008 Server, the Administrator installing the Advisors components and the Apache Web server should have permissions to install an NT service.

If for some reason granting this access is not possible, you can create shortcuts to the service installers that you may run as an Administrator.

To install the Platform Geronimo NT service, create a shortcut for the `InstallAdvisorsServer.bat` file.

To install the XMLGen NT service, create a shortcut for the `InstallXMLGen.bat` file.

To install Apache (including its NT service), create a short cut for the MSI installer.

Once you have created a shortcut, right click the shortcut, and use the `Run as administrator` option to install the NT service for that component.



## Linked Servers

The creation of linked servers might be required for installations. For a Genesys installation, you might have existing metrics databases. These are either created during the Advisors Genesys Adapter installation(s), or have already been created as part of earlier Genesys Adapter installation(s) (for example, for a previous version). The creation of linked servers in a Genesys environment is required only if the metrics databases exist, or will be created, on different SQL Server instances.

## System clocks

You must synchronize the system clocks of all physical servers used in a given Advisors installation with a central time server.



# Prerequisites for Advisors Platform

Before you deploy Advisors Platform, it is helpful to answer the following questions:

- Will you deploy Advisors Platform on a Linux Red Hat or a Windows platform?
- Is there a need to have **two distinct Advisors deployments on one system?**
- **NEW** Will you use the existing Configuration Server-based authentication system, or the SAML 2.0 Single Sign-On (SSO) login process? If you are planning to use SAML authentication, do you have a SAML 2.0 capable Identity Provider? For example, Microsoft ADFS, Okta, Shibboleth, and so on. Note that the following features are not supported when using the SSO login process:
  - Change password and Forgot password functionality
  - Advisors Resource Management Console (RMC)
- On which server will you install the Advisors Administration module? The Administration module must be installed on at least one system.
- Will you install the modules of Advisors distributed in a cluster on several systems, or all on one system?
- Each system on which you install Advisors Platform or CCAdv XMLGen is a unique cluster node. What will you use for the node ID?
- Where are you installing Advisors (in which directory)? The default location on Windows is C:\ProgramFiles\GCTI\Advisors. If you do not create the directory before deployment, you can create it as part of the deployment process.
- Do you want applications to send email notification messages? From what address will an application send notifications (for example, DONOTREPLY@<your enterprise>.com)? To what email address will an application send notifications?
- Which language(s) will be used for email notifications from the system? (Advisors supports English, German, and French in release 8.5.2.)
- Will you deploy Advisors Web Services on this system? If so, for optimum performance, Genesys recommends that you avoid installing any of the following components on the same system: CCAdv XML Generator, WA Server, or FA Server with rollup engine on the same system.
- Will you later deploy, on this system, one of the following modules?
  - CCAdv XML Generator
  - WA Server
  - FA Server with rollup engine
  - Resource Management Console

If so, when installing Advisors Platform, you must specify a Configuration Server connection that has permission to change applications and agent groups in the Configuration Layer.

In addition, for optimum performance, Genesys recommends that you avoid installing Advisors Web Services on the same system as any of the preceding components.
- Will you connect to the Genesys Configuration Server using TLS?



- Do you want update events from the Configuration Server to update the Advisors database with the new information (that is, do you want to synchronize user updates between Configuration Server and the Advisors database)? If yes, which instance of Advisors Platform will maintain the synchronization (in a clustered environment, a single Platform instance must be designated as responsible for maintaining the user account synchronization)?
- Plan your [integration of Advisors with Solution Control Server](#).
  - Ensure you understand the [limitations and special configuration](#) requirements when planning which Advisors applications will be installed on a server.
  - If you plan an HA deployment that supports warm standby, you might require an additional license. See [Licenses](#).
  - You require a Solution Control Server (SCS), and optionally, the Solution Control Interface (SCI) (you can also use your Genesys configuration interface, such as Genesys Administrator).
  - You must configure Application and Host objects in Genesys Configuration Server for some Advisors modules. See [Integration With Solution Control Server](#).

## Prerequisites

Ensure you have completed all the tasks in the following Table before you begin Advisors Platform deployment.

Y or N	Prerequisite
	A verified Genesys environment must be ready and available.
	<p>In a Genesys environment, you have established connection to the Genesys Configuration Server and to its backup if there is one.</p> <p>If you are later going to deploy one of the following modules on this system, then this connection must have permission to change applications and agent groups in the Configuration Layer:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CCAdv XML Generator</li> <li>• Workforce Advisor Server</li> <li>• Frontline Advisor Server (with the rollup engine)</li> <li>• Resource Management Console</li> </ul> <p>Additionally, if this is a server on which you will later deploy CCAdv XML Generator, Workforce Advisor Server, or the Frontline Advisor Server, you must use a Configuration Server connection that <i>writes</i> to the Configuration Server (avoid using a read-only-type connection to the Configuration Server). The preceding components use the Configuration Server connection properties that you supply during the Advisors Platform installation; these components must be able to write to the Configuration Server to function correctly.</p>
	In a Genesys environment, you have established connection to the Genesys Solution Control Server and to its backup if there is one.
	You have initialized databases—databases must be present and at the current version prior to running the installation files. You have configured accounts that can be used by applications to access the databases.
	Each application server and its associated database are in the same time zone, and the time is synchronized. (The client can be in a different timezone.)
	You have configured the Advisors User account in the Genesys Configuration Server. For more information see <a href="#">Creating the Advisors User</a> .
	You have configured the Object Configuration User in the Genesys Configuration Server.



Y or N	Prerequisite
	For more information, see <a href="#">Data Manager</a> .
	You have installed JDK on the server on which you will be deploying Advisors Platform.
	If you plan to connect to the Configuration Server using TLS, you have configured a secure port for Genesys Configuration Server. For more information, see the <a href="#">Genesys Security Deployment Guide</a> .
	<p>If you plan to connect to the Configuration Server using TLS, you have configured security certificates:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You have configured the security providers and issue security certificates. For more information, see <a href="#">Genesys Platform SDK Developer's Guide</a>.</li> <li>You have assigned a certificate to the Configuration Server host in Genesys Administrator. For more information, see the <a href="#">Genesys Security Deployment Guide</a>.</li> </ul>
	On the system on which you are installing Advisors Platform, you have set the Regional and Language options to the locale for which you want the servers to be deployed.
	If you are going to use two different deployments of Advisors on the same machine, then you have chosen different values for the port numbers that each deployment will use. See <a href="#">Multiple Advisors Deployments on One System</a> .
	<p>You have located the <code>advisors-platform-installer-&lt;version&gt;.jar</code> file on the installation CD and have copied it to the local drive of your server.</p> <p><b>[+] Show additional information for Linux environments</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can start the installer locally or from a remote desktop. To run the installer remotely, use SSH with X11 forwarding enabled: <pre>ssh -X root@&lt;host&gt;</pre> </li> <li>As root, place the <code>advisors-platform-installer-&lt;version&gt;.jar</code> file into the Advisors home directory.</li> </ol>
	<p>You have created the required Application and Host objects in Genesys Administrator or Configuration Server for any server on which you will install the administration module. If you are configuring Advisors in warm standby mode, then you have configured both primary and backup Applications and associated each primary Application with its backup for failover. See <a href="#">Overview: Configuring Advisors Application Objects and Deploying Modules that are Controlled by SCS</a> for information.</p>
	<p>If you are deploying Advisors Platform on a Linux system, you must first create the Advisors group and user. The Advisors Platform is run as the <i>advisors user</i>, which belongs to the <i>advisors group</i>.</p> <p><b>[+] Show Steps</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Open the shell.</li> <li>As root, create the Advisors group: <pre>groupadd advisors</pre> </li> <li>As root, create the Advisors user in the Advisors group:</li> </ol>



Y or N	Prerequisite
	<pre>useradd -s /bin/bash -g advisors advisors</pre> <p>The preceding command creates the /home/advisors directory. If you want a different directory, you can use the following command:</p> <pre>useradd -g advisors -d &lt;path to the desired directory&gt; advisors</pre> <p>You can optionally set a password for the Advisors user:</p> <pre>passwd advisors</pre> <p>Genesys recommends that you mount /home as a separate partition.</p>
	<p>Install Oracle Java Development Kit (JDK).</p> <p><b>[+] Help with Linux environments</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Download the latest version of an Advisors-supported Oracle JDK from <a href="http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html">http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html</a>. The correct file is an archive binary file (.tar.gz). In the following Steps of this procedure, JDK 7 is used as an example, however Advisors release 8.5.2 no longer supports JDK 7. Ensure you enter the correct version number of the Oracle JDK you use in your installation. See the <i>Genesys Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide</i> for information about Java versions supported with each Advisors release.</li> <li>2. As root, navigate to the directory that has the downloaded Oracle JDK and copy the Oracle JDK archive binary file to the Advisors home directory: <pre>cp ./jdk-7u&lt;version&gt;-linux-x64.tar.gz /home/advisors</pre> </li> <li>3. Navigate to the Advisors home directory: <pre>cd /home/advisors</pre> </li> <li>4. As root, unpack the archive and install the JDK: <pre>tar zxvf jdk-7u&lt;version&gt;-linux-x64.tar.gz</pre> </li> <li>5. As root, change the owner of the installed JDK: <pre>chown -R advisors:advisors jdk1.7.0_&lt;version&gt;</pre> </li> <li>6. As root, change to the Advisors user and test JDK: <pre>su - advisors</pre> <pre>./jdk1.7.0_&lt;version&gt;/bin/java -version</pre> <p>You should see output similar to the following:</p> </li> </ol>



Y or N	Prerequisite
	<p>java version "1.7.0_40"</p> <p>Java(TM) SE Runtime Environment (build 1.7.0_40-b43)</p> <p>Java HotSpot(TM) 64-Bit Server VM (build 24.0-b56, mixed mode)</p>
	<p>If you use Management Framework 8.1.x in your enterprise and you will allow users to modify their Advisors login password, you have changed the following two options in Management Framework to true to avoid potential lockouts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the no password change at first login option</li> <li>• the override password expiration option</li> </ul> <p>For information about the no password change at first login and override password expiration options, see <a href="#">Genesys Framework 8.1 Configuration Options Reference Manual</a>.</p> <div> <p><b>Important</b></p> <p>After you install the Advisors applications, you must also ensure you assign the <code>Advisors.ChangePassword.canView</code> privilege to all users. Performance Management Advisors support Genesys Management Framework Release 8.1.x, but do not fully support the password security authentication options available in Management Framework. Users can be locked out of the Advisors interface if you use Genesys Management Framework 8.1.x in your enterprise and do not change the preceding Management Framework options to true and fail to assign the <code>Advisors.ChangePassword.canView</code> privilege to all users.</p> </div>

## Collect Information

During deployment of Advisors platform, the installer prompts you for the information in the following Table. Default values provided by the installer are entered in the Table.

Information	Input
Are you installing the Advisors Administration on this system with this installation of Platform?	
Language(s) to use in email notifications from the system, and the default metric name and description language.	
Location and name of the base directory in which you will install Advisors.	<p>Default on Windows:</p> <p>C:\Program Files\GCTI\Advisors</p> <p>Default on Linux:</p> <p>/opt/gcti/advisors</p>
Location of the Java Development Kit (root directory).	
Port numbers that Tomcat will use. You will typically use the default values that the installation wizard provides, except in the following situations:	Default values are:



Information	Input
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You are going to install two different deployments of Advisors on the same machine, so you require two sets of port numbers. For more information, see <a href="#">Multiple Advisors Deployments on One System</a>.</li> <li>Other software is running on the same host and is already using the ports, in which case you must assign other ports for Tomcat to use.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HTTP port: 8080</li> <li>HTTPS port: 8443</li> <li>AJP port: 8009</li> <li>JMX port: 9999</li> <li>Management port: 8005</li> </ul>
If you are installing the Administration module, then locate the name, in Configuration Server, of the primary Solution Control Server Application that you will use with Advisors.	Default value is SCServer.
<p>If you are installing the Administration module, then you require the following information from the Configuration Server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the name of the XML Generator application</li> <li>the port number on which that application listens</li> <li>the name of the host associated with that application</li> </ul> <p>If you are deploying Advisors in a warm standby configuration, then you require this information for both the primary and backup XML Generator applications.</p>	Default value for both port numbers is 8090.
Node ID for this server in the Advisors cluster. Use letters, numbers, or the dash character. Maximum 16 characters. For more information see <a href="#">Advisors Cluster Information</a> .	
The IP address or host name that other cluster members will use to contact this node (not localhost or 127.0.0.1)	
The port number the members of the cluster will use to communicate. If you are not going to install two different deployments of Advisors on the same machine, use the default value the installer supplies. See <a href="#">Multiple Advisors Deployments on One System</a> for more information.	Default value is 61616.
The local host address (localhost or 127.0.0.1)	
The port numbers used for communication by the cluster's distributed cache. If you are not going to install two different deployments of Advisors on the same machine, use the default values the installer supplies. See <a href="#">Multiple Advisors Deployments on One System</a> for more information.	Default values are 11211 and 11212.
<p>Details to connect to the Genesys Configuration Server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The name of the Configuration Server (the Application name, obtained from Genesys Administrator). If you have Configuration Servers configured in High Availability mode, enter the name of the primary Configuration Server.</li> <li>The name or IP address of the machine that hosts the Configuration Server</li> <li>The port that the configuration server is listening on (if you are not using a TLS connection). If you use a TLS connection, identify the TLS port number.</li> <li>The name of the application that Advisors Platform will use to log in to</li> </ul>	<p>Defaults are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configuration server name: confserv</li> <li>Configuration server port: 2020</li> <li>Application name: default</li> </ul>



Information	Input
<p>the Configuration Server (for example, default)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The user name and password of the account that Advisors Platform will use to connect to the Configuration Server. This is the <i>Advisors User</i> account (see <a href="#">Create the Advisors User Account</a> for information).</li> </ul> <p>If you are later going to deploy one of the following modules on this system, then the connection to the Genesys Configuration Server must have permission to change applications and agent groups in the Configuration Layer:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>CCAdv XML Generator</li> <li>Workforce Advisor Server</li> <li>Frontline Advisor Server (with the rollup engine)</li> <li>Resource Management Console</li> </ul> <p>Additionally, if this is a server on which you will later deploy CCAdv XML Generator, Workforce Advisor Server, or the Frontline Advisor Server, you must use a Configuration Server connection that <i>writes</i> to the Configuration Server (avoid using a read-only-type connection to the Configuration Server). The preceding components use the Configuration Server connection properties that you supply during the Advisors Platform installation; these components must be able to write to the Configuration Server to function correctly.</p> <p>If you will connect to the Configuration Server using TLS, then you also require the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The TLS port number for the Configuration Server.</li> <li>The location of the TLS properties file.</li> </ul> <p>If you use a backup Configuration Server, you require the following information, as well:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The name of the backup Configuration Server (the Application name, obtained from Genesys Administrator).</li> <li>The name or IP address of the machine that hosts the backup Configuration Server.</li> <li>The port on which the backup Configuration Server listens.</li> </ul>	
<p>The name of the Object Configuration User account (configured in Configuration Server). See <a href="#">Create the Data Manager Base Object Configuration User</a> for information.</p>	
<p>Will you synchronize user updates between the Configuration Server and the Advisors database?</p> <p>To synchronize user updates, an installation must include the Administration module.</p>	
<p><b>NEW</b> If you use the SAML 2.0 SSO login process, you require the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The authentication endpoint URL. That is, the URL that users will use to access Advisors applications. For more information, see the <a href="#">Authentication Options</a> description on the <a href="#">Deploying Advisors Platform</a> page in this guide.</li> <li>The precise location of the file that contains the Identity Provider</li> </ul>	



Information	Input
<p>metadata or the URL from which the IdP metadata is served, whichever you use.</p> <p>Note that the following features are not supported when using the SSO login process:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Change password and Forgot password functionality</li> <li>• Advisors Resource Management Console (RMC)</li> </ul>	
<p>The name of the default tenant in the Configuration Server under which the Advisors metadata is maintained.</p> <p>When multiple Advisors suite installations are deployed to use the same Configuration server, the <i>default tenant</i> selected on each Advisors suite installation must be a different tenant. The default tenant configuration is selected when installing the Platform server. Within one Advisors suite, the Platform server for CCAdv/WA and the Platform server for FA can share the same default tenant, but different suites cannot share the same tenant.</p>	
<p>Will you enable <b>Forgot your password?</b> functionality (that is, allow password modification)? If you enable it, you can control user access to it with role-based access control.</p>	
<p>Type of database used in your enterprise (MS SQL or Oracle), and connection details for the Advisors Platform database:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The host name, IP address, or named instance of the server for the Platform database.</li> <li>• Port number that the database listens on (you do not require this information if the server is a named instance).</li> <li>• The Platform database name (the Service name for an Oracle installation).</li> <li>• The Platform database username and password associated with the account that Advisors Platform will use to access the Platform database.</li> <li>• For clustered databases, the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator.</li> <li>• For an Oracle installation, the location of the JDBC driver.</li> </ul>	<p>Default values for port number:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oracle: 1521</li> <li>• MS SQL: 1433</li> </ul>
<p>If you are installing Advisors Web Services with Platform, then you need the connection details for the Advisors Metric Graphing database:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The host name, IP address, or named instance of the server for the Metric Graphing database.</li> <li>• Port number that the database listens on (you do not require this information if the server is a named instance).</li> <li>• The Platform database name (the Service name for an Oracle installation).</li> <li>• The Platform database username and password associated with the</li> </ul>	<p>Default values for port number:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oracle: 1521</li> <li>• MS SQL: 1433</li> </ul>



Information	Input
<p>account that Advisors Web Services will use to access the Metric Graphing database.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• For clustered databases, the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator.</li><li>• For an Oracle installation, the location of the JDBC driver.</li></ul>	
<p>(Optional) If you have enabled the <b>Forgot your password?</b> functionality, you require the following details for the SMTP (mail) service that you will use to send the notification messages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SMTP server host name or IP address</li><li>• The address from which to send application notification email</li><li>• The address to which to send application notification email</li></ul>	



# Prerequisites for AGA

Before you deploy Advisors Genesys Adapter, it is helpful to answer the following questions:

- Will you deploy Advisors Genesys Adapter on a Linux Red Hat or a Windows platform?
- Where are you installing Advisors (in which directory)? The default location is C:\ProgramFiles\GCTI\Advisors.
- What filters do you require for your enterprise? There are no filters included with the installation of AGA. You configure filters as business attributes in Genesys Configuration Server.
- Will you require the Resource Management Console (RMC) for the CCAdv dashboard? RMC requires that you also install the Supervisor Desktop Service (SDS). Also, you must install RMC during a second run of the AGA installation file; you can install only a single component (either the AGA core service or RMC) during a single installer run.
- On which server will you install AGA for CCAdv/WA and on which will you install AGA for FA? Serving both FA and CCAdv/WA from one system is not recommended for performance reasons.
- Do you use a TLS connection to the Configuration Server?
- Are you configuring multiple AGAs with warm standby? Each primary AGA among the multiple adapters configured should use Stat Servers different from those used by other primary adapters. The primary and the backup AGA in a pair must be configured with the same Stat Servers. See [the section on integrating AGA with SCS and the Management Layer](#).

## Prerequisites

Ensure you have completed all the tasks in the following Table before you begin Advisors Genesys Adapter deployment.

Y or N	Prerequisite
	You have initialized databases—databases must be present and at the current version prior to running the installation files. You have configured administrator accounts that can be used by applications to access the databases.
	Oracle JDK is installed. You can download Oracle JDK from <a href="http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html">http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html</a> . See the <a href="#">Genesys Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide</a> for information about supported versions.
	If you are deploying AGA on a Linux platform, you have created the Advisors group and user. This should be done when deploying Advisors Platform on the server.
	<p>You have located the aga-installer-&lt;version&gt;.jar file on the installation CD and have copied it to the local drive of your server. Place the aga-installer-&lt;version&gt;.jar file into the Advisors home directory.</p> <p><b>[+] Show additional information for Linux environments</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. You can start the installer locally or from a remote desktop. To run the installer remotely, use SSH with X11 forwarding enabled:</li> </ol> <pre>ssh -X root@&lt;host&gt;</pre>



Y or N	Prerequisite
	2. As root, place the aga-installer-<version>.jar file into the Advisors home directory.
	A verified Genesys environment is ready and available. This includes (but is not limited to) Configuration Server, Stat Server, and the T-Server(s) and/or Interaction Servers. All of these services must be running prior to deploying the Genesys Adapter.
	You have installed the Local Control Agent (LCA) on the server on which you will deploy AGA. See <a href="#">Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby</a> for more information about integrating Advisors with the Genesys Management Framework.
	You have a Solution Control Server (SCS) available and configured to communicate with the LCAs on the Advisors servers.
	You have created the required Application and Host objects for each AGA instance in Genesys Administrator. If you are configuring Advisors in warm standby mode, then you have configured both the primary and backup Applications and associated the two Applications as a primary and backup pair for failover. See <a href="#">Overview: Configuring Advisors Application Objects and Deploying Modules that are Controlled by SCS</a> for information.
	You have the Genesys Statistics Server ready and available, and the MCR extension package is installed if you will collect interaction queue statistics. If you will use third-party media statistics, the third-party media Stat Server extensions are installed. <b>NEW</b> Starting with release 8.5.2, you must also be prepared to configure the Stat Servers as connections to the AGA Application object. For information, see <a href="#">Manage Advisors Stat Server Instances</a> .
	If the T-Server is the Avaya Communication Manager, make sure that the T-Server option query-agent-work-mode is set to on-restart. This is the default option. To set this option, go to TServer > Option tab > T-Server Option and locate query-agent-work-mode. This setting is required for the AfterCallWork state changes to be visible.
	You have estimated the number of Advisors Genesys Adapters that you require. Depending upon the number of statistics to be served, you might require more than one AGA.

## Collect Information

During deployment of Advisors Genesys Adapter, the installer will prompt you for the information in the following Table.

Information	Input
Application that this instance of AGA serves (CCAdv/WA or FA).	
Location and name of the base directory in which you will install Advisors.	Default on Windows: C:\Program Files\GCTI\Advisors\  Default on Linux: /opt/gcti/advisors



Information	Input
Path to the directory in which log files will be written.	C:\Program Files\GCTI\Advisors\  Default on Linux: /opt/gcti/advisors
Location of the Java Development Kit (root directory).	
Type of database used in your enterprise (MS SQL or Oracle). For an Oracle installation, the location of the JDBC driver.	
Connection details to the AGA metrics database: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The host name, IP address, or named instance of the server on which the Metrics Graphing database is installed.</li> <li>Port number on which the database listens (you do not require this information if the server is a named instance)</li> <li>The Metrics Graphing database name (the Service name for an Oracle installation)</li> <li>The username and password associated with the account that modules will use to access the Metrics Graphing database</li> <li>For clustered databases, the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator.</li> </ul>	Default database port is 1433.
Connection details to the Advisors Platform database (use the same database configuration that was specified when the Advisors Platform database was configured): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The host name, IP address, or named instance of the server on which the Advisors Platform database is installed.</li> <li>Port number that the database listens on (you do not require this information if the server is a named instance)</li> <li>The Platform database name (the Service name for an Oracle installation)</li> <li>The username (schema for clustered databases or an Oracle environment) and password associated with the account that modules will use to access the Platform database.</li> <li>For clustered databases, the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator.</li> </ul>	Default database port is 1433.
Connection details to the Genesys Configuration Server:	Default port that the configuration server is listening on is 2020.



Information	Input
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The name of the Configuration Server (the Application name, obtained from Genesys Administrator). If you have Configuration Servers configured in High Availability mode, enter the name of the primary Configuration Server.</li> <li>• The name or IP address of the machine that hosts the Configuration Server.</li> <li>• The port that the configuration server is listening on (if you are not using a TLS connection). If you use a TLS connection, identify the TLS port number.</li> <li>• The name of the application that Advisors Platform will use to log in to the Configuration Server (for example, default)</li> <li>• The user name and password of the account that Advisors Platform will use to connect to the Configuration Server. This is the 'Advisors User'.</li> </ul> <p>If you will connect to the Configuration Server using TLS, then you also require the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The TLS port number for the Configuration Server.</li> <li>• The location of the TLS properties file.</li> </ul> <p>If you use a backup Configuration Server, you require the following information, as well:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The name of the backup Configuration Server (the Application name, obtained from Genesys Administrator).</li> <li>• The name or IP address of the machine that hosts the backup Configuration Server.</li> <li>• The port on which the backup Configuration Server listens.</li> </ul>	
<p>For integration with the Solution Control Server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The name of the AGA Application; this information must match the information in Configuration Server. If you are deploying Advisors in a warm standby configuration, then you require this information for both the primary and backup AGA Applications.</li> <li>• The port number on which the server's LCA listens.</li> <li>• The name, in Configuration Server, of the Solution Control Server Application that you will use with Advisors.</li> </ul>	<p>Default LCA port is 4999.</p> <p>Default SCS application name is SCServer.</p>
<p>For registration with the Platform database:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The port on which the AGA web services will run (you can use the default port, 7000).</li> <li>• The IP address of the AGA server.</li> <li>• A description of the AGA server (for example, Advisors Genesys Adapter for CCAAdv/WA).</li> <li>• In an Oracle environment, the location of the file that contains the</li> </ul>	<p>Default port number is 7000.</p>



---

Information	Input
<p>advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator.</p>	



# Prerequisites for CCAdv and WA

Before you deploy Contact Center Advisor (CCAdv), Workforce Advisor (WA), or Alert Management (AM) Administration, it is helpful to answer the following questions:

- Will you deploy the software on a Linux Red Hat or a Windows platform?
- Each of the modules associated with a CCAdv/WA installation (CCAdv XML Generator, WA server, Resource Management Console) can be installed on a different machine, or multiple modules can be installed on the same machine. If you are installing multiple modules, on which system will you install each module?
- Some of these modules require integration with SCS. For details see [Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby](#). Ensure you understand the [limitations and special configuration](#) requirements when planning which Advisors applications to install on a server.
- Will you install the CCAdv application, and if so, will you install it with XMLGenerator and CCAdv Web Services on the same system? Or will you install it in distributed mode, with CCAdv Web Services on different system(s) than the XML Generator? If distributed, which systems will host the XML Generator, and which will host the Web Services?
- Each system on which you install XMLGen is a unique cluster node. What will you use for the node ID?
- Will you install the WA application, and if so, will you install it with WA Server and WA Web Services on the same system? Or will you install it in distributed mode, with WA Web Services on different system(s) than the WA Server? If distributed, which systems will host the WA Server, and which will host the Web Services?
- If you will install WA, what are your workforce management data sources and how many do you require?
- Will CCAdv or WA send email notifications about alerts?
- Where did you install Advisors Platform on this system? When installing WA Server or RMC, its installation directory must be the same as the directory where Platform was installed.

## Prerequisites

Ensure you have completed all the tasks in the following Table before you begin Contact Center Advisor/Workforce Advisor deployment.

If you have already installed Advisors Platform on the same system, then you will have done many of these tasks. If you are installing CCAdv XML Generator on a system on which Platform is not installed, then you must do them.

Y or N	Prerequisite
	<b>All Modules</b>
	A verified Genesys environment must be ready and available.
	In a Genesys environment, you have established connection to the Genesys Configuration Server.
	While you can use any Genesys configuration interface to import Advisors privileges into a Role, or to assign Role-based permissions to Users or Access Groups for access to the Advisors business attributes, you can view the Advisors privileges associated with a Role



Y or N	Prerequisite
	only in Genesys Configuration Manager. If you need to view the Advisors privileges associated with Roles regularly, then ensure you have access to Genesys Configuration Manager.
	You have configured the Advisors User account in the Genesys Configuration Server. For more information see <a href="#">Creating the Advisors User</a> .
	You have configured the Object Configuration User in the Genesys Configuration Server. For more information, see <a href="#">Data Manager</a> .
	<p>You have initialized databases—databases must be present and at the current version prior to running the installation files. The following list shows the databases required by each component:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contact Center Advisor XML Generator: Platform database and metric graphing database</li> <li>• Workforce Advisor Server: Platform database and metric graphing database</li> <li>• Accessibility Services, or Resource Management Console: Platform database.</li> </ul> <p>You have configured administrator accounts that can be used by applications to access the databases.</p>
	Advisors Platform is successfully installed on each system on which you will install all modules (it is no longer required for CCAdv XML Generator).
	You have located the ccadv-wa-installer-<version>.jar file on the installation CD and have copied it to the local drive of your server.
	<b>CCAdv XML Generator</b>
	In a Genesys environment, you have established connection to the Genesys Solution Control Server and to its backup if there is one.
	You have installed the Local Control Agent (LCA). See <a href="#">Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby</a> and <a href="#">Overview: Configuring Advisors Application Objects and Deploying Modules that are Controlled by SCS</a> for more information.
	<p>You have created the required Application and Host objects in Genesys Administrator or Configuration Server. If you are configuring Advisors in warm standby mode, then you have configured both primary and backup Applications and associated each primary Application with its backup for failover. See <a href="#">Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby</a> and <a href="#">Overview: Configuring Advisors Application Objects and Deploying Modules that are Controlled by SCS</a> for more information.</p>
	<p>There is a database-level connection between the Advisors Platform database and the datasource database (a Genesys metrics database).</p> <p>To configure the connectivity, see <a href="#">Configure Oracle Metrics Data Sources</a>.</p>
	For Genesys installations, the Advisors Genesys Adapter is installed.
	You have set the Regional and Language options to the locale for which you want the servers to be deployed.
	<b>Workforce Advisor Server</b>
	In a Genesys environment, you have established connection to the Genesys Solution Control Server.
	You have installed the Local Control Agent (LCA). See <a href="#">Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby</a> and <a href="#">Overview: Configuring Advisors Application Objects and Deploying Modules that are Controlled by SCS</a> for more information.



Y or N	Prerequisite
	<p>You have created the required Application and Host objects in Genesys Administrator or Configuration Server. If you are configuring Advisors in warm standby mode, then you have configured both primary and backup Applications and associated each primary Application with its backup for failover. See <a href="#">Overview: Configuring Advisors Application Objects and Deploying Modules that are Controlled by SCS</a> for information.</p>
	<p>Verified workforce management data sources must be ready and available.</p> <p>For Workforce Advisor installations connecting to Genesys WFM, the server running WA must be able to access your Genesys WFM installation.</p> <p>To verify this access, ensure you can do all of the following from your WA server machine:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Successfully ping the server name or IP address specified in the base WFM URL.</li> <li>2. Successfully telnet the server name or IP address and the port specified in the base WFM URL.</li> <li>3. Successfully ping the host name of your Genesys WFM instance as it appears in your WFM server's Genesys Administrator application.</li> </ol> <p>Your WA server must have access to the WFM server by its associated Genesys Administrator host name. If it does not, an UnknownHostException occurs because the SOAP API's service locator provides a host name that is not reachable by the WA server.</p> <p>If you cannot ping or access the Genesys WFM instance using the associated Genesys Administrator host name from the machine hosting the WA server, then you must add the following lines to the hosts file on the machine that will host the WA server:</p> <pre># For WA connectivity with WFM [IP address of WFM server] [Associated Genesys Administrator host name for the WFM instance]</pre> <p>Example: 192.168.98.229 demosrv.genesyslab.com</p> <p>The hosts file is OS-specific. For example, for Windows 2003, the host file resides in the following location: %SystemRoot%\system32\drivers\etc\</p>

## Collect Information

During deployment of Contact Center Advisor/Workforce Advisor, the installer will prompt you for the information in the following Table. Default values provided by the installer are entered in the Table.

Information	Input
<b>All Modules</b>	
<p>Location and name of the base directory in which you will install Advisors.</p> <p>The installation directory for CCAdv/WA modules must be the same as the directory where Advisors Platform was installed. Contact Center Advisor XML Generator does not require Platform, so can be installed independently.</p>	<p>Default on Windows:</p> <p>C:\Program Files\GCTI\Advisors</p> <p>Default on Linux:</p> <p>/opt/gcti/advisors</p>
Location of the Java Development Kit (root directory).	
<b>Contact Center Advisor XML Generator</b>	
Connection details to the Genesys Configuration Server:	Defaults are:



Information	Input
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The name of the Configuration Server (the Application name, obtained from Genesys Administrator). If you have Configuration Servers configured in High Availability mode, enter the name of the primary Configuration Server.</li> <li>The name or IP address of the machine that hosts the Configuration Server.</li> <li>The port that the configuration server is listening on (if you are not using a TLS connection). If you use a TLS connection, identify the TLS port number.</li> <li>The name of the application that XML Generator will use to log in to the Configuration Server (for example, default).</li> <li>The user name and password of the account that XML Generator will use to connect to the Configuration Server. This is the 'Advisors User'.</li> </ul> <div>Important</div> <div> <p><b>NEW</b> If you are installing CCAdv XML Generator on an existing Advisors Platform server, you must use the Configuration Server connection properties that were provided during the Advisors Platform installation. See also the <a href="#">Advisors Platform installation prerequisites</a> for additional information.</p> </div> <p>If you will connect to the Configuration Server using TLS, then you also require the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The TLS port number for the Configuration Server.</li> <li>The location of the TLS properties file.</li> </ul> <p>If you use a backup Configuration Server, you require the following information, as well:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The name of the backup Configuration Server (the Application name, obtained from Genesys Administrator).</li> <li>The name or IP address of the machine that hosts the backup Configuration Server.</li> <li>The port on which the backup Configuration Server listens.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configuration server name: confserv</li> <li>Configuration server port: 2020</li> <li>Application name: default</li> </ul>
<p>The name of the Object Configuration User account (configured in Configuration Server). See <a href="#">Create the Data Manager Base Object Configuration User</a> for information.</p>	
<p>The name of the default tenant in the Configuration Server under which the Advisors metadata is maintained.</p> <p>When multiple Advisors suite installations are deployed to use the same Configuration server, the default tenant selected on each Advisors suite installation must be a different tenant. The default tenant configuration is selected when installing the Advisors Platform server.</p>	
<p>The name, in Configuration Server, of the XML Generator Application. See <a href="#">Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby</a> for more information.</p>	
<p>The name, in Configuration Server, of the primary Solution Control Server application.</p>	Default is SCServer.



Information	Input
The port number on which Local Control Agent listens on this system.	Default is 4999.
Node ID for this server in the Advisors cluster. Use letters, numbers, or the dash character. The maximum 16 characters. For details see <a href="#">Advisors Cluster Information</a> .	
The IP address or host name that other cluster members will use to contact this node (not localhost or 127.0.0.1).	
The local host address (localhost or 127.0.0.1).	Default is localhost.
The HTTP port number the members of the cluster will use to communicate with XML Generator. If you are going to install two different deployments of XML Generator on the same machine see <a href="#">Multiple Advisors Deployments on One System</a> for how to choose this port number.	Default is 8090.
The Java Messaging Service port number the members of the cluster will use to communicate with XML Generator. If you are going to install two different deployments of XML Generator on the same machine see <a href="#">Multiple Advisors Deployments on One System</a> for how to choose this port number.	Default is 61616.
The port number the cluster's distributed caching will use to communicate with XML Generator. If you are going to install two different deployments of XML Generator on the same machine see <a href="#">Multiple Advisors Deployments on One System</a> for how to choose this port number.	Defaults are 11211 and 11212.
The maximum number of times that XML Generator should attempt to connect to a database if there is a connection failure.  This parameter is applicable to retry attempts when XML Generator is already running; that is, after establishing connections at startup.	Default is 32 times.
The number of seconds between CCAAdv XML Generator's reconnection attempts in the event of a database connection failure.  This parameter is applicable to retry attempts when XML Generator is already running; that is, after establishing connections at startup.	Default is 30 seconds.
The following details for the SMTP (mail) service that XML Generator will use to send email: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The host name or IP address of the SMTP server that XML Generator will use to send email.</li> <li>(Optional) The address from which XML Generator will send notification email about alerts.</li> <li>The address to which to send notification email for support staff concerning issues with XML Generator. This address will also appear in the From: header of these types of email.</li> </ul>	
Frequency (in seconds) at which CCAAdv XML Generator stores metrics and threshold violations for the values calculated for the Medium and Long groups of time profiles.  For example, if you enter 120 seconds for this parameter, XML Generator stores metrics and threshold violations for these time profiles no more often than that. However, XML Generator	Default is 120 seconds.



Information	Input
may store the view data less frequently depending upon load and the complexity of the configuration.	
<p>The frequency (in seconds) at which snapshots are stored in the metric graphing database.</p> <p>For example, if you enter 60 seconds for this parameter, XML Generator and WA Server store graphable snapshots no more often than that. However, they may store the snapshots less frequently depending upon load and the complexity of the configuration.</p>	Default is 60 seconds.
Should graphs display values from the previous day? Do <i>not</i> check the <b>Start at midnight</b> box if you want graphs to display values from the previous day.	
<p>What are XML Generator's sources of real-time data? Specify the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the database name or linked server name</li> <li>the source type (Genesys or Cisco)</li> <li>(optional) the display name</li> <li>the threshold update delay—how long CCAdv will wait for new data from this data source before notifying users on the CCAdv dashboard, and, if configured to do so, administrators by email.</li> <li>the Relational Database Management System (RDBMS) type (MS SQL or Oracle)</li> </ul> <p>Up to five data sources may be added to the deployment of XML Generator.</p>	
<b>Workforce Advisor Server</b>	
The name, in Configuration Server, of the WA Server Application.	
The name, in Configuration Server, of the Solution Control Server application.	Default is SCServer.
The port number on which Local Control Agent listens on this system.	Default is 4999.
Specify your workforce management data sources (IEX TotalView, Aspect eWFM, Genesys WFM).	
The 'From' address WA puts in email it sends about alerts to users that are members of distribution lists configured in the Administration module.	
<p>If you are using WFM data from <b>IEX TotalView</b>, then specify:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the port number on which the FTP connection in WA listens for data from TotalView.</li> </ul>	Default port number is 6021.
<p>If you are using WFM data from <b>Aspect eWFM</b>, then specify:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the URL of the directory from which WA reads data from eWFM. For example file:/// followed by the location of the eWFM files. Additional information is provided in the descriptions of installation screens on the <a href="#">Deploying CCAdv and WA</a> page.</li> </ul>	
If you are using WFM data from <b>Genesys WFM</b> , then specify:	Default values are:



Information	Input
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Application name of the WFM server as configured in the Configuration Server.</li> <li>• The URL of the WFM server.</li> <li>• The username WA Server will use to connect to Genesys WFM.</li> <li>• The password WA Server will use to connect to Genesys WFM.</li> <li>• The interval (in ms) at which the Genesys WFM service is polled for forecast data.</li> <li>• The number of hours of forecast metrics to get on each polling.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Application name: WFM_Server</li> <li>• Username and password: no defaults.</li> <li>• Polling interval: 1800000 ms. (30 minutes.)</li> <li>• Number of hours of forecast metric to retrieve: 24 hours.</li> </ul>
<b>CCAdv XML Generator and Workforce Advisor Server</b>	
<p>The time profile to use for default historical metrics that you want to display for agent groups in Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor. The choices are 5 minute sliding, or 30 minute growing. The same choice applies to both applications.</p>	<p>Default is 5 minutes sliding.</p>
<p>Type of database used in your enterprise (MS SQL or Oracle), and connection details to the Advisors Platform database:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The host name, IP address, or named instance of the server on which the Advisors Platform database is installed.</li> <li>• Port number that the database listens on (you do not require this information if the server is a named instance)</li> <li>• The Platform database name (the Service name for an Oracle installation)</li> <li>• The username (the schema for clustered databases or an Oracle installation) and password associated with the account that modules will use to access the Platform database</li> <li>• For Oracle environments, the location of the JDBC driver.</li> <li>• For clustered databases, the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator.</li> </ul> <p>Use the same database configuration that was specified when the Advisors Platform database was configured.</p>	<p>Default values for port number:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oracle: 1521</li> <li>• MS SQL: 1433</li> </ul>
<p>Connection details to the Metric Graphing database:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The host name, IP address, or named instance of the server on which the Metrics Graphing database is installed.</li> <li>• Port number on which the database listens (you do not require this information if the server is a named instance).</li> <li>• The Metrics Graphing database name (the Service name}} for an Oracle installation).</li> <li>• The username and password associated with the account that modules</li> </ul>	<p>Default values for port number:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Oracle: 1521</li> <li>• MS SQL: 1433</li> </ul>



---

Information	Input
<p>will use to access the Metrics Graphing database.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• For clustered databases, the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator.</li></ul>	



# Prerequisites for FA

Before you deploy Frontline Advisor (FA), it is helpful to answer the following questions:

- Will you install the FA application in standalone or distributed mode? If distributed, which FA instance (on which server) will be responsible for data aggregation, and which will be presentation nodes?
- Will you deploy the FA application on a Linux Red Hat or a Windows platform?
- Where are you installing Advisors (in which directory)? The default location is C:\ProgramFiles\GCTI\Advisors.
- Do you want the FA application to send email notification messages? From what address will an application send notifications (for example, DONOTREPLY@<your enterprise>.com)? To what email address will an application send notifications? What is the subject line for such email messages (for example, Frontline Advisor notification)?
- The FA Server requires integration with the Solution Control Server. For details see [Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby](#). Ensure you understand the [limitations and special configuration](#) requirements when planning which Advisors applications to install on a server.

## Prerequisites

Ensure you have completed all the tasks in the following Table before you begin Frontline Advisor deployment.

Y or N	Prerequisite
	The Advisors Genesys Adapter is installed.
	You have initialized databases—databases must be present and at the current version prior to running the installation files. You have configured administrator accounts that can be used by applications to access the databases.
	Advisors Platform is successfully installed on each physical server on which you will install the Frontline Advisor or Agent Advisor application.
	You have installed the Local Control Agent (LCA). See <a href="#">Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby</a> and <a href="#">Overview: Configuring Advisors Application Objects and Deploying Modules that are Controlled by SCS</a> for more information.
	You have created the required Application and Host objects in Genesys Administrator or Configuration Server. If you are configuring Advisors in warm standby mode, then you have configured both primary and backup Applications and associated each primary Application with its backup for failover. See <a href="#">Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby</a> and <a href="#">Overview: Configuring Advisors Application Objects and Deploying Modules that are Controlled by SCS</a> for more information.
	In a Genesys environment, you have established connection to the Genesys Solution Control Server.
	The FA hierarchy is configured on the Genesys Configuration Server and you can identify the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the tenant(s) associated with the hierarchy</li> </ul>



Y or N	Prerequisite
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the path to the hierarchy root folder(s) in Genesys Configuration Server</li> </ul>
	<p>You have located the <code>fa-server-installer-&lt;version&gt;.jar</code> file on the installation CD and have copied it to the local drive of your server. Copy the installation file to the Advisors home directory.</p> <p><b>[+] Show additional information for Linux environments</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ensure the Advisors Platform service has been installed. The Advisors Platform service hosts the FA application.</li> <li>Open the shell.</li> <li>Start the installer locally or from a remote desktop. To run the installer remotely, use SSH with X11 forwarding enabled: <pre>ssh -X root@&lt;host&gt;</pre> </li> <li>As root, copy the <code>fa-server-installer-&lt;version&gt;.jar</code> file to the <code>/home/advisors</code> directory. <pre>cp ./fa-server-installer-&lt;version&gt;.jar /home/advisors</pre> </li> </ol>
	<p>While you can use any Genesys configuration interface to import Advisors privileges into a Role, or to assign Role-based permissions to Users or Access Groups for access to the Advisors business attributes, you can view the Advisors privileges associated with a Role only in Genesys Configuration Manager. If you need to view the Advisors privileges associated with Roles regularly, then ensure you have access to Genesys Configuration Manager.</p>

## Collect Information

During deployment of Frontline Advisor, the installer will prompt you for the information in the following Table.

Information	Input
<p>Location and name of the base directory in which you will install Advisors.</p> <p>(The installation directory for Frontline Advisor server must be the same as the directory where Advisors Platform was installed.)</p>	<p>Default on Windows:</p> <p><code>C:\Program Files\GCTI\Advisors</code></p> <p>Default on Linux:</p> <p><code>/opt/gcti/advisors</code></p>
<p>Are you running FA in standalone or distributed mode? If distributed, which FA instance (on which server) will be responsible for data aggregation? Only one FA instance in a cluster can be responsible for data aggregation; you must enable the rollup engine on this instance. In a warm standby configuration, however, you must enable the rollup engine on both the primary and backup applications. The two applications do not run simultaneously, and in the event of failover, the backup must be able to continue the data aggregation processes.</p>	



Information	Input
<p>You require the following information to integrate with the Genesys Management Layer if you are installing the FA Server (FA that includes the rollup engine):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The FA Server Application name exactly as it appears in Configuration Server.</li> <li>• The port number on which the server's LCA listens.</li> <li>• The name, in Configuration Server, of the Solution Control Server Application that you will use with Advisors.</li> </ul>	<p>Default LCA port is 4999.</p> <p>Default name of the SCS is SCServer.</p>
<p>Information about your hierarchy. You require one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The name of the tenant(s) in the Genesys Configuration Server in which the monitoring hierarchy resides, and the path to the hierarchy root folder(s).</li> <li>• The name of a Person folder in your Genesys configuration interface (for example, Genesys Administrator), and the path to that Person folder. Selecting this option restricts the hierarchy view that is loaded at startup (or reloaded using the reload feature) to the team of agents belonging to that person (supervisor).</li> </ul>	<p>Default tenant name is Resources.</p> <p>Default path to the hierarchy is Agent Groups\\Enterprise.</p>
<p>Type of database used in your enterprise (MS SQL or Oracle), and connection details to the Advisors Platform database:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The host name, IP address, or named instance of the server on which the Advisors Platform database is installed.</li> <li>• Port number on which the database listens (you do not require this information if the server is a named instance).</li> <li>• The Platform database name (the Service name for an Oracle installation).</li> <li>• The username (the schema for an Oracle installation) and password associated with the account that FA will use to access the Platform database.</li> <li>• For clustered databases, the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator.</li> </ul>	<p>Default database server name is localhost.</p> <p>Default port on which the Platform database listens is 1433.</p>
<p>If you will send email notifications from the application, you require the following details for the SMTP (mail) service that you will use to send the notification messages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The address from which to send application notification email.</li> <li>• The address to which to send application notification email.</li> </ul>	




---

# Create the Advisors Databases

Use the procedures in this section to install the databases that Performance Management Advisors require. Installation of the databases is the first step in Advisors deployment.

## Deployment Roadmap

The arrow icon in the following roadmap indicates where you are in the Advisors deployment process.

1.  **[+] Install the databases that correspond to the Advisors products you will deploy.**
  - a. Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database
  - b. Advisors Platform database
  - c. Metric Graphing database
2. Create the Advisors User and the Object Configuration User in Configuration Server.
3. **[+] Install the Platform service on servers where it is required for Advisors components.**
  - Advisors Administration
  - Advisors Web Services
  - WA Server
  - FA Server with rollup engine
  - CCAAdv/WA/FA Accessibility services
  - CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console
4. Install each adapter that you will use and configure the adapter Application objects with Stat Server connections.
5. **[+] Install the Advisors components for your enterprise.**
  - a. Contact Center Advisor server (CCAAdv XML Generator)
  - b. Workforce Advisor server
  - c. Frontline Advisor server
  - d. SDS and the CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console
6. Make any required configuration changes.



## Creating a SQL Server Database

If, due to security restrictions, administrator or security administrator access cannot be granted, the local DBA should implement the steps described in this section.

<tabber>

Create the DB=

1. Connect to your SQL Server instance using Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio with the LoginID assigned to the SQL Server sysadmin server role. It can be sa or any other login assigned to the sysadmin server role and created for you for temporary use during the deployment.

2. In the object explorer right-click on Databases and choose New Database. Open the General screen and configure the following properties. See the Figure that follows—Database Properties - General—as an example.

a. Specify the database name.

**[+] See examples of database names.**

Advisors Component	Recommended DB name	Notes
Platform	advisors_platformdb	Required for Advisors implementations.
CCAdv/WA		Use the Platform and Metric Graphing databases.
FA		Uses the Platform database.
Metric Graphing	advisors_mgdb	Metric Graphing database. Required to run the CCAdv/WA dashboards and CCAdv XML Generator.
Advisors Genesys Adapter	advisors_gametricsdb	AGA metrics database. Used by AGA to transfer Genesys configuration and statistics values to XML Generator for CCAdv/WA.  This database includes a table to support calling list statistics. This database is required for CCAdv/WA and WA server installations only.

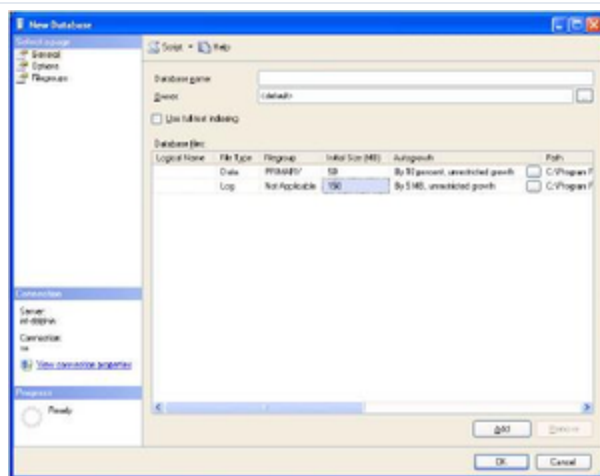
b. Leave the owner as <default>.

c. Specify 50 Mb as the initial data file size with Autogrowth set to By 10%, unrestricted file growth.

d. Specify 150 Mb as the initial log file size with Autogrowth set to By 5MB, unrestricted file growth.

e. Change the pathnames to the data and log files if necessary.





Database Properties - General

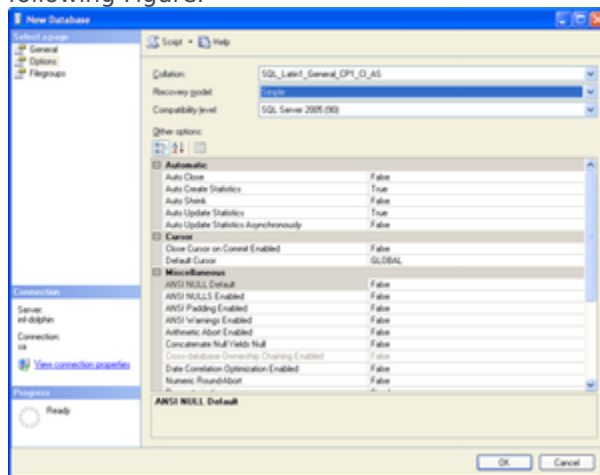
### 3. Open the Options screen.

- In the Collation field, select SQL\_Latin1\_General\_CP1\_CI\_AS.
- In the Recovery model field, select Simple.
- Set Auto Create Statistics and Auto Update Statistics to the value true.

### 4. Click OK.

5. If you want to use a separate schema as a container for the database objects related to the Advisors applications, implement steps 6 and 7. Otherwise proceed to the procedure on the *Create login for Advisors* tab on this page.

6. In the Object Explorer, expand Databases, <dbname\_db>, Security, and Schemas. See the following Figure.



Database Properties - Options

7. Right-click on Schemas, choose New Schema, then specify the schema name. You can choose any schema name that corresponds to your company and SQL Server naming conventions; for example, callcenter01.

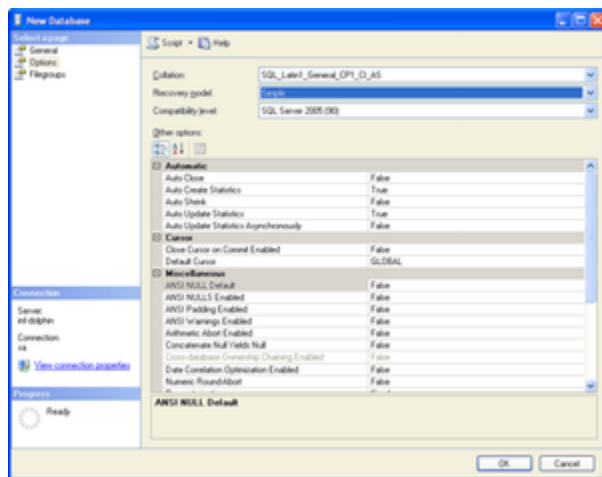
8. Click OK. The database is created and properties are configured.



[-] Create login for DB=

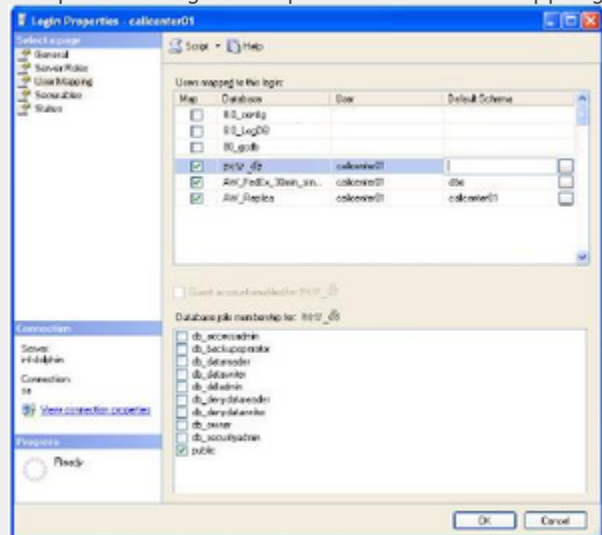
1. In the Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio object explorer, select Server, and then Security.
2. Right-click Logins and choose New login. See the Figure that follows—Server-level Security.

  - a. Specify the login name (in this example, callcenter01).
  - b. Click SQL Server Authentication.
  - c. Specify a password that complies with your enterprise's security policy.
  - d. If strong passwords are part of the security policy, check the Enforce password policy check box.



Server-level Security

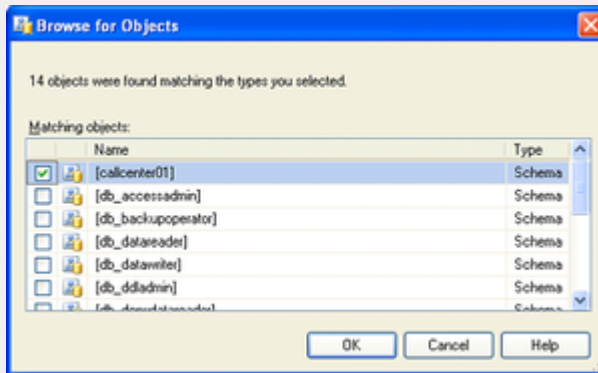
3. Open the Login Properties - User Mapping screen.



Login Properties - User Mapping

  - a. Map the user (callcenter01 in this example) to the newly created database by checking the appropriate check box.





Browse for Objects

- b. Choose dbo as a default schema if you skipped steps 5 and 6 in the procedure on the *Create the DB* tab on this page. Otherwise select the name of the created schema.
- c. Click OK, then confirm your selection by highlighting it and clicking OK again in the *Select Schema* dialog. This returns you to the *User Mapping* screen.
- d. Add the user to one or more database roles by checking the relevant check box in the lower panel of the *Login Properties – User Mapping* window. Select either:
  - The db\_owner database role
  - All three of the db\_datareader, db\_datawriter, and db\_ddladmin roles

**NEW**

Starting with Advisors release 8.5.202, you have an option to configure the database user with least privileges. See [Least Privileges: How to Configure Advisors Database Accounts with Minimal Privileges](#) for more information.

If you choose db\_datareader, db\_datawriter, db\_ddladmin option, ensure that, after you create all of the database objects, you then complete the step described in the *Assigning Additional User Permissions* section on the *Create objects in the DB* tab on this page.

The login to be used by the database is now created and configured.

### |–| Create linked servers for the DB=

Before you start the procedure, identify the data sources that must be accessed. If the customer uses a Cisco environment, then a linked server is necessary for each MSSQL Server used by the CCAdv/WA CISCO ICM databases. Before each linked server is configured, the CISCO ICM database administrator must create a login on each such MSSQL Server and a corresponding AWDB user linked to it. The user must have Read permission on the following AWDB views and a table:

- Agent\_Skill\_Group\_Real\_Time
- Call\_Type
- Call\_Type\_Real\_Time
- Logical\_Interface\_Controller
- Peripheral
- Peripheral\_Real\_Time
- Service



- Service\_Real\_Time
- Skill\_Group
- Skill\_Group\_Real\_Time
- Service\_Member
- Controller\_Time table

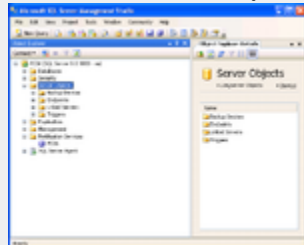
A linked server is normally not required to access the Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database except in some uncommon cases when the Genesys Adapter metrics database and platform database reside on separate MSSQL Servers. However, each view in the Genesys Adapter metrics database must be accessible by the user defined in the Advisors Platform database. The platform user must be granted access to Genesys Adapter metrics database views that have the same names as the preceding list of CISCO ICM views. The Genesys Adapter metrics database also contains two additional views:

- Virtual\_Queue\_Set1\_Real\_Time
- Controller\_Time

These two views must be accessible by the Platform user, also.

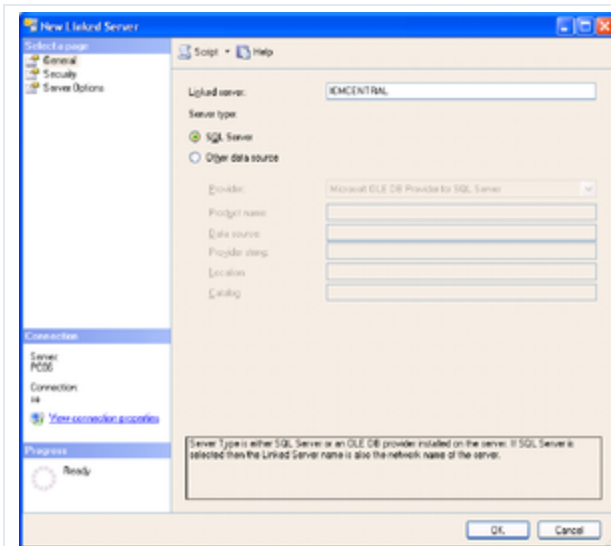
The user can be given the preceding object-level permissions or assigned to an equivalent user-defined database role. If your enterprise's security policy allows it, the user can be assigned to any database standard role that includes the above minimum permissions. For example, the user can be assigned to the standard db\_datareader role.

1. In the Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio object explorer, click Server Objects.



2. Right-click on Linked Servers and choose New Linked Server.... The New Linked Servers screen displays.





New Linked Server Screen

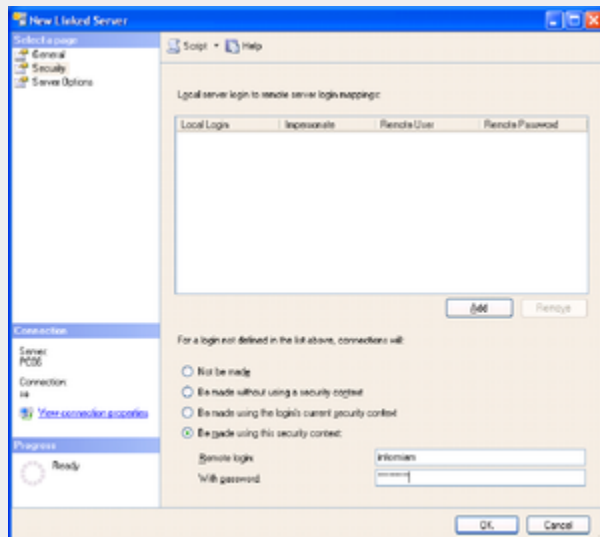
3. Under Server type, select SQL Server.

4. Specify the name of the external SQL database server to be accessed, and click OK.

The New Linked Server – Security screen displays.

5. On the Security screen:

- Select Be made using this security context.
- Specify the remote login and password created by the external administrator for access to the external database.

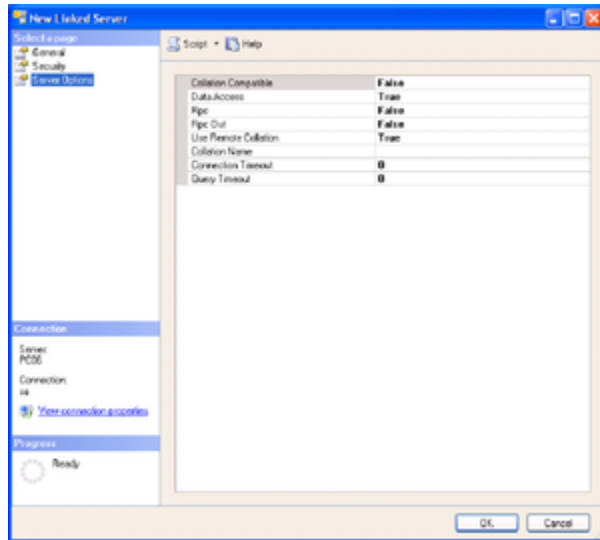


New Linked Server – Security

6. On the Server Options screen:



- Check the Data Access check box and User Remote Collation check box.
- Click OK.



New Linked Server - Server Options

7. To test the linked server connectivity, run some SQL statements from the Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio.

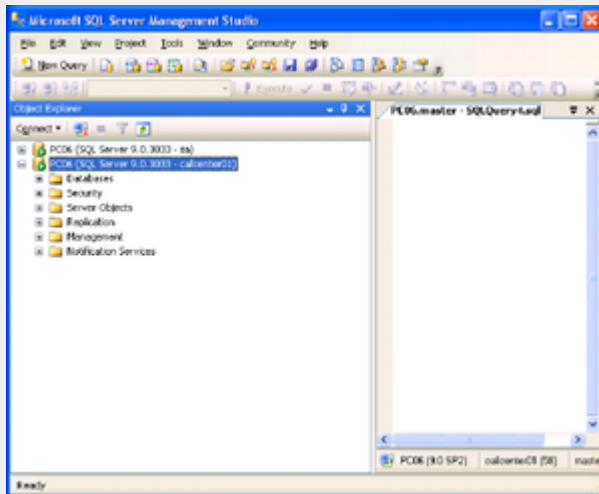
- a. Enter the correct connection details and click Connect.



Connect to the Database Engine

The New Query screen displays.





Microsoft SQL Management Studio - New Query

- b. Click New Query.
- c. Type a query using the following notation:
  - `Select <...> from <Linked Server Name>.<Remote Database Name>.<Remote Database Owner>.<Remote Table Name>`, or
  - `Select <...> from openquery(<Linked Server Name>, 'select <...> from >.<Remote Database Name>.<Remote Database Owner>.<Remote Table Name> [with (<locking hint>)]`

For example, for Cisco:

`Select * from ICM_AWDB1.company_awdb.dbo.Controller_Time`, or

`Select * from OpenQuery([ICM_AWDB1], 'select * from company_awdb.dbo.Controller_Time (nolock)')`

8. For each external data source, repeat this procedure.

### | -| Create objects in the DB=

This step must be run either with the system administrator account or with a user having db\_owner permissions to the database. In addition, the user must have the same default schema as that assigned to the Advisors user (created in the *Create login for Advisors* tab on this page).

The db\_owner role can be given temporarily to the Advisors User for the purpose of running these steps.

1. From Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio, click File. Connect to the database engine as a user meeting the criteria described above.
2. Make sure that you choose the correct database from the list of available databases.
3. From the `../sql_files` folder in the distribution folder, run the SQL script `[databasename]-new-database-<version>.sql` against the newly created database. This script creates the database user objects and populates some tables with default configuration data.
4. Scroll down the query results tab and check for errors. Ignore warnings. The objects are created.



## Assigning Additional User Permissions

**NEW** Starting with Advisors release 8.5.202, you have an option to configure the database user with least privileges. See [Least Privileges: How to Configure Advisors Database Accounts with Minimal Privileges](#) for more information. Otherwise, complete the database user permissions setup as described below.

Assigning additional user permissions is necessary if the created database user is assigned to db\_datareader, db\_datawriter, and ddl\_admin roles but is not assigned to the db\_owner role.

The user assigned to db\_datareader, db\_datawriter, and ddl\_admin roles must be granted execute permissions only on all user stored procedures that exist in the database after the objects are created.

You can use the SQL Server interface to assign the permissions or create a grant permissions script and execute it against the newly created database. The following statement when executed against the newly created database will produce a set of grant permission statements.

To run the script press CTRL/T, then CTRL/E.

Copy the result from the result pane. That is, click on the Result pane, and then click CTRL/A, then CTRL/C. Paste the content (CTRL/V) into the query pane and execute the following script. Before executing the script, remember to change <database user> to the ID for your database user.

```
select 'grant execute on [' + routine_catalog + '].[' + routine_schema + '].[' + routine_name + ']' to
<database user>' from
INFORMATION_SCHEMA.ROUTINES where ROUTINE_TYPE='PROCEDURE'
```

### | Migration Scripts=

Platform database deployment/migration in MSSQL is performed by executing the platform-new-database-<version>.sql script supplied in the distribution for releases up to, and including, Release 8.1.4. Starting in Release 8.1.5, the script is labeled advisors-platform-new-database-<version>.sql. The same script can be applied to a new empty database or a database of any previous version, unless a separate migration script is supplied. If present, the separate migration script has to be used for migrations. The script name has the following pattern: advisors-platform-migrateSchema\_<from version>-<to version>.sql. The script can be applied to any version starting from, and including, the <from version> up to, and including, the <to version> specified in the script name. Always check the Release Notes and "readme" files for details, specifics, and exceptions to the rules described in the documentation guides.

Migration for other databases is performed by executing migration scripts supplied in the distribution.

These follow this pattern:

<database-name>-migration-<old-version>-to-<new-version>.sql

The example below is for the FA database:

```
fa-database-migration-3.1-to-3.3.sql
fa-database-migration-3.3-to-8.0.sql
fa-database-migration-8.0-to-8.1.sql
fa-database-migration-8.1-to-8.1.1.sql
```

To migrate a database across more than one update, run the scripts in sequence from earliest to



latest.



# Creating the Oracle Schema for Advisors

This page describes how to create a generic Oracle schema for Advisors. Each individual Oracle schema in an Advisors implementation has its own creation script in the 8.5 release.

In 8.5.x releases, all Oracle scripts are creation scripts except those that contain the word migrate in the name. Any existing schema with the same name must be dropped prior to running the scripts. Use the migration scripts when upgrading your software version. Always review the "readme" files, if supplied, along with the database scripts. The "readme" files can contain important details, specifics and exceptions related to a particular release and not reflected in the general documentation.

If, due to security restrictions, administrator or security administrator access cannot be granted, the local Database Administrator (DBA) should implement the steps described in the procedure.

The procedure applies to an Oracle user who has permissions to create tablespaces, users, and to grant permissions. Follow your enterprise's policies in production environments. If necessary, have the DBA create tablespaces, users, and grant permissions. Use scripts relevant to your environment after the DBA completes the work. Refer to the script content description contained in [Advisors Software Distribution Contents](#).

**[+] See examples of schema/user names.**

Advisors Component	Recommended schema/user name	Notes
Platform	advisors_platformdb	Required for Advisors implementations.
CCAdv/WA		Use the Platform and Metric Graphing schemas.
FA		Uses the Platform schema.
Metric Graphing	advisors_mgdb	Metric Graphing schema. Required to run the CCAdv/WA dashboards and CCAdv XML Generator.
Advisors Genesys Adapter	advisors_gametricsdb	AGA metrics schema. Used by AGA to transfer Genesys configuration and statistics values to CCAdv/WA.  This schema includes a table to support calling list statistics. This schema is required for CCAdv/WA and WA server installations only.

<tabber>

Before You Begin=

You must perform all of the steps in the procedure on a machine where you have Oracle client or



Oracle instant client installed. The installation scripts require SQL\*Plus, which is installed as part of the Oracle client installation or added in addition to the Oracle instant client installation.

Verify that you have your system or session ORACLE\_HOME or TNS\_ADMIN environment variable and tnsnames.ora content set properly. If you have full Oracle client installed, you can verify the connectivity to the database by running the following command:

```
tnsping <alias for the oracle instance contained in the local tnsnames.ora file>
```

It is important to use *<alias for the oracle instance contained in the local tnsnames.ora file>* as a response on all prompts where the database scripts ask you to *<Enter the database alias>*.

For example:

Your tnsnames.ora contains the following entry:

```
wolf =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = inf-wolf.qalab.com)(PORT = 1521))
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SERVER = DEDICATED)
      (SERVICE_NAME = orcl.qalab.com)
    )
  )
```

On the machine with full Oracle client installation, you can check the connectivity by typing the following command:

```
C:>tnsping wolf
```

The successful message will look as follows:

```
Used TNSNAMES adapter to resolve the alias
Attempting to contact (DESCRIPTION = (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = inf-
wolf.qalab.com)(PORT = 1521))
(CONNECT_DATA = (SERVER = DEDICATED) (SERVICE_NAME = orcl.qalab.com)))
OK (0 msec)
```

|~| Procedure=

## Procedure: Creating the Advisors Oracle Schema

### Steps

1. Copy all of your Oracle database scripts to a folder on the machine where you have the Oracle client installed. The path name for this location must not contain spaces.
2. On the machine where the Oracle client is installed, open a command prompt and change directory to the folder where the database scripts now reside.



3. Review the "readme" files located in the script directories.
4. Database scripts are encoded in Windows-1252 format. Before you start SQL\*Plus, be sure to set your session to a value with this encoding. See the Oracle [NLS\\_LANG FAQ](#) for more information. Set the NLS\_LANG variable and start SQL\*Plus. The figure below shows an example of the commands for Linux and Oracle 11g.

```
login as: oracle
oracle@inf-rac2's password:
Last login: Mon Apr 18 15:56:29 2016 from ca-to-a
[oracle@inf-rac2 ~]$ export NLS_LANG=AMERICAN_AMERICA.WE8MSWIN1252
[oracle@inf-rac2 ~]$ echo $NLS_LANG
AMERICAN_AMERICA.WE8MSWIN1252
[oracle@inf-rac2 ~]$ sqlplus /nolog

SQL*Plus: Release 11.2.0.1.0 Production on Mon May 9 20:41:02 2016

Copyright (c) 1982, 2009, Oracle. All rights reserved.

SQL>
```

SQL Command Prompt

5. Using a user account that has DBA privileges (for example, SYSTEM), enter the following at the prompt to connect to the Oracle instance:  
`conn <User>/<Password>@<alias for the Oracle instance contained in your local tnsnames.ora file>`  
 See the following figure for an example of the command entry.

```
login as: oracle
oracle@inf-rac2's password:
Last login: Mon Apr 18 15:56:29 2016 from ca-to-a
[oracle@inf-rac2 ~]$ export NLS_LANG=AMERICAN_AMERICA.WE8MSWIN1252
[oracle@inf-rac2 ~]$ echo $NLS_LANG
AMERICAN_AMERICA.WE8MSWIN1252
[oracle@inf-rac2 ~]$ sqlplus /nolog

SQL*Plus: Release 11.2.0.1.0 Production on Mon May 9 20:41:02 2016

Copyright (c) 1982, 2009, Oracle. All rights reserved.

SQL> conn system/Oracle01@oradv
Connected.
SQL>
```

SQL Command Prompt 2

6. If the tablespaces are already present, you can go to [Step 7](#). Otherwise, create tablespaces as described in this Step.  
 You can either edit the tablespace script in order to adapt it to your environment, or you can create the tablespaces manually. Genesys recommends that you create at least a dedicated data tablespace and a dedicated temporary default tablespace for each Advisors user/schema.
  - a. You, as a privileged user, or your DBA if you do not have privileged user access, must run the tablespace script contained in the installation package (the script name ends with `_TBS.sql`). To run the tablespace script, enter `@<script name>` at the SQL\*Plus prompt. For example:  
`@advisors-platform-8.5.xxx_TBS.sql`, if you are creating a Platform schema; or  
`@gc-metrics-8.5.xxx_TBS.sql`, if you are creating an AGA METRICS schema; or  
`@mg-8.5.xxx_TBS.sql`, if you are creating a metric graphing schema.

See the following figure for an example of the command entry. The figure shows an example that uses Linux. The name of the script supplied in the installation package contains the specific release number of Advisors Platform that you will be installing.



```

login as: oracle
oracle@inf-bobcat-10's password:
Last login: Mon Apr 18 14:15:00 2016 from ca-to-a
[oracle@inf-bobcat-10 ~]$ cd /home/oracle/tmp/DeploymentScripts
[oracle@inf-bobcat-10 ~]$ export NLS_LANG=AMERICAN_AMERICA.WE8MSWIN1252
[oracle@inf-bobcat-10 ~]$ echo $NLS_LANG
AMERICAN_AMERICA.WE8MSWIN1252
[oracle@inf-bobcat-10 ~]$ sqlplus / as sysdba

SQL*Plus: Release 12.1.0.2.0 Production on Mon Apr 18 14:22:33 2016

Copyright (c) 1982, 2014, Oracle. All rights reserved.

Connected to:
Oracle Database 12c Enterprise Edition Release 12.1.0.2.0 - 64bit Production
With the Partitioning, OLAP, Advanced Analytics and Real Application Testing opt
ions

SQL> alter session set container =bobcat101;

Session altered.

SQL> @advisors-platform-8.5.101.07_TBS.sql

```

SQL Command Prompt 3

- b. When prompted, enter the full path to your base data file directory including the trailing slash. This is the path on the server where ORACLE is installed; you are indicating where to put the files that will contain the tablespace data. The script will either:

- Create the tablespaces if they do not yet exist, or
- Skip the creation if the tablespaces are already present.

Note that the script will preserve your SQL\*Plus connection, which you can reuse later in this procedure.

The following figure shows an example.

```

Connected to:
Oracle Database 12c Enterprise Edition Release 12.1.0.2.0 - 64bit Production
With the Partitioning, OLAP, Advanced Analytics and Real Application Testing opt
ions

SQL> alter session set container =bobcat101;

Session altered.

SQL> @advisors-platform-8.5.101.07_TBS.sql

*****
Enter a full path to the base data file directory with the trailing slash
// For Unix-like systems and \ for Windows).
For Example /u02/app/oracle/oradata/oradb/(''Note trailing slash).
If you want to place the files into a separate folder,
make sure that you create it before you run this script
and include it into the full path
You can cancel the script at any time by entering ctrl/c
Full base data file directory path with trailing slash=+ORADATA/datafile/

```

SQL Command Prompt 4

- c. Verify the results of your script execution:
- Using a separate command prompt/terminal session, examine the runTbsCre.log file. You can find this log file in the same directory as your installation scripts.
  - Browse your data file location to ensure that the files were created. Alternatively, you can run the following query from any Oracle client connected as the system user:  
SELECT \* FROM dba\_data\_files

7. Starting with Advisors Platform release 8.5.101.17, you must create a job class with the name GenAdvisorsJobClass before the creation of the Platform schema objects. Only a privileged user, either you or your DBA, can create the job class. The privileged user must run the advisors-platform-<version>\_DBMS\_SCHEDULER.sql script supplied in the installation package. Verify the results as shown in the following figure.



```

Tablespace creation complete!!
You can verify the installation in runTbsCre.log.
SQL> @advisors-platform-8.5.101-SNAPSHOT_DBMS_SCHEDULER.sql
SQL> column JOB_CLASS_NAME Format a30
SQL> column LOGGING_LEVEL Format a30
SQL> SELECT JOB_CLASS_NAME,LOGGING_LEVEL
 2 FROM DBA_SCHEDULER_JOB_CLASSES
 3 WHERE JOB_CLASS_NAME='GENADVISORSJOBCLASS';
GENADVISORSJOBCLASS OFF
SQL>

```

SQL Command Prompt 5

8. Create the user/schema and schema objects.

**[+] Show steps to create the user/schema and schema objects separately**

- a. You, as a privileged user, or your DBA if you do not have privileged user access, must run the user creation script that is contained in the installation package (the script name ends with `_User.sql`). To run the user creation script, enter `@<script name>` at the prompt. For example:

`@advisors-platform-8.5.xxx_User.sql`, if you are creating a Platform schema; or  
`@gc-metrics-8.5.xxx_User.sql`, if you are creating an AGA METRICS schema; or  
`@mg-8.5.xxx_User.sql`, if you are creating a metric graphing schema.

The script prompts you to enter the user/schema name, the password, the default data and temporary tablespace names, and the SID. Genesys recommends that you create dedicated data and temporary default tablespaces for each Advisors user/schema. Make sure that the tablespaces are created and that you know the names before you start the user/schema creation procedure.

In the local client `tnsnames.ora` file, find the alias for the Oracle instance, and enter it at the SID prompt. For example, if your local client `tnsnames.ora` file contains the following entry for the target Oracle instance, you would enter `bobcat101` at the `SID>` prompt (note that the alias name is case-sensitive):

```

bobcat101 =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = inf-wolf.qalab.com)(PORT = 1521))
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SERVER = DEDICATED)
      (SERVICE_NAME = orcl.qalab.com)
    )
  )

```

See the following figure for an example of the command entry.



```

oracleplnf bobcat 10:~/AppDeploymentScripts

SQL> @advisors-platform-8.5.101_User.sql

*****
The following script creates the platform user/schema
It grants all permissions necessary for Advisors application
You can cancel the script at any time by entering ctrl/c
Enter the database instance alias (SID)
SID? bobcat101
Enter a default tablespace name for platform user(must be already in place)
If skipped USERS tablespace will be assigned as platform default tablespace
> PLT_DATA
Enter a temporary tablespace name for platform user(must be already in place)
If skipped TEMP tablespace will be assigned as platform
default temporary tablespace
> PLT_TEMP
Enter a schema name for the platform db objects
For example: AdvPit
Platform schema name? advisors_plt85101
Enter a password(no special characters) for advisors_plt85101
For example: callcenter01
Password for advisors_plt85101? password123
*****
-- advisors_plt85101's DEFAULT TABLESPACE: PLT_DATA
-- advisors_plt85101's TEMPORARY TABLESPACE: PLT_TEMP
CREATE USER advisors_plt85101 IDENTIFIED BY password123 DEFAULT TABLESPACE PLT_
DATA QUOTA UNLIMITED ON PLT_DATA TEMPORARY TABLESPACE PLT_TEMP;
GRANT CREATE SESSION,CREATE TABLE,CREATE OPERATOR,CREATE TYPE,CREATE CLUSTER,CRE
ATE TRIGGER,CREATE INDEXTYPE,CREATE PROCEDURE,CREATE SEQUENCE,CREATE VIEW,CREATE
 MATERIALIZED VIEW ,CREATE JOB TO advisors_plt85101;
GRANT UNLIMITED TABLESPACE TO advisors_plt85101;
GRANT EXECUTE ON SYS.GENADVISORJOBCLASS TO advisors_plt85101;
CONN advisors_plt85101/password123@bobcat101;
SHOW USER;

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

Elapsed: 00:00:00.00

User created.

Elapsed: 00:00:00.38

Grant succeeded.

Elapsed: 00:00:00.07

Grant succeeded.

Elapsed: 00:00:00.01

Grant succeeded.

Elapsed: 00:00:00.08
Connected.
USER is "ADVISORS_PLT85101"
User creation complete!

```

Creating the User/Schema and Schema Objects Separately: SQL  
Command Prompt 1

- b. After the script completes and SQL\*Plus exits, examine the runUsrCre.log file (located in the same directory as your installation scripts) to verify the results.
- c. Connect as the owner of the Platform schema and execute the object creation script that is contained in the installation package (the script name ends with \_ObjectsPlus.sql). To execute the object creation script, enter `@<script name>` at the prompt. For example: `@advisors-platform-8.5.xxx_ ObjectsPlus.sql`, if you are creating a Platform schema; or `@gc-metrics-8.5.xxx_ ObjectsPlus.sql`, if you are creating an AGA METRICS schema; or `@mg-8.5.xxx_ ObjectsPlus.sql`, if you are creating a metric graphing schema.

The script prompts you to enter tablespace names for various groups of tables and indexes, as well as the SID. Genesys recommends that you create dedicated default tablespaces for each Advisors user/schema and that, at the very least, you put the tables into those dedicated default tablespaces. The tablespaces must be created and available after the user/schema is created.

In the local client tnsnames.ora file, find the alias for the Oracle instance, and enter it at the SID prompt. For example, if your local client tnsnames.ora file contains the following entry for the target Oracle instance, you would



enter bobcat101 at the SID> prompt (note that the alias name is case-sensitive):

```
bobcat101 =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = inf-wolf.qalab.com)(PORT = 1521))
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SERVER = DEDICATED)
      (SERVICE_NAME = orcl.qalab.com)
    )
  )
```

See the following figure; the figure shows empty entries at all prompts for tablespaces, which means that all the data and indexes will go to the default tablespace, which, in this case, is PLT\_DATA. For better performance, you can separate indexes, group the tables by I/O patterns. Each prompt for a tablespace represents a table or index group.

```
oracle@inf-bobcat101:~/App/DeploymentScripts
SQL> conn advisors_plt85101/password123@bobcat101
SQL> show user;
USER is 'ADVISORS_PLT85101'
SQL> @advisors-platform-8.5.101_ObjectsPln.sql

*****
The following script creates objects within the current schema
and assigns tables and indexes to the existing tablespaces.
You must be connected as the schema owner in order to run this script.
You can cancel the script at any time by entering ctrl/c
Provide tablespace names for each group of objects when requested
Check the exact names of the existing tablespaces in the result returned
by the following query: select * from user_tablespaces
Press "Enter" key where you want to use
the user default tablespace
Check the user default and temporary tablespaces in the result returned
by the following query: select * from user_users
*****
Enter a tablespace name created for Advisors configuration
Enter a tablespace name created for configuration indexes
Enter a tablespace name created for alerts and threshold violations
*****
Enter tablespace names created for staging area
If only one tablespace is allocated for staging area,
enter the same name on each request
Press "Enter" key everywhere where you want to use
the user default tablespace
*****
Agent activity tablespace name
Queue activity tablespace name
Agent Group activity tablespace name
Merge tablespace name
Index tablespace name for staging
*****
Creating objects. Please wait...
Once the script exits Sql*plus, you can verify the installation in runObjCre.log
Downloaded from Oracle Database 12c Enterprise Edition Release 12.1.0.2.0 - 64bit Production
With the Partitioning, OLAP, Advanced Analytics and Real Application Testing options
(connected@bobcat101 DeploymentScripts)1
```

Creating the User/Schema and Schema Objects Separately: SQL  
Command Prompt 2

If you prefer, you can use SQL Developer, instead of SQL\*Plus, to create objects within the schema that you created earlier. You must connect as the owner of the corresponding schema, and then execute the object creation script (the script name ends with either `_ObjectsDefault.sql` or `_ObjectsCustom.sql`). The difference between the two scripts is:

- the `_ObjectsDefault.sql` script silently creates all objects and places them into your default tablespace.
  - the `_ObjectsCustom.sql` script issues prompts, allowing you to place the table groups or indexes into different tablespaces. This script requires an explicit tablespace name on every prompt, even if you want to place the table group into your default tablespace.
- d. After the script completes and SQL\*Plus exits, examine the `runUsrCre.log` file (located in the same directory as your installation scripts) to verify the results.

**[+] Show steps to create the user/schema and schema objects in one step**



If you have privileged user access, you can create the user/schema and the objects in one step. You must use SQL\*Plus – and only SQL\*Plus – to execute the script.

- a. You, as a privileged user, or your DBA if you do not have privileged user access, must run the script contained in the installation package (the script name ends with `_Schema.sql`). To run the script, enter `@<script name>` at the prompt. For example:  
`@advisors-platform-8.5.xxx_Schema.sql`, if you are creating a Platform schema; or  
`@gc-metrics-8.5.xxx_Schema.sql`, if you are creating an AGA METRICS schema; or  
`@mg-8.5.xxx_Schema.sql`, if you are creating a metric graphing schema.

The script prompts you to enter the user/schema name, the password, the default data and temporary tablespace names, and the SID. Genesys recommends that you create dedicated data and temporary default tablespaces for each Advisors user/schema. Make sure that the tablespaces are created and that you know the names before you start the schema creation procedure.

In the local client `tnsnames.ora` file, find the alias for the Oracle instance, and enter it at the SID prompt. For example, if your local client `tnsnames.ora` file contains the following entry for the target Oracle instance, you would enter `bobcat101` at the `SID>` prompt (note that the alias name is case-sensitive):

```
bobcat101 =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = inf-wolf.qalab.com)(PORT = 1521))
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SERVER = DEDICATED)
      (SERVICE_NAME = orcl.qalab.com)
    )
  )
```

After the user is created, the script prompts you to enter tablespace names for various groups of tables and indexes. Genesys recommends that, at the very least, you put the tables into the dedicated default tablespaces that you created for each Advisors user/schema. The tablespaces must be created and available before you execute the `_Schema.sql` script.

See the following figure; the figure shows empty entries at all prompts for tablespaces, which means that all the data and indexes will go to the default tablespace, which, in this case, is `PLT_DATA`. For better performance, you can separate indexes, group the tables by I/O patterns. Each prompt for a tablespace represents a table or index group.





## Creating the User/Schema and Schema Objects in One Step: SQL Command Prompts

- b. After the script completes and SQL\*Plus exits, examine the `runUsrCre.log` and `runObjCre.log` files (located in the same directory as your installation scripts) to verify the results.

No additional action is required if you create the Platform schema with the scripts supplied in the installation package - that is, using only the `advisors-platform-<version>_Schema.sql` script (run by a privileged user), or using the `advisors-platform-<version>_User.sql` script (run by a privileged user) *plus* the `advisors-platform-<version>_Objects<...>.sql` script (run by the Platform user), as described above.

If the user is created in any way other than what is described in this Step, then an additional action is required; see [Step 9](#).

- If the user is created in any way other than what is described in **Step 8**, then a privileged user, either you or your DBA, must ensure that all privileges listed in the `advisors-platform-<version>_User.sql` script are granted to the Platform user, either directly or through database roles.

**NEW** If you are installing or migrating to Advisors release 8.5.202.09, and have an installation with CISCO ICM, you need to apply the `advisors-platform-8.5.202.09 CiscoPostInstall.sql` post-



---

installation script that can be found in the \ip\platform-database-sql\oracle\CISCO folder. The script must be applied before you start any of the 8.5.202.09 components for the first time.

If you make a mistake and start the components before you apply this script, stop all components, verify that there are no live sessions from any machine that hosts Advisors components, connect as the Platform schema owner, and issue the following command:

```
DELETE tmpImportCallType;  
COMMIT;
```

Once that is done, re-run the `advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_CiscoPostInstall.sql` script.

In addition to the preceding action, you can also repeat the verification script described in the [Database Recommendations for Oracle Users](#) section of this guide.

There is no negative impact if the `advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_CiscoPostInstall.sql` script is executed more than once, or executed in installations that do not use CISCO ICM.

This concludes a general Oracle schema/user setup where each created user is the owner of the corresponding schema: Platform, AGA metrics, or metric graphing. You can now specify the user in the relevant Advisors installation wizard screens related to database connectivity. Starting with Advisors release 8.5.202, you have the option to configure database access through runtime users with least privileges, rather than through users who are "schema owners". The procedure to create runtime users is implemented on top of the general Oracle schema/user setup. See [Least Privileges: How to Configure Advisors Database Accounts with Minimal Privileges](#) for more information.



# Configure Oracle Metrics Data Sources

Use the information on this page to configure a connection to your metrics data sources.

## To AGA Metrics Schema on the Same Oracle Instance as the Platform Schema

Use the information on this tab to configure connectivity to AGA metrics where the AGA data source is on the same Oracle instance as the Platform schema.

1. Do one of the following:

- Connect as a privileged user (such as system) and grant the following select permissions to the platform user-schema owner:  

```
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.AGENT_SKILL_GROUP_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.CALL_TYPE TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.CALL_TYPE_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.CONTROLLER_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.INTERACTION_QUEUE TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.INTERACTION_QUEUE_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.LOGICAL_INTERFACE_CONTROLLER TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.PERIPHERAL TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.PERIPHERAL_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.QUEUE_SET1_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.QUEUE_SET2_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.SERVICE TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.SERVICE_MEMBER TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.SERVICE_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.SKILL_GROUP TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON <aga metrics schema>.SKILL_GROUP_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
```
- Connect to the AGA metrics schema as its owner and execute the following statements:  

```
GRANT SELECT ON AGENT_SKILL_GROUP_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON CALL_TYPE TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON CALL_TYPE_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON CONTROLLER_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON INTERACTION_QUEUE TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON INTERACTION_QUEUE_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON LOGICAL_INTERFACE_CONTROLLER TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON PERIPHERAL TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON PERIPHERAL_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON QUEUE_SET1_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON QUEUE_SET2_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON SERVICE TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON SERVICE_MEMBER TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON SERVICE_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON SKILL_GROUP TO <platform user>;
GRANT SELECT ON SKILL_GROUP_REAL_TIME TO <platform user>;
```



2. Test the connectivity by verifying that the following select statements return 0 or more rows if executed by Platform user-schema owner:

```
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.AGENT_SKILL_GROUP_REAL_TIME;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.CALL_TYPE;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.CALL_TYPE_REAL_TIME;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.CONTROLLER_TIME;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.INTERACTION_QUEUE;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.INTERACTION_QUEUE_REAL_TIME;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.LOGICAL_INTERFACE_CONTROLLER;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.PERIPHERAL;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.PERIPHERAL_REAL_TIME;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.QUEUE_SET1_REAL_TIME;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.QUEUE_SET2_REAL_TIME;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.SERVICE;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.SERVICE_MEMBER;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.SERVICE_REAL_TIME;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.SKILL_GROUP;
SELECT * FROM <aga metrics schema>.SKILL_GROUP_REAL_TIME;
```

## To AGA Metrics Schema on a Different Oracle Instance than the Platform Schema

Use the information on this tab to configure connectivity to the AGA metrics data source when it is installed on a different Oracle instance than the Platform schema. Before you begin:

- The `tnsnames.ora` file, located on the Oracle instance where the Platform schema resides, must contain a SID entry for the Oracle instance where the AGA metrics schema is located.

Example:

```
atlanta12 =
  (DESCRIPTION =
    (ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = p3458atl12.us.prod.company.com)(PORT = 1521))
    (CONNECT_DATA =
      (SERVER = DEDICATED)
      (SERVICE_NAME = orcl12.us.prod.company.com)))
```

You can locate your `tnsnames.ora` file in the `$ORACLE_HOME/network/admin` directory.

- To ensure a database link can be created, the user who will perform this operation must be granted the following permission:  
`GRANT CREATE DATABASE LINK TO <platform user>`

1. Create a database link inside the Platform schema or a public database link.



For example:

```
CREATE DATABASE LINK atl12.gcldb81 CONNECT TO "<aga metrics
schema>" IDENTIFIED BY "<aga metrics schema owner pwd>" USING
'atlanta12';
```

2. Test the links from SqlDeveloper or run a select statement as Platform user.

For example:

```
SELECT * FROM Controller_Time@atl12.gcldb81;
```

## To Cisco ICM Data Source from Platform Database on Oracle Instance

Use the information on this tab to configure connectivity to the Cisco ICM data source (ICM AWDB) when the Platform database is installed on an Oracle instance. Before you begin:

- Identify all ICM AWDBs that must be accessed by CCAAdv and WA, as well as the SQL Servers that host those databases.
- Ensure that SQL Server accounts exist on all SQL Servers that host the ICM AWDBs accessed by CCAAdv and WA.
- Ensure that each MSSQL Server account (see preceding bullet) has the MSSQL master database as a default database.
- Ensure that each ICM AWDB that must be accessed by CCAAdv and WA has a user mapped to the relevant SQL Server account (see preceding bullets). The minimum requirement is that this user has permissions to select the data from:

### **CISCO source AWDB views**

```
Agent_Skill_Group_Real_Time
Call_Type
Call_Type_Real_Time
Logical_Interface_Controller
Peripheral
Peripheral_Real_Time
Service
Service_Real_Time
Skill_Group
Skill_Group_Real_Time
Service_Member
and
AWDB Controller_Time table
```

- Ensure the user has the preceding object-level permissions or this user is assigned to an equivalent user-defined database role. If it is allowed by your organization's security policy, the user can be assigned to any database standard role that includes the above minimum permissions. As an example, the user can be assigned to the standard db\_datareader role.



- Ensure the Oracle Database Gateway for SQL Server is installed.
- Ensure the Gateway Initialization parameter file(s) exists for each Cisco ICM data source used by CCAdv and WA.
- Ensure the Oracle Net Listener configuration file has an entry for every gateway instance that exists for Cisco ICM data sources.
- Ensure the Oracle database that hosts the Platform schema is configured for Gateway Access and its tnsnames.ora configuration file contains a separate entry for each gateway instance. The alias from each such entry is used as database link creation parameters.

For detailed information about SQL Server security configuration, see the online documentation for Microsoft SQL Server at <http://msdn.microsoft.com>.

For detailed information about Oracle Database Gateway for SQL Server installation and configuration, see [http://docs.oracle.com/cd/E18283\\_01/gateways.112/e12061/sqlserver.htm](http://docs.oracle.com/cd/E18283_01/gateways.112/e12061/sqlserver.htm).

1. Create – or have your DBA create – a separate database link for each ICM source using a corresponding gateway instance. The links can be created inside the Platform schema or they can be created as public database links.

Create database links using the following pattern:

```
CREATE [PUBLIC] DATABASE LINK <arbitrary mssql database link name>  
CONNECT TO "<MSSQL username created for you in ICM awdb>"  
IDENTIFIED BY "<MSSQL password created for you in ICM awdb>" USING  
'<gateway_sid>';
```

where gateway\_sid is the entry of the corresponding gateway instance contained in the tnsnames.ora file.

For example:

```
CREATE PUBLIC DATABASE LINK "prod67543.icm1" CONNECT TO "user1"  
IDENTIFIED BY "password1" USING 'dg4mssql2';
```

2. Test the links from SqlDeveloper or run a select statement against the whole set of views as Platform user.

For example:

```
SELECT * FROM "Controller_Time"@prod67543.icm1;
```

The configuration of ICM data sources is now complete.



# Least Privileges: How to Configure Advisors Database Accounts with Minimal Privileges

In the general Advisors installation scenario with Oracle, the Oracle schema owners are also used by Advisors components to access the database during runtime.

Starting with Advisors release 8.5.202, access to an Oracle database 12c R2 can be configured in such a way that the Advisors components access the database through low-privileged, runtime users that are not schema owners. The runtime users are granted only DML privileges and the privileges to execute a selected list of stored procedures that operate only within the Advisors database environment.

Advisors installations with MS SQL Server could be configured to access the database through low-privileged runtime users in previous releases. In release 8.5.2, a dedicated security procedure has been added to help further restrict the privileges and allow access only to a minimum set of necessary stored procedures and functions, rather than access to all.

There can be different acceptable scenarios for configuring database accounts with reduced privileges to achieve the same goal. However, this page contains only recommended scenarios that were tested and have passed the evaluation.

This page describes how to configure users with least privileges, which can be used by Advisors components during runtime. You must set up the runtime users before you run the Advisors installation wizards.

The procedures on this page are divided by RDBMS type:

- [Microsoft SQL Server](#)
- [Oracle](#)

## Microsoft SQL Server

This section includes information about the Advisors database users, and the privileges associated with each, for the following setup and installation tasks:

- [Creating the Advisors Databases](#)
- [Creating the Database Objects](#)
- [Creating the Runtime User](#)
- [Running the Bulk Configuration Tool](#)
- [Running the Advisors Installation Wizards](#)



## Creating the Advisors Databases

You require one privileged database user. That user sets up all three Advisors databases. The privileged user requires privileges to create a database, create a login account, create a user, and to back up the database.

## Creating Database Objects

The database owner (db owner) of all three Advisors databases creates the database objects in each database. The db owner executes the "new-database" SQL scripts, which are provided in the Advisors Installation Package (IP) for each database:

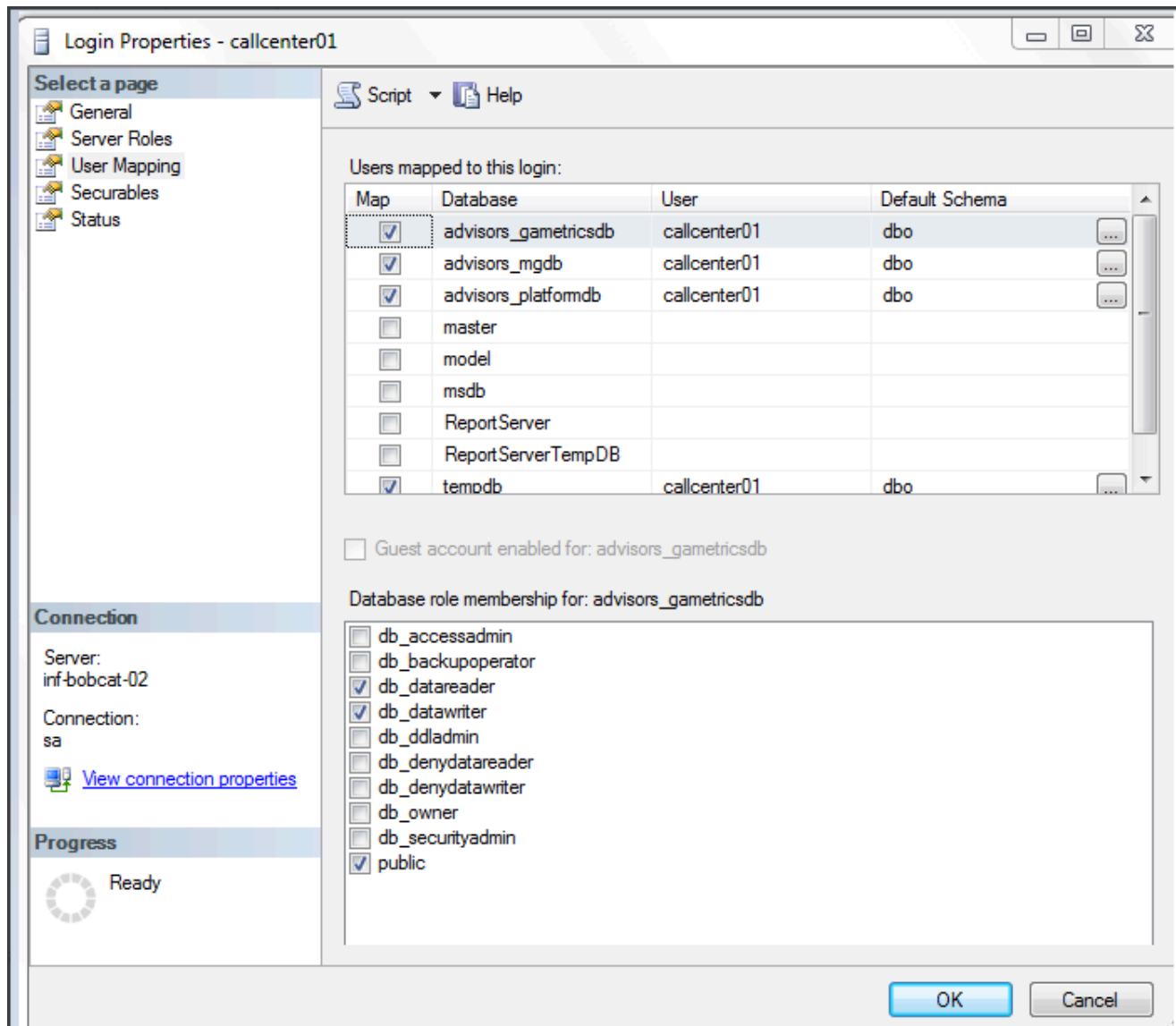
- Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA) metrics database creation script is located in the Advisors Genesys Adapter IP.
- Advisors Platform database creation script is located in the Advisors Platform IP.
- Advisors metric graphing database creation script is located in the Advisors Platform IP starting with Advisors release 8.5.202, and in the Contact Center Advisor/Workforce Advisor IP in earlier releases.

## Creating the Runtime User

You must make the low-privileged user, to be used during Advisors application runtime, a member of the [db\_datareader] and [db\_datawriter] roles in each of the three Advisors databases. The low-privileged user account must have a default schema that holds all objects within each database.

For example, let's say that three databases are created by the "sa" user during the database creation stage. The "sa" user creates a "callcenter01" user login account, which is mapped to each of the three databases and is assigned a default schema, "dbo".





Once the user is added, the db owner must execute the `spGrantExecute` procedure, located in each of the three Advisors databases. The `spGrantExecute` procedure has the same name in each database, but has different content depending on the database that holds it. For example:

- AGA metrics database:

```
USE [advisors_gametricsdb]
GO

EXEC [dbo].[spGrantExecute]
@UserName = N'callcenter01'

GO
```

- Advisors metric graphing database:



```
USE [advisors_mgdb]

GO

EXEC [dbo].[spGrantExecute]
@UserName = N'callcenter01'

GO
```

- Advisors Platform database:

```
USE [advisors_platformdb]

GO

EXEC [dbo].[spGrantExecute]
@UserName = N'callcenter01'

GO
```

It is possible to set up a separate "data reader/data writer" user for each database. However, in that case, the Platform user must also be made a data reader in the Advisors metrics database, or, at a minimum, must be granted a select permission on all views contained in the AGA metrics database. A corresponding database user name must be provided in the spGrantExecute procedure and in the Advisors installation wizard prompts.

If a CISCO data source is present, the Platform user must be granted permissions [as described elsewhere in guide](#).

## Running the Bulk Configuration Tool

The bulk configuration tool supplied with the Advisors Platform IP is used outside of the applications and is a candidate for a high-privileged user. The spGrantExecute procedure excludes the bulk configuration procedures. Genesys recommends that privileges to execute all procedures with names that start with "spBlk" be temporarily granted to a user when it is necessary to use the bulk configuration tool, and revoked once the Advisors configuration is complete and needs to be frozen. At this point, Genesys also recommends that you back up the Platform database.

## Running the Advisors Installation Wizards

Once the database setup is complete, you can run the Advisors installation wizards. Enter the runtime database user name(s) in the installation wizard prompts for each database. The following examples show the runtime user specified in all of the database user-related fields.

- Advisors Genesys Adapter installation wizard > AGA metrics database



The screenshot shows the 'Advisors Genesys Adapter Installer' window. The title bar includes the Genesys logo and the text 'Advisors Genesys Adapter Installer'. Below the title bar is a blue header with the Genesys logo and the word 'GENESYS'. The main content area is titled 'Adapter Metrics Database'. It contains several input fields: 'Database server:' (with a placeholder 'localhost:1521/orcl'), 'Database name / Service name:' (containing 'advisors\_gametricsdb'), 'Database port:' (containing '1433'), 'Database user:' (containing 'callcenter01'), 'Database user password:' (masked with dots), and 'Confirm database user password:' (masked with dots). A black circle is drawn around the 'Database name / Service name', 'Database port', and 'Database user' fields. At the bottom of the window are four buttons: 'Cancel' (with a red X icon), 'Back' (with a blue left arrow icon), 'Next' (with a blue right arrow icon), and 'Install' (with a green right arrow icon).

- Advisors Genesys Adapter installation wizard > Platform database





**Advisors Genesys Adapter Installer**

**GENESYS™**

**Advisors Platform Database**

Database server:

Database name / Service name:

Database port:

Database user:

Database user password:

Confirm database user password:

- Platform installation wizard > Platform database



**Advisors Platform Database**

Host name, IP address, or named instance of the database server for the Platform database.

Database server:

The port number that the database server is listening on. If database server is a named instance, then omit the port number. (1433 is the default port number for MS SQL Server).

Database port number:

Database name:

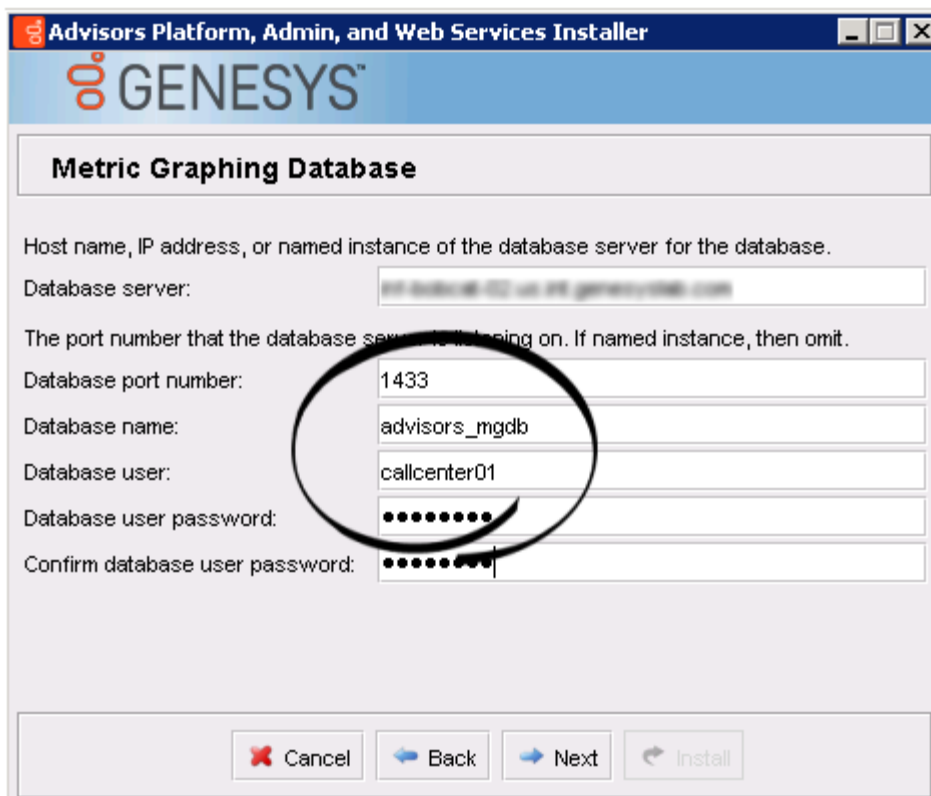
Database user:

Database user password:

Confirm database user password:

- Platform installation wizard > metric graphing database





**Advisors Platform, Admin, and Web Services Installer**

**GENESYS™**

**Metric Graphing Database**

Host name, IP address, or named instance of the database server for the database.

Database server:

The port number that the database server is listening on. If named instance, then omit.

Database port number:

Database name:

Database user:

Database user password:

Confirm database user password:

- CCAdv/WA installation wizard > Genesys data source



**Advisors CCAAdv/WA/RMC Installer**

**GENESYS™**

**Data Source 1**

Data source to be used by XMLGen and Workforce Advisor (if installed.) Please see the Deployment Guide for database name format explanation.

**Do not re-enter a data source already in the CCA/WA database.**

Database Link Name: advisors\_gametricsdb

Data Source Type: GENESYS ▼

Display Name (optional):

Threshold Update Delay (minutes): 5

RDBMS Type: SQL Server ▼

Add another data source: ☒

Buttons: Cancel, Back, Next, Install

- CCAAdv/WA installation wizard > Platform database



Advisors CCAAdv/WA/RMC Installer

**GENESYS™**

**Genesys Advisors Platform Database**

Host name, IP address, or named instance of the database server for the Platform database.

Database server: sql-backend-02.us.mt.genesysweb.com

The port number that the database server is listening on. If database server is a named instance, then omit the port number. (1433 is the default port number for MS SQL Server.)

Database port number: 1433

Database name: advisors\_platformdb

Database user: callcenter01

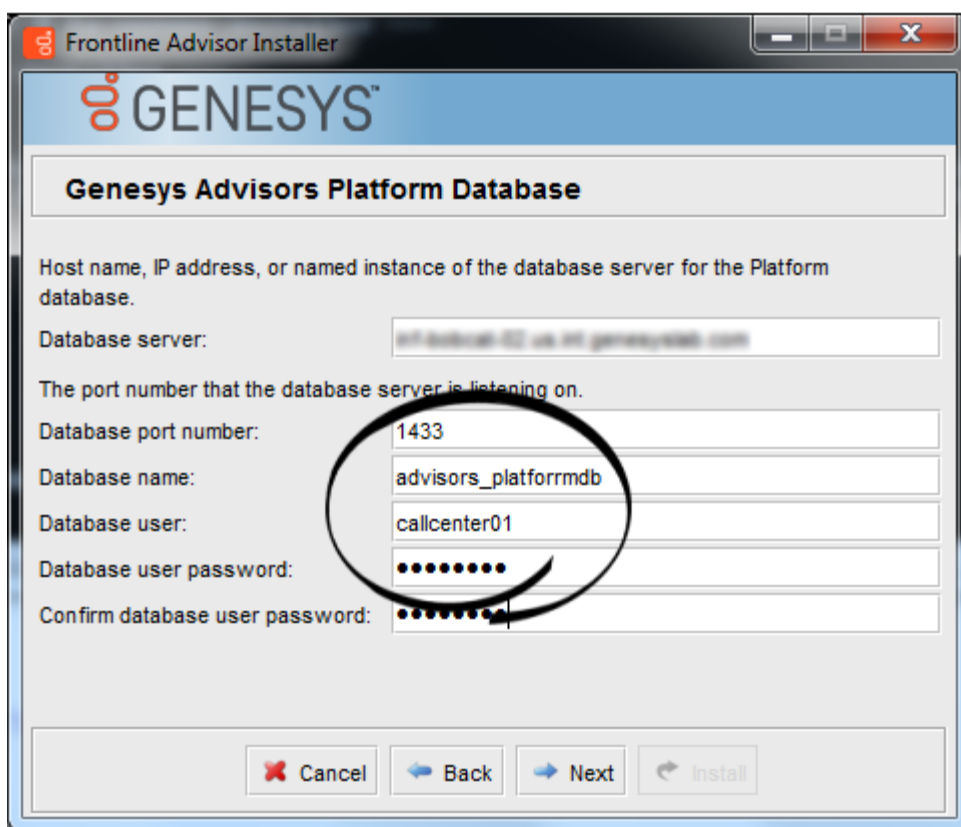
Database user password: .....

Confirm database user password: .....

Cancel Back Next Install

- Frontline Advisor installation wizard > Platform database





Frontline Advisor Installer

**GENESYS™**

**Genesys Advisors Platform Database**

Host name, IP address, or named instance of the database server for the Platform database.

Database server:

The port number that the database server is listening on.

Database port number:

Database name:

Database user:

Database user password:

Confirm database user password:

## Oracle

This section includes the following topics:

- [Prerequisites](#)
- [Creating the Runtime User](#)
- [What to do if something goes wrong](#)
- [Running the Advisors Installation Wizards](#)
- [Alternative Method to Configure Oracle Runtime Database Access](#)
- [Reusing Application and Database Roles](#)

### Prerequisites

- Use the Oracle 12c Release 2 RDBMS for your Advisors installation.
- Create three Advisors database users/schemas and the corresponding database objects using the procedures described in the base [Oracle Database Installation](#) section of this guide.



## Creating the Runtime User

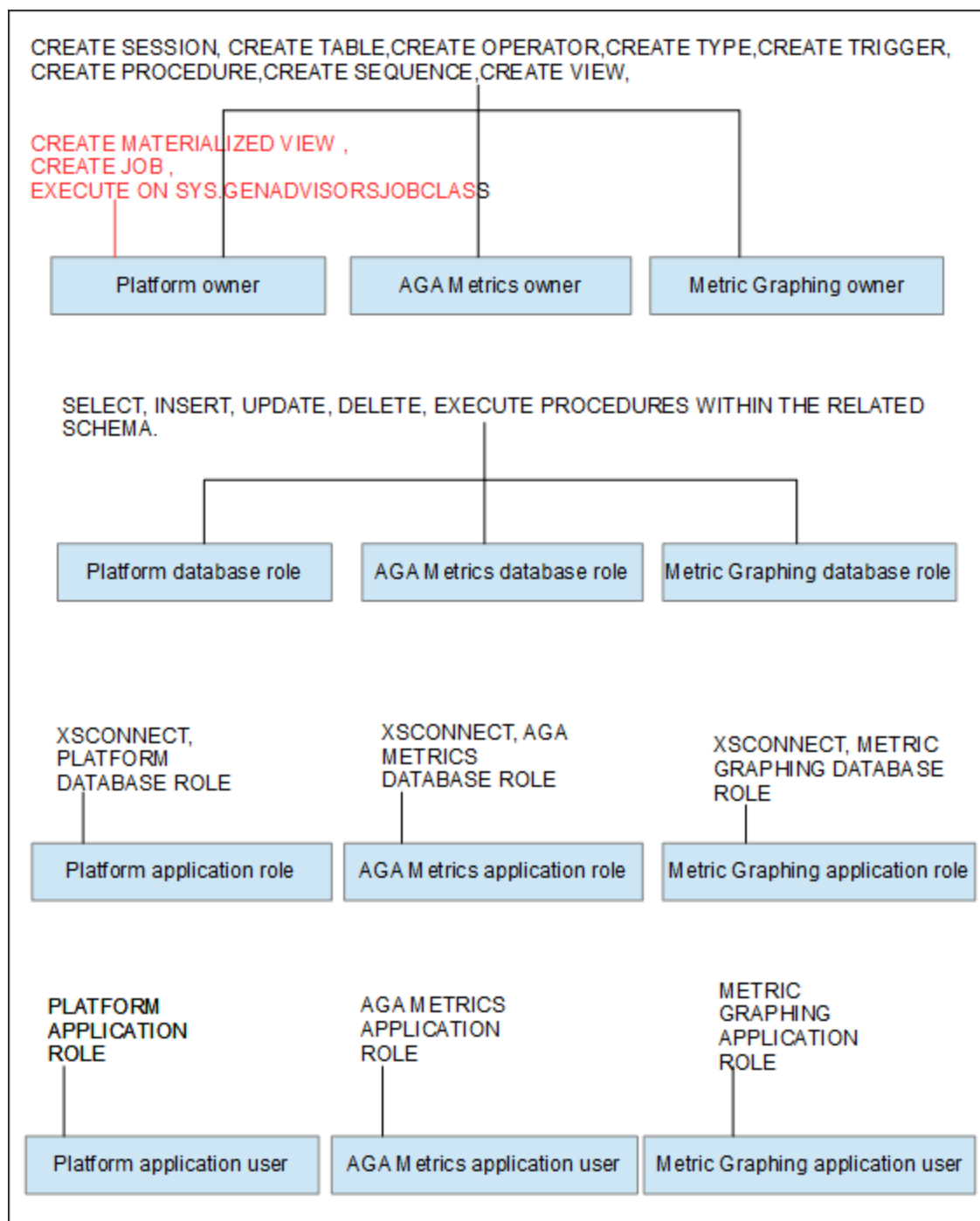
The solution described on this page is based on the Oracle Database Real Application Security feature and direct-login application users. Application users do not own database schemas by definition, but can create application sessions in the database. Application users can be assigned traditional database schemas owned by other users as their default schemas.

The overall procedure consists of four groups of tasks:

1. Application roles creation and direct-login application users creation with the **XS\_PRINCIPAL package**.
2. Granting roles to direct-login application users with the **XS\_PRINCIPAL package**.
3. Database roles creation and granting a set of restricted object-level privileges to the database roles.
4. Granting database roles to the corresponding application roles.

The following figure is a simplified schema showing the resulting schema owner privileges and the application user privileges.





The Platform schema owner might require an additional privilege if the Advisors application is installed using an Oracle database that does not have the JServer Java Virtual Machine installed.

EXECUTE ON SYS.DBMS\_LOCK will be required in addition to the three privileges shown in red in the figure above. You must modify the `advisors-platform-<version>_UsersAndRoles.sql` script to accommodate the additional privilege.



## Procedure:

### Steps

1. Decide what you will use as names for the following entities:
  - The names and passwords for direct-login application users with a restricted set of privileges that Advisors components will use to access the database during runtime.
  - The names for the application roles that will be granted to the direct-login application users.
  - The names for regular database roles that will hold the restricted set of object-level privileges and that will be granted to application roles.

You will also need to provide the names of schema owners that should have been created already, using the [base database creation procedure](#) (these are the Platform, AGA metrics, and Metric Graphing schema owners).

For this example, we will use the following names:

- Adv1PltOwner, Adv2AgaOwner, Adv3MgOwner as schema owners.
  - Adv1, Adv2, Adv3 as direct-login application users that will become Advisors runtime users.
  - AdvPlt\_approle, AdvAga\_approle, AdvMg\_approle as application roles.
  - AdvPlt\_dbrole, AdvAga\_dbrole, AdvMg\_dbrole as regular database roles.
2. Connect to SQL\*Plus as a privileged user (such as "system") who has access to all three Advisors schemas. Execute the `advisors-platform-<version>_UsersAndRoles.sql` script, providing the names and passwords when prompted:

```
Connected to:
Oracle Database 12c Enterprise Edition Release 12.2.0.1.0 - 64bit Production

SQL> @advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_UsersAndRoles.sql
Platform schema owner: Adv1PltOwner
AGA Metrics schema owner: Adv2AgaOwner
MG Metrics schema owner: Adv3MgOwner
Platform runtime user name: Adv1
AGA Metrics runtime user name: Adv2
MG runtime user name: Adv3
Platform application role: AdvPlt_approle
AGA Metrics application role: AdvAga_approle
MG application role: AdvMg_approle
Platform database role: AdvPlt_dbrole
AGA Metrics database role: AdvAga_dbrole
MG database role: AdvMg_dbrole
Enter value for platform_runtime_password: password1
Enter value for aga_runtime_password: password2
Enter value for mg_runtime_password: password3
```

If you prefer, instead of executing the `advisors-platform-<version>_UsersAndRoles.sql` SQL\*Plus script, you can use the [Alternative Method to Configure Oracle Runtime Database Access](#) procedure, described below. Using the alternative method, you execute the same commands that are provided in the SQL\* Plus script, but in a more controlled way.

3. Once the setup is complete, use the following query to verify the direct-login application users (runtime users) that you have created:



```
SELECT * FROM DBA_XS_USERS;
```

The Name column contains the names of the direct-login application users that you created. The Schema column contains the default schema of the corresponding direct-login application user.

The user name must match the name that you planned for your runtime user. The default schema for the application user must be the name of the Platform, AGA metrics, or Metric Graphing schema that you added during the initial database creation. This will ensure that all of the database objects that the application accesses during runtime through the direct-login application user account will be pulled from the correct schema (Platform, AGA metrics, or Metric Graphing schema), while access control during runtime is restricted to the privileges assigned to the application user.

Considering the sample names used in this procedure, you should see results that are similar to the following:

NAME	SCHEMA
ADV1	ADV1PLTOWNER
ADV1	ADV1AGAOWNER
ADV1	ADV1MGOWNER

4. Verify your "direct login application user - application role" and "application role - db role" mappings using the following query:

```
SELECT GRANTEE, GRANTED_ROLE FROM DBA_XS_ROLE_GRANTS ORDER BY GRANTEE;
```

The application roles must be granted to the corresponding direct-login application users, while the DB roles are granted to the corresponding application roles. Considering the sample names used in this procedure, you should see results that are similar to the following:



GRANTEE	GRANTED_ROLE
ADV1	XSPUBLIC
ADV1	XSCONNECT
ADV1	ADVPLT_APPROLE
ADVPLT_APPROLE	ADVPLT_DBROLE
ADV2	XSPUBLIC
ADV2	XSCONNECT
ADV2	ADVAGA_APPROLE
ADVAGA_APPROLE	ADVAGA_DBROLE
ADV3	XSPUBLIC
ADV3	XSCONNECT
ADV3	ADVPLT_APPROLE
ADV3	ADVMG_APPROLE
ADVMG_APPROLE	ADVMG_DBROLE

## What to do if something goes wrong

If it looks like something went wrong during your attempt to add the application users and the application and database roles, then you can remove those users and roles as shown in the samples below. For consistency, the following examples use the same names that were used in the preceding [procedure](#). Removing application users and the application and database roles does not impact the initial database installation or the schema owner permissions.

### Sample: Removing application users and application and database roles

```
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.DELETE_PRINCIPAL ('Adv1',xs_admin_util.cascade_option);  
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.DELETE_PRINCIPAL ('Adv2',xs_admin_util.cascade_option);  
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.DELETE_PRINCIPAL ('Adv3',xs_admin_util.cascade_option);
```

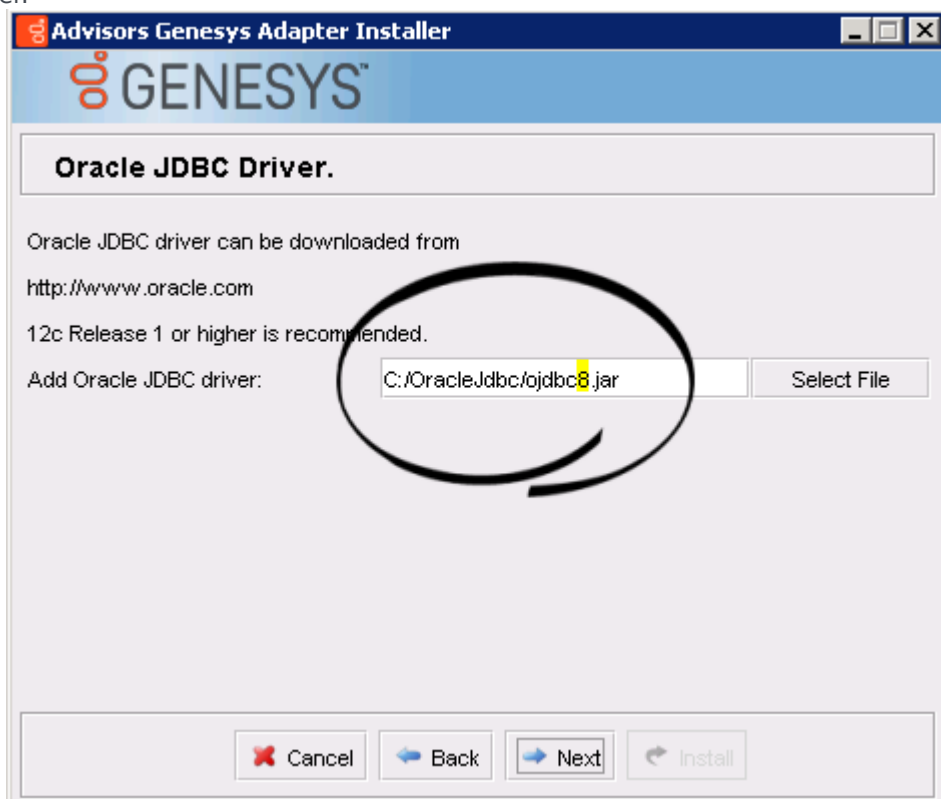


```
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.DELETE_PRINCIPAL('AdvPlt_role');  
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.DELETE_PRINCIPAL('AdvAga_role');  
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.DELETE_PRINCIPAL('AdvMg_role');  
  
DROP ROLE AdvPlt_dbrole;  
DROP ROLE AdvAga_dbrole;  
DROP ROLE AdvMg_dbrole;
```

## Running the Advisors Installation Wizards

Once the database setup is complete, you can run the Advisors installation wizards. Enter the runtime database user name(s) in the installation wizard prompts for each database. The following examples show the runtime user specified in all of the database user-related fields.

- Advisors Genesys Adapter installation wizard. Make sure you specify `ojdbc8.jar` as the Oracle JDBC driver.

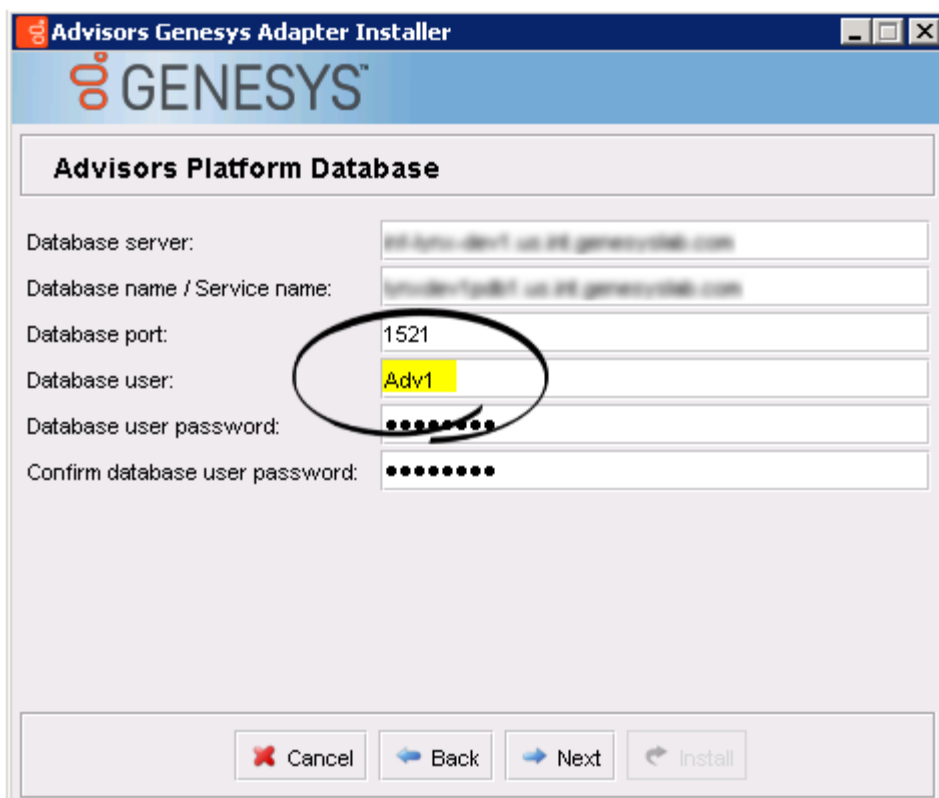


- Advisors Genesys Adapter installation wizard. The AGA runtime user is specified in the **Database user** field.



- Advisors Genesys Adapter installation wizard. The Platform runtime user is specified in the **Database user** field.





The screenshot shows the 'Advisors Genesys Adapter Installer' window. The title bar includes the Genesys logo and the text 'Advisors Genesys Adapter Installer'. The main window has a blue header with the Genesys logo and the text 'GENESYS™'. Below the header is a section titled 'Advisors Platform Database'. This section contains several input fields: 'Database server:' with a value 'adv-adv1.us.ill.genesysllb.com', 'Database name / Service name:' with a value 'adv-adv1.us.ill.genesysllb.com', 'Database port:' with a value '1521', 'Database user:' with a value 'Adv1' (highlighted in yellow and circled in black), 'Database user password:' with a masked password '.....', and 'Confirm database user password:' with a masked password '.....'. At the bottom of the window are four buttons: 'Cancel' (with a red X icon), 'Back' (with a blue left arrow icon), 'Next' (with a blue right arrow icon), and 'Install' (with a green right arrow icon).

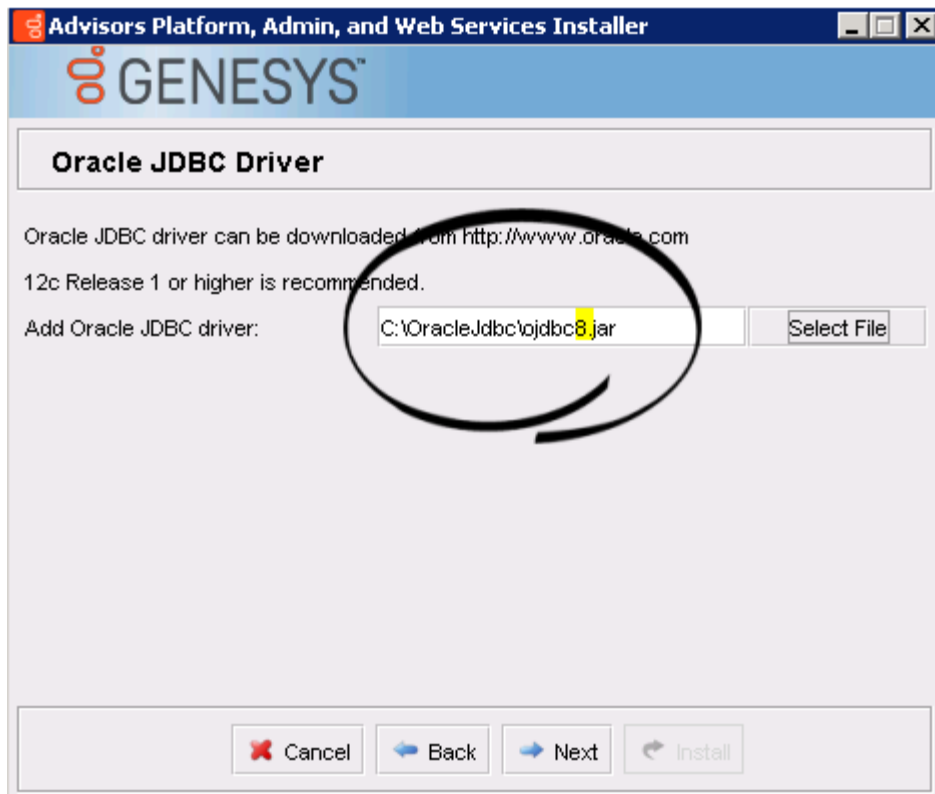
- Platform installation wizard. The Platform runtime user is specified in the **Database user** field.



The screenshot shows a window titled "Advisors Platform, Admin, and Web Services Installer" with the GENESYS logo. The main section is titled "Advisors Platform Database". It contains several input fields: "Database server:" with a placeholder "adv1-adv1.us.oracle.com"; "Database port number:" with "1521"; "Service name:" with a placeholder "adv1.us.oracle.com"; "Database user:" with "Adv1" (highlighted in yellow and circled in black); "Database user password:" and "Confirm database user password:" both with masked passwords. At the bottom are buttons for "Cancel", "Back", "Next", and "Install".

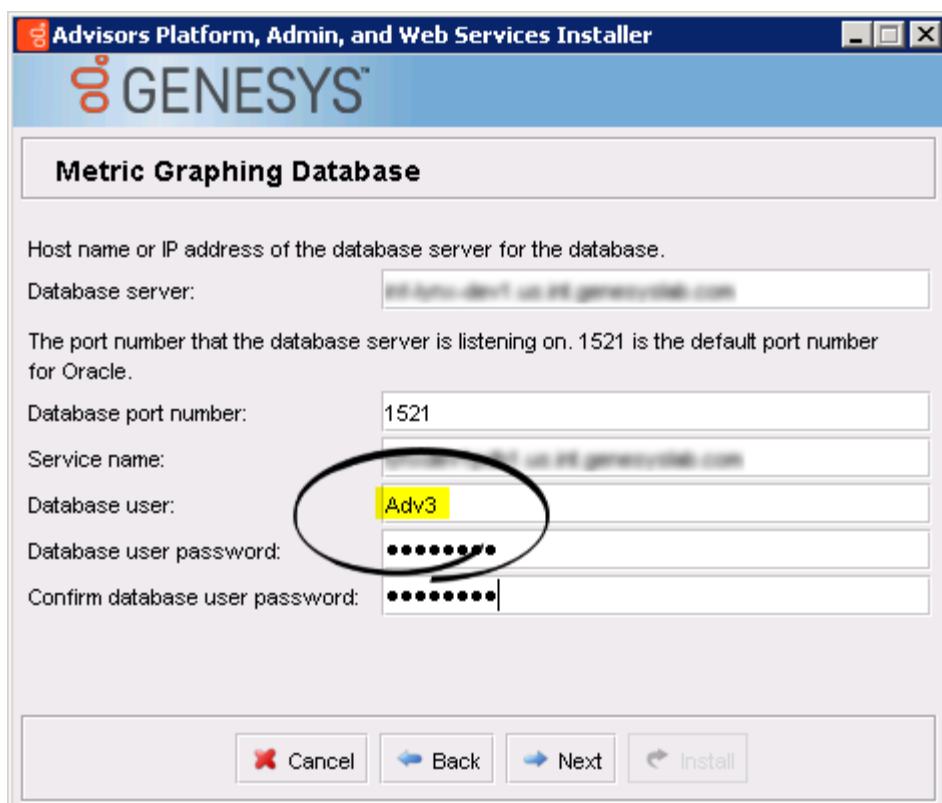
- Platform installation wizard. Make sure you specify `ojdbc8.jar` as the Oracle JDBC driver.





- Platform installation wizard. The metric graphing runtime user is specified in the **Database user** field.





The screenshot shows a window titled "Advisors Platform, Admin, and Web Services Installer" with the GENESYS logo. The main section is titled "Metric Graphing Database". It contains several input fields and instructions:

- Host name or IP address of the database server for the database.
- Database server:
- The port number that the database server is listening on. 1521 is the default port number for Oracle.
- Database port number:
- Service name:
- Database user:  (This field is highlighted with a yellow background and circled with a black line.)
- Database user password:
- Confirm database user password:

At the bottom, there are four buttons: "Cancel" (with a red X icon), "Back" (with a left arrow icon), "Next" (with a right arrow icon), and "Install" (with a circular arrow icon).

- CCAdv/WA/RMC installation wizard. The AGA schema owner is specified in the **Database link name** field.



**Advisors CCAAdv/WA/RMC Installer**

**GENESYS™**

**Data source 1**

Data source to be used by XMLGen and Workforce Advisor (if installed). Please see the Deployment Guide for database link format explanation.

**Do not re-enter a data source already in the CCA/WA database.**

Database link name: Adv2AgaOwner

Data source type: GENESYS

Display name (optional):

Threshold update delay (minutes): 5

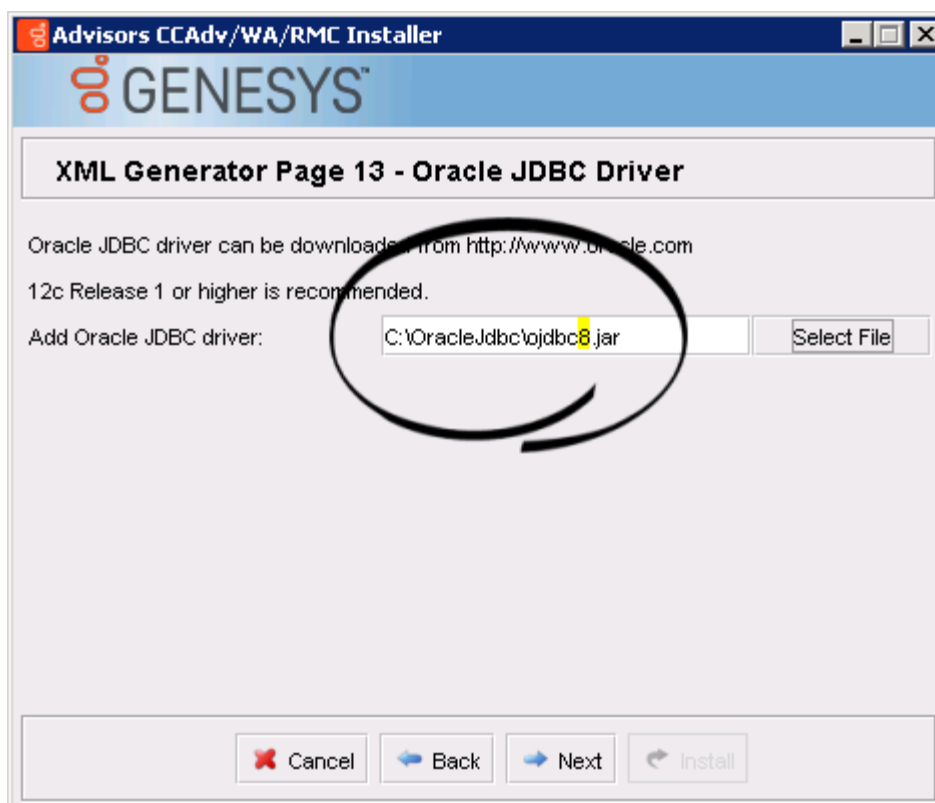
RDBMS type: Oracle

Add another data source: ☐

Cancel Back Next Install

- CCAAdv/WA/RMC installation wizard. Make sure you specify `ojdbc8.jar` as the Oracle JDBC driver.





- CCAAdv/WA/RMC installation wizard. The Platform runtime user is specified in the **Database user** field.



The screenshot shows the 'Advisors CCAdv/WA/RMC Installer' window with the 'Advisors Platform Database' section. The fields are as follows:

- Host name or IP address of the database server for the Platform database: [Empty]
- Database server: [192.168.1.101 us.its.genesys.com]
- The port number that the database server is listening on. 1521 is the default port number for Oracle.
- Database port number: [1521]
- Service name: [us.its.genesys.com]
- Database user: [Adv1] (highlighted and circled)
- Database user password: [Masked with dots]
- Confirm database user password: [Masked with dots]

Buttons at the bottom: Cancel, Back, Next, Install.

- CCAdv/WA/RMC installation wizard. The metric graphing runtime user is specified in the **Database user** field.



**Advisors CCAAdv/WA/RMC Installer**

**GENESYS™**

**Metric Graphing Database**

Host name or IP address of the database server for the database.

Database server:

The port number that the database server is listening on. 1521 is the default port number for Oracle.

Database port number:

Service name:

Database user:

Database user password:

Confirm database user password:

## Alternative Method to Configure Oracle Runtime Database Access

If you prefer to use a more controlled security setup, then instead of executing the SQL\*Plus `advisors-platform-<version>_UsersAndRoles.sql` script as described in the [procedure](#) above, you can run the script in sections.

1. Connect to Oracle SQL Developer as a privileged user (such as system) who has access to all three Advisors schemas.
2. Copy the entire contents of the script section [below](#) and paste it into the Oracle SQL Developer query window. Highlight Section 1 and execute. Answer all 12 prompts. This will provide the substitutions for all variables contained in the next sections of the script, which you will execute later.

If you make a mistake with the substitute variables, repeat Section 1.

The scripts from all sections must be executed within the same session; that is, all queries must be run from the same SQL Developer window. The only exception is the object permission script that is generated in Section 3, which can be executed from any session, including your current session.

3. Once you are satisfied with the substitution, execute all of Section 2. Provide passwords, where prompted.
4. Highlight Section 3, and execute. This will generate Section 4.
5. Copy the results that were generated after you executed the Section 3 queries (that is, Section 4), and execute those as a privileged user (such as system).
6. Execute Section 5.



```
--1

SET HEADING OFF
SET LINE 512
SET FEEDBACK OFF
Accept PLATFORM_USERNAME char Prompt 'Platform schema owner: '
Accept AGA_USERNAME char Prompt 'AGA Metrics schema owner: '
Accept MG_USERNAME char Prompt 'MG Metrics schema owner: '
Accept PLATFORM_RUNTIME_USERNAME char Prompt 'Platform runtime user name: '
Accept AGA_RUNTIME_USERNAME char Prompt 'AGA Metrics runtime user name: '
Accept MG_RUNTIME_USERNAME char Prompt 'MG runtime user name: '
Accept PLATFORM_APPLICATION_ROLE char Prompt 'Platform application role: '
Accept AGA_APPLICATION_ROLE char Prompt 'AGA Metrics application role: '
Accept MG_APPLICATION_ROLE char Prompt 'MG application role: '
Accept PLATFORM_DATABASE_ROLE char Prompt 'Platform database role: '
Accept AGA_DATABASE_ROLE char Prompt 'AGA Metrics database role: '
Accept MG_DATABASE_ROLE char Prompt 'MG database role: '

--2

SET VERIFY OFF;
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.CREATE_USER (name => '&&PLATFORM_RUNTIME_USERNAME', schema =>
'&&PLATFORM_USERNAME');
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.CREATE_USER (name => '&&AGA_RUNTIME_USERNAME', schema =>
'&&AGA_USERNAME');
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.CREATE_USER (name => '&&MG_RUNTIME_USERNAME', schema =>
'&&MG_USERNAME');

EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.SET_PASSWORD('&&PLATFORM_RUNTIME_USERNAME',
'&&PLATFORM_RUNTIME_password');
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.SET_PASSWORD('&&AGA_RUNTIME_USERNAME', '&&AGA_RUNTIME_password');
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.SET_PASSWORD('&&MG_RUNTIME_USERNAME', '&&MG_RUNTIME_password');

EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.CREATE_ROLE(NAME => '&&PLATFORM_APPLICATION_ROLE', ENABLED => TRUE);
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.CREATE_ROLE(NAME => '&&AGA_APPLICATION_ROLE', ENABLED => TRUE);
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.CREATE_ROLE(NAME => '&&MG_APPLICATION_ROLE', ENABLED => TRUE);

EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.GRANT_ROLES('&&PLATFORM_RUNTIME_USERNAME', 'XSCONNECT');
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.GRANT_ROLES('&&AGA_RUNTIME_USERNAME', 'XSCONNECT');
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.GRANT_ROLES('&&MG_RUNTIME_USERNAME', 'XSCONNECT');

EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.GRANT_ROLES('&&PLATFORM_RUNTIME_USERNAME',
'&&PLATFORM_APPLICATION_ROLE');
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.GRANT_ROLES('&&AGA_RUNTIME_USERNAME', '&&AGA_APPLICATION_ROLE');
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.GRANT_ROLES('&&MG_RUNTIME_USERNAME', '&&MG_APPLICATION_ROLE');
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.GRANT_ROLES('&&MG_RUNTIME_USERNAME', '&&PLATFORM_APPLICATION_ROLE');

CREATE ROLE &&PLATFORM_DATABASE_ROLE;
CREATE ROLE &&AGA_DATABASE_ROLE;
CREATE ROLE &&MG_DATABASE_ROLE;

--3
--Grant permissions to database objects

SELECT 'GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON '||OWNER||'.'||TABLE_NAME||' TO
&&AGA_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM DBA_TABLES WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&AGA_USERNAME')
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON '||OWNER||'.'||VIEW_NAME||' TO
&&AGA_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM DBA_VIEWS WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&AGA_USERNAME')
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT SELECT ON '||OWNER||'.'||VIEW_NAME||' TO &&PLATFORM_USERNAME;' FROM
DBA_VIEWS WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&AGA_USERNAME')
UNION
```



```

SELECT 'GRANT SELECT ON '||OWNER||'."'||VIEW_NAME||'" TO &&PLATFORM_USERNAME WITH GRANT
OPTION;' FROM DBA_VIEWS WHERE OWNER='&&AGA_USERNAME'
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT EXECUTE ON '||OWNER||'."'||OBJECT_NAME||'" TO &&AGA_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM
DBA_PROCEDURES WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&AGA_USERNAME') AND OBJECT_TYPE<>'PACKAGE' AND
OBJECT_TYPE<>'TYPE' AND OBJECT_TYPE<>'TRIGGER'
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON '||OWNER||'."'||TABLE_NAME||'" TO
&&MG_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM DBA_TABLES WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&MG_USERNAME')
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON '||OWNER||'."'||VIEW_NAME||'" TO
&&MG_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM DBA_VIEWS WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&MG_USERNAME')
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT EXECUTE ON '||OWNER||'."'||OBJECT_NAME||'" TO &&MG_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM
DBA_PROCEDURES WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&MG_USERNAME') AND OBJECT_TYPE<>'PACKAGE' AND
OBJECT_TYPE<>'TYPE' AND OBJECT_TYPE<>'TRIGGER'
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT SELECT ON '||OWNER||'."'||OBJECT_NAME||'" TO &&MG_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM
DBA_OBJECTS WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&MG_USERNAME') AND OBJECT_TYPE='SEQUENCE'
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON '||OWNER||'."'||TABLE_NAME||'" TO
&&PLATFORM_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM DBA_TABLES WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&PLATFORM_USERNAME')
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE ON '||OWNER||'."'||VIEW_NAME||'" TO
&&PLATFORM_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM DBA_VIEWS WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&PLATFORM_USERNAME')
AND VIEW_NAME NOT IN (SELECT VIEW_NAME FROM DBA_VIEWS WHERE
OWNER=UPPER('&&AGA_USERNAME')) AND VIEW_NAME NOT LIKE '%REAL_TIME%' AND VIEW_NAME NOT LIKE
'%LOGICAL_CONTROLLER%' AND VIEW_NAME NOT LIKE '%DS_SERVICE_MEMBER%'
AND VIEW_NAME NOT LIKE 'AGENT_SKILL_GROUP_REAL_TIME%' AND VIEW_NAME NOT LIKE
'INTERACTION_QUEUE_REAL_TIME%' AND VIEW_NAME NOT LIKE 'SKILL_GROUP%' AND VIEW_NAME NOT LIKE
'CALL_TYPE%'
AND VIEW_NAME NOT LIKE 'SERVICE%' AND VIEW_NAME NOT LIKE 'INTERACTION_QUEUE%' AND
VIEW_NAME NOT LIKE 'PERIPHERAL%' AND VIEW_NAME NOT LIKE 'CONTROLLER_TIME%' AND VIEW_NAME NOT
LIKE 'QUEUE_SET%'
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT SELECT ON '||OWNER||'."'||VIEW_NAME||'" TO &&PLATFORM_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM
DBA_VIEWS WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&PLATFORM_USERNAME')
AND (VIEW_NAME IN (SELECT VIEW_NAME FROM DBA_VIEWS WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&AGA_USERNAME'))
OR VIEW_NAME LIKE '%REAL_TIME%' OR VIEW_NAME LIKE '%LOGICAL_CONTROLLER%' OR VIEW_NAME LIKE
'%DS_SERVICE_MEMBER%'
OR VIEW_NAME LIKE 'AGENT_SKILL_GROUP_REAL_TIME%' OR VIEW_NAME LIKE
'INTERACTION_QUEUE_REAL_TIME%' OR VIEW_NAME LIKE 'SKILL_GROUP%' OR VIEW_NAME LIKE
'CALL_TYPE%'
OR VIEW_NAME LIKE 'SERVICE%' OR VIEW_NAME LIKE 'INTERACTION_QUEUE%' OR VIEW_NAME LIKE
'PERIPHERAL%' OR VIEW_NAME LIKE 'CONTROLLER_TIME%' OR VIEW_NAME LIKE 'QUEUE_SET%')
UNION
SELECT DISTINCT 'GRANT EXECUTE ON '||OWNER||'."'||OBJECT_NAME||'" TO
&&PLATFORM_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM DBA_PROCEDURES WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&PLATFORM_USERNAME') AND
OBJECT_TYPE='PACKAGE'
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT EXECUTE ON '||OWNER||'."'||OBJECT_NAME||'" TO &&PLATFORM_DATABASE_ROLE;'
FROM DBA_PROCEDURES WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&PLATFORM_USERNAME') AND OBJECT_TYPE<>'PACKAGE' AND
OBJECT_TYPE<>'TYPE' AND OBJECT_TYPE<>'TRIGGER'
AND UPPER(OBJECT_NAME) NOT LIKE 'SPBLK%'
UNION
SELECT 'GRANT SELECT ON '||OWNER||'."'||OBJECT_NAME||'" TO &&PLATFORM_DATABASE_ROLE;' FROM
DBA_OBJECTS WHERE OWNER=UPPER('&&PLATFORM_USERNAME') AND OBJECT_TYPE='SEQUENCE';

--5

GRANT &&PLATFORM_DATABASE_ROLE TO &&PLATFORM_APPLICATION_ROLE;
GRANT &&AGA_DATABASE_ROLE TO &&AGA_APPLICATION_ROLE;
GRANT &&MG_DATABASE_ROLE TO &&MG_APPLICATION_ROLE;

```



## Reusing Application and Database Roles

If you plan to have several Advisors installations that will use the same Oracle database, you can reuse the roles. You can also reuse the roles in application upgrades.

If you reuse the roles, then the following part can be omitted from section 1.

```
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.CREATE_ROLE(NAME => '&&PLATFORM_APPLICATION_ROLE', ENABLED => TRUE);  
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.CREATE_ROLE(NAME => '&&AGA_APPLICATION_ROLE', ENABLED => TRUE);  
EXEC SYS.XS_PRINCIPAL.CREATE_ROLE(NAME => '&&MG_APPLICATION_ROLE', ENABLED => TRUE);
```

```
CREATE ROLE &&PLATFORM_DATABASE_ROLE;  
CREATE ROLE &&AGA_DATABASE_ROLE;  
CREATE ROLE &&MG_DATABASE_ROLE;
```



# Advisors Database Deployment with Data Encryption

This page describes Advisors deployment with data encryption for MS SQL and Oracle database servers.

<tabber>

## Secure Deployment for MS SQL Server 2008=

For MS SQL Server data encryption, Genesys recommends using MS SQL Server Transparent Data Encryption (TDE), which performs a real-time I/O encryption and decryption of the data and log files. This method has only a minor impact on performance, which is critical for the Advisors Suite.

It is important to mention that TDE is available only for MS SQL Server Enterprise edition. The data cannot be encrypted using TDE if any other MS SQL Server edition is used.

Advisors Suite MS SQL databases do not have any properties, such as READ-ONLY file groups, full text indexes, or filestreams that would prevent the TDE. Users must follow the standard Microsoft documentation related to this topic.

The Advisors Suite does not support MS SQL Server cell-level encryption.

## | Database Deployment with Data Encryption for Oracle=

Oracle offers:

- Transparent Database Encryption (TDE) introduced in Oracle 10g, which allows the encryption of individual column content on the data file level.
- Tablespace encryption introduced in Oracle 11g, which allows the encryption of the entire content of a tablespace.

Genesys recommends TDE for Oracle tablespaces.

Initial Platform, Metric Graphing, and Genesys Adapter Metrics database scripts contain tablespace names in the form of variables in each create SQL statement for tables, primary keys, and indexes. The tables and indexes are distributed among several groupings based on Genesys' recommendations related to the data update patterns and its usage characteristics.

The Platform deployment script replaces the variables dynamically with the values you provide in the deployment script dialog. The deployment script generates a new runObjCre.sql script with the substituted variables. The deployment script executes runObjCre.sql and other SQL scripts in a certain order.

It is important to make a decision about what objects need encryption and what objects should go to what tablespace before the deployment script execution.

If you decide to place all objects into one single encrypted tablespace, specify the tablespace as a user default data tablespace, and then read the script dialog prompts to ensure this tablespace is



used for all objects (that is, on all prompts, specify the name of this tablespace, or simply press Enter). If you want to use different encrypted tablespaces for different groups of objects predefined in the scripts, you must specify the tablespace names you have chosen for this purpose on the corresponding prompts. Review the `Readme.txt` file supplied with the scripts to find out how the objects are grouped in the scripts.

## [+] Advanced Tablespace Customization

If a more granular customization is necessary (for instance, changing the table/index grouping or encrypting the data at the column level), you have an advanced option. Do not use this option if you do not have a clear understanding of the script's internals.

You will need to perform the following steps:

1. Run the deployment script from SQL\*plus to generate `runObjCre.sql`.
2. Drop the previously-created user.
3. Customize the generated `runObjCre.sql` script.
4. Save it, and then execute the scripts in the following order:
  - a. Run `runUsrCre.sql`
  - b. Run `runObjCre.sql`
  - c. Run all of the scripts listed in the bottom of the corresponding `<xxx>-<version>_Schema.sql` file after an object creation script.

For example, if you want to customize tablespaces for the Platform schema, you need to determine the additional script set and the script order by opening the `advisors-platform-<version>_Schema.sql` file of the corresponding version. The content will be different in different versions. As an example of a versioned script, let's take `advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_Schema.sql`. The bottom of the file will contain the following:

```
spool off
spool runObjCre.log
@@runObjCre.sql
@@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_ROUTINE1.sql
@@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_PIMPORT_J.sql
@@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_ROUTINE2.sql
@@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_FA_ROUTINE.sql
@@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_INIT_DATA.sql
@@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_CUSTOM_ROUTINE.sql
@@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_CREATE_JOBS.sql
exec spCompileInvalid();
var r number;
var m varchar2(4000);
exec spAllRelatedMetrics(:r,:m);
@@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_RECREATE_MV.sql
exec spCompileInvalid();
INSERT INTO PATCH_LOG
(PATCH_LOG_ID,PATCH_DESC,PATCH_NAME,PATCH_APPLIED_USER,PATCH_APPLIED_DATE)
VALUES(SEQ_PATCH_LOG.NEXTVAL,'Advisors Platform 8.5.202.09','advisors-
platform-8.5.202.09_ObjectsPlus.sql',USER,SYSDATE);
COMMIT;
/
BEGIN
  spCompileInvalid();
  dbms_output.put_line('Schema creation completed. Final compilation was successful.');
```



```

        dbms_output.put_line('Schema creation completed with compilation errors.');
```

```

        dbms_output.put_line('Compile each invalid object manually to identify ');
        dbms_output.put_line('the reason of the problem.');
```

```

        dbms_output.put_line(sqlerrm);
END;
/
spool off
exit
```

Based on this example, after you execute `runObjCre.sql`, you will also have to execute the following:

```

@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_ROUTINE1.sql
@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_PIMPORT_J.sql
@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_ROUTINE2.sql
@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_FA_ROUTINE.sql
@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_INIT_DATA.sql
@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_CUSTOM_ROUTINE.sql
@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_CREATE_JOBS.sql
exec spCompileInvalid();
var r number;
var m varchar2(4000);
exec spAllRelatedMetrics(:r,:m);
@advisors-platform-8.5.202.09_RECREATE_MV.sql
exec spCompileInvalid();
```

To verify that an Advisors schema is secured with TDE encryption, do the following:

1. Run the following query to verify that the tablespaces to which the user has access are created as encrypted:  

```
SELECT TABLESPACE_NAME, ENCRYPTED FROM USER_TABLESPACES WHERE ENCRYPTED='YES';
```
2. Run the following query to verify that all of the tables are created in the encrypted tablespaces:  

```
SELECT DISTINCT TABLESPACE_NAME FROM USER_TABLES;
```

## List of Function-Based Indexes

TDE limitations related to the column-based encryption of the content with function-based indexes are applicable to the Advisors Suite. The Advisors schema contains a number of function-based indexes that need to be modified or dropped if the column-based encryption of the related columns is chosen. See the following Table.

### Platform Schema

Index	Table	Column expression
IX_APPLICATION_NAME	APPLICATION - Contains application group metadata	UPPER("NAME")
IX_CALL_APP_UP	CALL_APPLICATION - Contains metadata for queues, call types, services, interaction queues	UPPER("NAME")
IX_CALL_CENTER_NAME	CALL_CENTER - Contains contact center metadata	UPPER("NAME")
IX_CALL_CREGION_NAME	REGIONS - Contains metadata for geographic regions, reporting regions and operating units	UPPER("NAME"), UPPER("TYPE")
IX_CG_UP	CONTACT_GROUP - Contains	UPPER("NAME")



---

Index	Table	Column expression
	metadata for workforce contact groups	
IX_CG_ORIGIN	CONTACT_GROUP	UPPER("WFM_EQUIVALENT_ID"), UPPER("SOURCE_SYSTEM")
IX_CONTACT	CONTACT – Contains Advisors users contact data	UPPER("EMAIL")
IX_PG_NAME	PG – Contains metadata for peripheral gateways	UPPER("PG_NAME")
IX_USERS_USERNAME	USERS – Contains the list of Advisor users	UPPER("USERNAME")
IX_KEY_ACTION_NAME	KEY_ACTION	UPPER("NAME")
IX_ADAPTER_INST_HOST_PORT	ADAPTER_INSTANCES	UPPER("HOST")




# Create the Advisors User Account

You must create an account in the Configuration Server that can be used by the Advisors products to connect to and retrieve information from the Configuration Server. In this Deployment Guide, the account is referred to as the *Advisors User* account, but you can give the account a name of your choice. That is, it is not necessary to name the account *Advisors User*. The permissions shown in the following Table are required for this account.

## Deployment Roadmap

The arrow icon in the following roadmap indicates where you are in the Advisors deployment process.

1. **[+] Install the databases that correspond to the Advisors products you will deploy.**
  - a. Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database
  - b. Advisors Platform database
  - c. Metric Graphing database
2.  Create the Advisors User and the Object Configuration User in Configuration Server.
3. **[+] Install the Platform service on servers where it is required for Advisors components.**
  - Advisors Administration
  - Advisors Web Services
  - WA Server
  - FA Server with rollup engine
  - CCAAdv/WA/FA Accessibility services
  - CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console
4. Install each adapter that you will use and configure the adapter Application objects with Stat Server connections.
5. **[+] Install the Advisors components for your enterprise.**
  - a. Contact Center Advisor server (CCAAdv XML Generator)
  - b. Workforce Advisor server
  - c. Frontline Advisor server
  - d. SDS and the CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console
6. Make any required configuration changes.

### Tip

You might need to use Configuration Manager to configure some of the permissions



described in the following Table; it might not be possible to configure everything listed below in other Genesys configuration interfaces (Genesys Administrator or GAX).

Important


You must grant the Advisors user a privilege that allows that user to create materialized views if you are not using the supplied deployment scripts to create the user.

Object	Permissions	Notes
Applications folder	Execute, Change	Only for Configuration Server 8.1.2 and later. Required for the Platform and AGA user account to connect to the Configuration Server and Stat Servers.  Change permission is required so the installers can update properties of Application objects that correspond to Advisors servers.



Object	Permissions	Notes
Hosts folder	Read	Read permission is required on the <b>Hosts</b> folder so that the hosts on which Solution Control Server is deployed can be read from the Configuration Server.
<b>NEW</b> Adapter Application object(s)	Read, Change	Starting with release 8.5.2, permissions on the adapter Application object are required for adapter-Stat Server communication. These permissions also allow the migration wizard to update properties in both the



Object	Permissions	Notes
		adapter Application object and the Stat Server Application object. See <a href="#">Manage Stat Server Instances</a> for more information about the Advisors Stat Server configuration.
Stat Server Application object(s)	Read,  Change	The Change permission is required starting in release 8.5.2. The migration wizard connects to the Configuration Server in order to update the properties in both the adapter Application object and the Stat



Object	Permissions	Notes
		Server Application object. See <a href="#">Manage Stat Server Instances</a> for more information about the Advisors Stat Server configuration.
Tenants	Read	
Agent Groups	Read, Read Permissions, Change, Change Permissions	Change and Change Permissions are required to propagate changes saved in the <b>Base Object Configuration</b> page to Configuration Server.
Switches	Read	
DNs (of type ACD Queues and Virtual Queues)	Read, Read Permissions, Change, Change Permissions	Change and Change Permissions are required to propagate changes saved in the <b>Base Object Configuration</b> page to Configuration



Object	Permissions	Notes
		Server.
Persons	Read, Read Permissions	
	Change	<p>Required only in the following circumstances:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>if the Advisors <b>Administration</b> module will be used to modify user accounts</li> <li>if the Resource Management Console will be used to modify agent skills (the Change permission is required to save the agent skill changes)</li> </ul>
Skills	Read	Read permission is required to view skills in the Resource Management



Object	Permissions	Notes
		Console.
Scripts (of type Interaction Queues)	Read, Read Permissions, Change, Change Permissions	Change and Change Permissions are required to propagate changes saved in the <b>Base Object Configuration</b> page to Configuration Server.
Access Groups	Read, Read Permissions	
	Change	Only required if Advisors Administration module will be used to modify user accounts.
Calling lists	Read, Read Permissions, Change, Change Permissions	Change and Change Permissions are required to propagate changes saved in the <b>Base Object Configuration</b> page to Configuration Server.
Roles	Read, Read Permissions	Used to



---

Object	Permissions	Notes
		determine functional permissions for users.
Business Attributes	Read, Read Permissions	Used to determine access to Advisors metadata objects.
Advisors Metrics Business Attributes	Read, Create, Change, Delete, Read Permissions, Change Permissions	Used for the Metric Manager.
Folders in Persons	Read, Read Permissions	Required for FA.
Folder in Agent Groups	Read, Read Permissions	Required for FA.
SDS Application	Read, Change, Read Permissions	Only required if you deploy Supervisor Desktop Service.



# Advisors Roles

You can control access to information in the Contact Center Advisor (CCAdv), Workforce Advisor (WA), and Frontline Advisor (FA) dashboards and in the administration module using roles, and associating permissions and privileges with each role. Controlling information using roles, and associated privileges and permissions, is called Role-Based Access Control (RBAC).

It is typical to require access to various Advisors components early in the deployment and configuration process. The following sections describe Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) in terms of Genesys Performance Management Advisors, and include the list of privileges available with Advisors release 8.5.2.

## Important

While you can use any Genesys configuration interface to import Advisors privileges into a Role, or to assign Role-based permissions to Users or Access Groups for access to the Advisors business attributes, you can view the Advisors privileges associated with a Role only in Genesys Configuration Manager.

## [+] RBAC and Advisors

Performance Management Advisors support role-based access control (RBAC). You can use RBAC to control which users can access specific components—for example, you can use RBAC to configure access to the Advisors administration module for a specific subset of managers.

Advisors applications use Configuration Server business attributes, which means that the Advisors applications can take advantage of Genesys Roles for controlling access at a detailed level to Advisors' business objects and metrics.

RBAC is enforced primarily by visibility in the interface. What a user sees is determined by the Roles which have been assigned. If the user is not assigned a Role that grants him or her access to a piece of functionality, that functionality is not displayed to that user.

There are three important concepts associated with RBAC:

- **Permissions**  
Permissions protect access to a whole object; if you have access permissions, you see the entire object.
- **Roles**  
Roles protect properties of an object by hiding or disabling those properties to which you want to restrict access. Roles are intended to work with permissions to more finely control what a user can access.
- **Privileges**  
Privileges determine what tasks or functions a user can execute on objects to which he or she has



access. You assign privileges to Roles to further refine access to objects and object functionality.

## What are RBAC permissions?

Elementary permissions protect access to a whole object. Permissions applied to an object apply equally to all properties of the object – if you have access permissions, you see the entire object.

Object permissions determine which users have access to a certain object or to what objects a given user has access. This is done through the use of access groups or on an individual user basis. Objects include the following:

- Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor
  - Metrics
  - Operating Units
  - Reporting Regions
  - Geographic Regions
  - Contact Centers
  - Application Groups
- Frontline Advisor
  - Metrics
  - Levels of the Frontline Advisor hierarchy (that is, the folders and agent groups)

## What are RBAC roles?

The major component of RBAC is a Role. If it is important in your enterprise to control users' access to information (metrics, hierarchy levels, and business objects), you configure Users and Roles – including the assignment of permissions and privileges to each Role – before any of those users log in for the first time. Each time you have a new user in your enterprise, you assign that person to Roles in a Genesys configuration interface, such as Genesys Administrator.

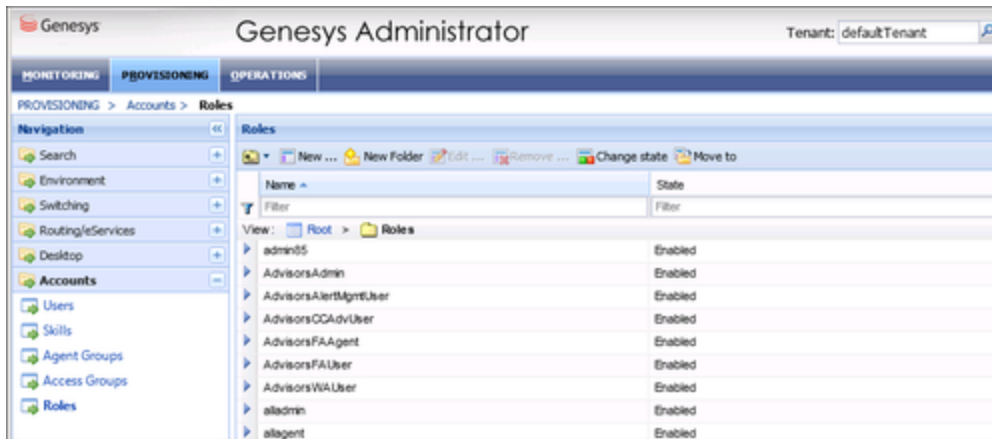
Roles define what facilities are provided to users to review and manipulate various types of data. These include which property controls are available for items permitted by object permissions, what modules are visible, and access control for entities not represented by configuration objects. A Role is assigned to a User, and that User is then able to do only what that Role permits. One User can be assigned multiple Roles, and one Role can be assigned to multiple Users. A Role may also be assigned to an Access Group, and Users in that Access Group are then able to do what the Role permits.

Different Roles can have different access and allowed functionality for the same objects. In essence, Roles resolve both problems associated with using only permissions – users can access and work with only those parts of the object to which they are allowed.



Roles can also be used to protect access to entities that are not configured as configuration objects, such as logs. In general, when determining the accessibility to an object by a user, the user session cannot retrieve objects if they are not among those objects to which the user has access (as defined by object-access permissions). For data that is available in the session, Role privileges refine what can be done with the data.

## Assigning Roles to Users and Access Groups



Roles can be assigned to either Users or Access Groups.

### Important

To inherit permissions, Access Groups and Users must belong to the tenant specified during the Advisors Platform installation.

Once a Role is assigned to an Access Group, all Users in the Access Group are assigned that Role. The Access Groups and/or Users must have Read access to the Role to be able to access the Role.

### Important

Names of Access Groups must not contain spaces.

The figure shows an example of Advisors Role configuration.

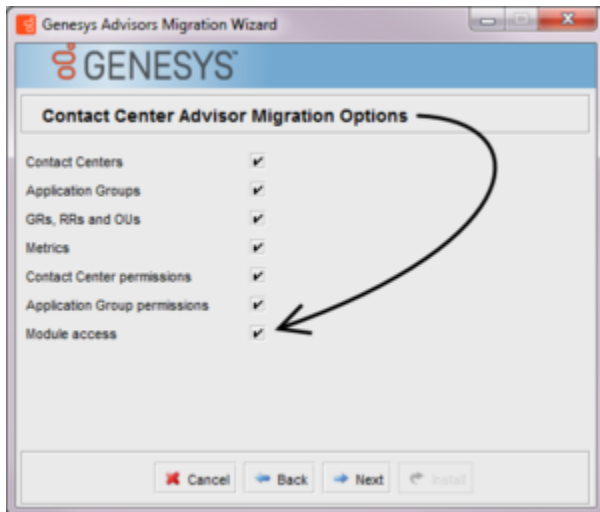
## New Users

By default, new users are not assigned any default Roles. They must be assigned Roles by a system administrator or by an existing user with appropriate permissions.



## Default Roles Created by Migration

Module access is determined by the Roles associated with a user's profile. An optional check box on the Advisors migration utility, which is provided in the software distribution package, creates the module access schema. The figure, Migration Wizard, shows the optional **Module access** check box.



Migration Wizard

The utility creates default Roles in the Configuration Server, with each one representing access to a particular module. Each Role has a limited set of privileges associated with it. The default Roles are:

1. AdvisorsAdmin – allows access to the Advisors administration module for Frontline Advisor, Contact Center Advisor, and Workforce Advisor users, to whom you have assigned that Role.
2. AdvisorsFAUser
3. AdvisorsFAAgent
4. AdvisorsCCAdvUser
5. AdvisorsWAUser
6. AdvisorsAlertMgmtUser

You can change the preceding Role names post-migration.

## Further Reading on Roles

Additional sources of information on Role-based access, privileges and permissions are:

- [Genesys Security Deployment Guide](#)
- [Genesys Administrator Extension Deployment Guide](#)
- [Framework Configuration Manager Help](#)
- [Genesys Administrator Extension Help](#)



## What are RBAC privileges?

Roles consist of a set of role privileges (Read, Change, Execute, and so on). Privileges determine what tasks or functions a user can execute on objects to which he or she has access. You must define Advisors Role privileges in a Genesys configuration interface, such as Genesys Administrator or GAX.

### Tip

While you can use any Genesys configuration interface to import Advisors privileges into a Role, or to assign Role-based permissions to Users or Access Groups for access to the Advisors business attributes, you can view the Advisors privileges associated with a Role only in Genesys Configuration Manager.

By default, Role privileges are not assigned to any Role, so you must explicitly assign privileges to Roles. Role privileges range from general to very specific tasks. An authorized user, typically a system administrator, bundles these tasks into Roles. The Roles are then assigned to Users. As a result, each User can perform only those tasks for which they have privileges.

Functionality permissions, or privileges, determine what tasks or functions a user can execute on objects to which he or she has access. If a privilege is present in a Role, then any user who is assigned that Role has access to the functionality controlled by that privilege.

## Where do I configure roles, permissions, and privileges?

Roles, and related configuration, are stored in the Genesys Configuration Server.

Typically, you configure RBAC in the following order:

1. Add Roles.
2. Add tasks to Roles.
3. Assign Access Groups to Business Attribute instances.
4. Assign Users to Roles.

Use a Genesys configuration interface, such as Genesys Administrator, to add Users to a Role. Add users with one of the following methods:

- indirectly, as a member of an Access Group
- directly, as a member of a role

You also use a Genesys configuration interface to import Advisors privileges into a Role, or to assign Role-based permissions to Persons or Access Groups.



**Tip**

A user must have Read access to the Role (either directly or through an Access Group) to which he or she is assigned.

Each Advisors privilege name uses the following general structure:  
[application name].[module name].[task grouping].[privilege name]

Ensure you copy the exact privilege with no leading or trailing spaces. Some privileges work as single entries; some require a group of privileges to ensure full access as you expect. For the list of privileges for each Advisors component, see the [CCAdv/WA Access Privileges](#) and [FA Access Privileges](#) pages.

**Tip**

While you can use any Genesys configuration interface to import Advisors privileges into a Role, or to assign Role-based permissions to Users or Access Groups for access to the Advisors business attributes, you can view the Advisors privileges associated with a Role only in Genesys Configuration Manager.

## Am I limited to a specific number of users, access groups, or roles?

There is no limit on:

- the number of Roles that can be present in the Configuration Server
- the number of Access Groups or Users that can be present in the Configuration Server
- the number of Roles supported by Advisors
- the number of Access Groups that are supported by Advisors

Roles, and the privileges associated with Roles, are cumulative. A single User or Access Group can be assigned multiple Roles. In such cases, the user will have the combined set of privileges granted by each Role. In other words, the user is granted any privilege that is granted by at least one of the assigned Roles. This ensures that the user is able to perform the tasks of all Roles in which they participate.

Each user can also belong to multiple Access Groups, with different permissions coming from each group. In such scenarios, the user's permissions are a union of the permissions of all the Access Groups to which he or she belongs, unless access is specifically denied for one group, which takes precedence (see the following scenarios).

Advisors applications follow the principle of least privilege. The following scenarios show how this union should work:

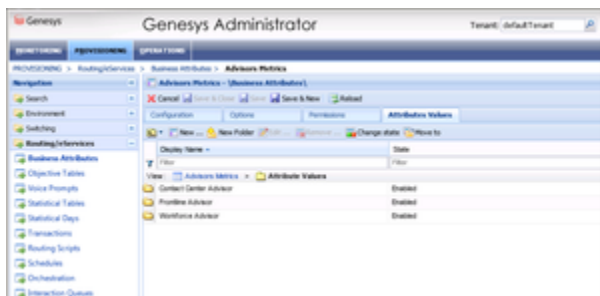


- User A is part of Access Groups X and Y.  
Group X does not have any defined access to a metric.  
Group Y has explicit access granted to the metric.  
In this case, user A is granted access to the metric.
- User A is part of Access Groups X and Y.  
Group X is explicitly denied access to a metric.  
Group Y is explicitly given access to the same metric.  
In this case, user A is denied access to the metric.
- User A is part of Access Groups X and Y.  
Group X is explicitly denied access to a metric.  
Group Y does not have any defined access to the same metric.  
In this case, user A will be denied access to the metric.
- User A is part of Access Groups X and Y.  
Neither group has defined access to the metric.  
In this case, user A will be denied access to the metric.

## Can I control access to metrics?

Metrics are handled differently than other Advisors business objects. You must add the Advisors metrics in Genesys Configuration Server before you can assign the necessary permissions to Users or Access Groups (you use permissions to control access to metrics (see [What are RBAC permissions?](#), above)).

Metrics for Contact Center Advisor, Workforce Advisor, and Frontline Advisor are stored under the Advisors Metrics business attribute; a folder structure segments the metrics for each application and for each object. The following figure shows an example of the folder structure for Advisors metrics. The folder structure shown below is mandatory. The business attributes must be created in the “Default Tenant” chosen during Advisors installation. Click the figure to enlarge it.



Advisors metrics in Genesys Administrator

Each application’s metrics are created under the appropriate folder, and are subdivided by the object types with which they are associated.



To avoid confusion over similarly-named metrics, and because Configuration Server does not allow duplicated names for attribute values, the names of the metrics use a namespace and are case-sensitive. The format of the namespace is:

[Application].[ObjectType].[Channel].[Name]

The values for each characteristic of the namespace are described in the following table:

Namespace characteristic	Definition or values
Application	FrontlineAdvisor, WorkforceAdvisor, or ContactCenterAdvisor
ObjectType	Represents the object type associated with this metric. This could be AgentGroup, Agent, ContactGroup, Application, or Team
Channel	Email, WebChat, Voice, All, or AllNonVoice
Name	The name of the metric

For example, FA metrics would have names like:

- FrontlineAdvisor.Agent.Voice.nch
- FrontlineAdvisor.Team.Voice.taht

## [+] Show CCAdv/WA Privileges

You can control access to objects in the Genesys Pulse Advisors Contact Center Advisor (CCAdv) and Workforce Advisor (WA) dashboards and on the Advisors administration module pages using Roles, and associating privileges with each Role. Controlling users' access to data and objects using Roles and associated privileges is called Role-Based Access Control (RBAC).

See the following documents and pages for more information about configuring user profiles:

- [Authentication and Authorization](#) — This chapter in the *Genesys Security Deployment Guide* provides information about securing access to systems (in whole or in part) with user authentication and authorization. In particular, see [User Authentication and User Authorization](#), [Object-Based Access Control](#), and [Role-Based Access Control](#).
- [Framework Configuration Manager Help](#) — How to use Genesys Configuration Manager (this is a .zip file)
- [Genesys Administrator Extension Help: Users \(Persons\)](#) — Configuring Users (Persons) in the GAX interface
- [Genesys Administrator Extension Help: Access Groups](#) — Configuring Access Groups in the GAX interface
- [Genesys Administrator Extension Help: Roles](#) — Configuring Roles in the GAX interface
- [Genesys Administrator Extension Help: Configuration Manager](#) — Working with (GAX) Configuration Manager



**Tip**

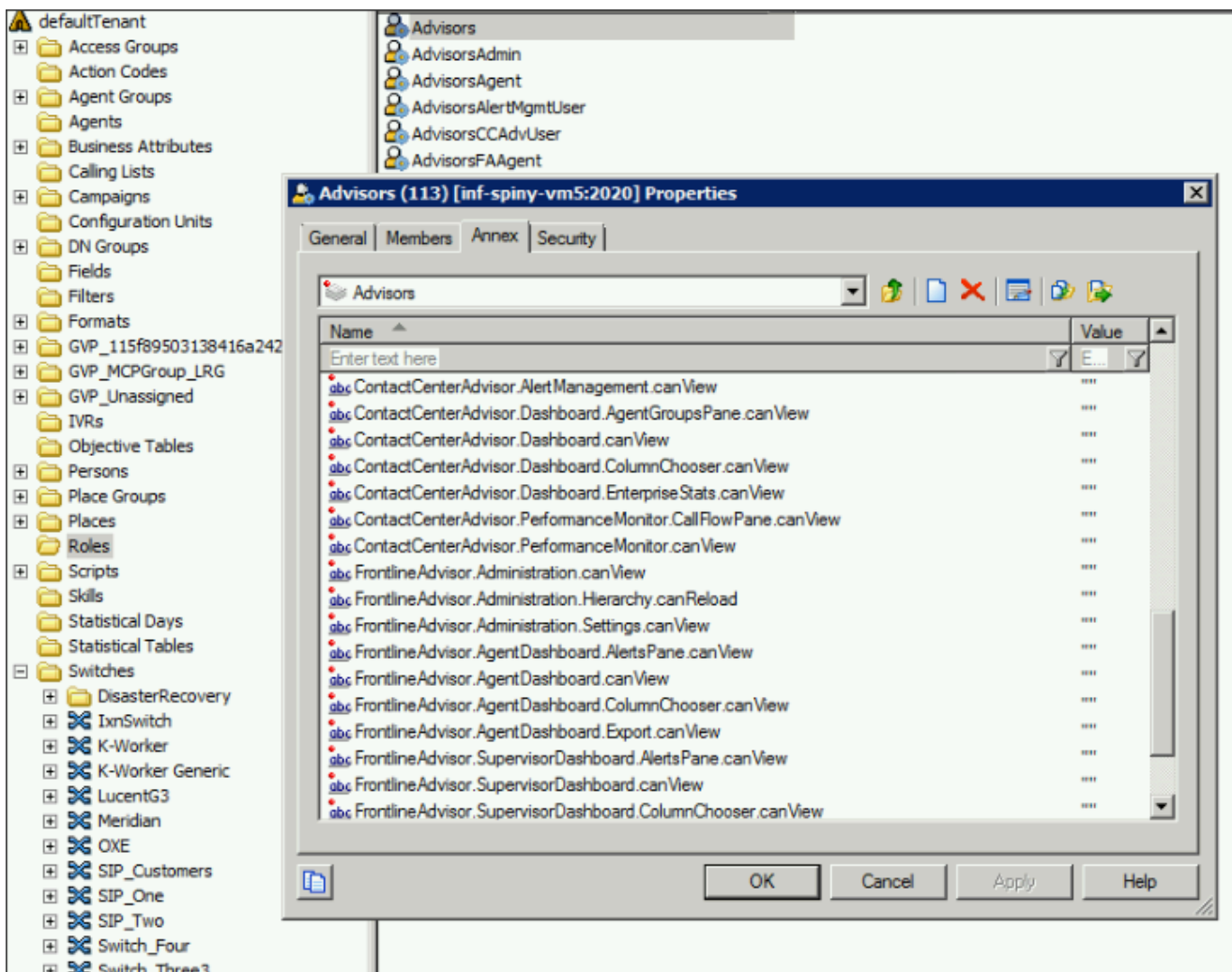
While you can use any Genesys configuration interface to import Advisors privileges into a Role, or to assign Role-based permissions to Users or Access Groups for access to the Advisors business attributes, you can view the Advisors privileges associated with a Role only in Genesys Configuration Manager.

The following sections provide the lists of available Advisors privileges with which you can secure access to CCAdv, WA, and Advisors administration interface objects:

- Privileges associated with the Advisors Administration module
- Privileges associated with user dashboards
- Privileges associated with Contact Center Advisor
- Privileges associated with Workforce Advisor

The following figure shows a sample of Advisors privileges configuration in Genesys Configuration Manager.





## Administration Module

Privilege	Controls Access To:
AdvisorsAdministration.canView  * Not specific to Contact Center Advisor/Workforce Advisor. When the privilege is assigned, a Frontline Advisor user has access to the Administration module, as well.	Administration module
AdvisorsAdministration.DeletedObjects.canView	Objects in the Administration module pages that were deleted from the Genesys Administrator server
AdvisorsAdministration.SystemConfiguration.canView	<b>System Configuration</b> page in the Administration module



AdvisorsAdministration.Regions.canView	<b>Regions</b> page in the Administration menu
AdvisorsAdministration.ApplicationGroups.canView	Application Groups/Thresholds page in the Administration module
AdvisorsAdministration.ContactCenters.canView	<b>Contact Centers</b> page in the Administration module
AdvisorsAdministration.ApplicationConfiguration.canView	<b>Application Configuration</b> page in the Administration module
AdvisorsAdministration.AgentGroupConfiguration.canView	<b>Agent Group Configuration</b> page in the Administration module
AdvisorsAdministration.ContactGroupConfiguration.canView	<b>Contact Group Configuration</b> page in the Administration module
AdvisorsAdministration.Metrics.canView	Metric Manager <b>Report Metrics</b> page in the Administration module
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.canCreate	Create and Copy functions in the Metric Manager, which are used to create custom metrics
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.canEdit	Edit function in the Report Metrics Manager, which is used to edit all metrics
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.canDelete	Delete function in the Report Metrics Manager, which is used to delete custom metrics
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.SourceMetrics.canView	Metric Manager <b>Source Metrics</b> page in the Administration module
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.SourceMetrics.canCreate	<b>Create Source Metrics</b> button on the <b>Source Metrics</b> page
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.SourceMetrics.canEdit	Edit function on the <b>Source Metrics</b> page, which is used to edit source metrics
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.SourceMetrics.canDelete	Delete function on the <b>Source Metrics</b> page, which is used to delete custom source metrics
AdvisorsAdministration.DistributionLists.canView	<b>Distribution Lists</b> page in the Administration module
AdvisorsAdministration.ManualAlerts.canView	<b>Manual Alerts</b> page in the Administration module
AdvisorsAdministration.RMC.Notifications.canView	<p>User has access to the following pages in the Administration module:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Notification Templates</li> <li>• Notification Lists</li> </ul> <p>User can create a new notification template in the <b>Resource Management</b> window and use it once, or save the template to use it again. / The <b>Control Panel</b> section does not appear in the Administration module's navigation pane and there are no links to the following pages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Notification Templates</li> <li>• Notification Lists</li> </ul> <p>User can create a template in the <b>Resource Management</b> window and use it once; there is no option to save a new template for reuse.</p>



## Advisors Dashboards

Privilege	Controls Access To:
Advisors.ChangePassword.canView	Change Password function
Advisors.RMC.canView	Resource Management Console (RMC)
Advisors.RMC.ManageAgentSkills.canView	<b>Manage Skills</b> pane in the RMC window
Advisors.RMC.ManageAgentStatus.canView	<b>Manage Status</b> pane in the RMC window

## Contact Center Advisor

Privilege	Controls Access To:
ContactCenterAdvisor.Dashboard.canView	Contact Center Advisor dashboard
ContactCenterAdvisor.Dashboard.AgentGroupsPane.canView	Data in the <b>Agent Groups</b> pane
ContactCenterAdvisor.Dashboard.ColumnChooser.canView	Column chooser
ContactCenterAdvisor.Dashboard.EnterpriseStats.canView	The Enterprise row and statistics on the dashboard
ContactCenterAdvisor.Dashboard.PivotSelect.canView	The hierarchy grouping drop-down list on the <b>Contact Centers</b> pane.

## Workforce Advisor

Privilege	Controls Access To:
WorkforceAdvisor.Dashboard.AgentGroupsPane.canView	Data in the <b>Agent Groups</b> pane
WorkforceAdvisor.Dashboard.canView	The WA dashboard
WorkforceAdvisor.Dashboard.ColumnChooser.canView	Column Chooser
WorkforceAdvisor.Dashboard.EnterpriseStats.canView	The Enterprise row in the pivot table ( <b>Contact Centers</b> pane).
WorkforceAdvisor.Dashboard.PivotSelect.canView	The hierarchy grouping drop-down list on the <b>Contact Centers</b> pane.

**NOTE:** Because there are additional hierarchies in WA specifically to display agent group contact centers, users must have permission to use the hierarchy grouping drop-down list if agent group contact centers are configured.

## [+] Show FA Privileges

In FA, you use RBAC to control users' access to:



- tabs on the FA administration page
- portions of tabs
- the entire FA dashboard

The following tables list the RBAC privileges that are available for Frontline Advisor users.

See the following documents for more information about configuring user profiles:

- [Framework Configuration Manager Help](#)
- [Genesys Administrator Extension Help](#)

### Tip

While you can use any Genesys configuration interface to import Advisors privileges into a Role, or to assign Role-based permissions to Users or Access Groups for access to the Advisors business attributes, you can view the Advisors privileges associated with a Role only in Genesys Configuration Manager.

## Administration Module

Privilege	Controls Access To:
AdvisorsAdministration.canView	Administration module

## Advisors Dashboards

Privilege	Controls Access To:
Advisors.ChangePassword.canView	Change Password function

## Frontline Advisor Dashboard

Privilege	Controls Access To:
AdvisorsAdministration.Metrics.canView	<b>Report Metrics</b> page
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.canCreate	The Create and Copy functions in the Report Metrics Manager. Users require this privilege to create custom metrics.
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.canEdit	The Edit function in the Report Metrics Manager. Users require this privilege to edit metrics.
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.canDelete	The Delete function in the Report Metrics Manager. Users require this privilege to delete custom



	metrics.
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.SourceMetrics.canView	<b>Source Metrics</b> page
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.SourceMetrics.canCreate	The <b>Create Source Metrics</b> button on the <b>Source Metrics</b> page. Users require this privilege to create custom source metrics.
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.SourceMetrics.canEdit	The Edit function on the <b>Source Metrics</b> page. Users require this privilege to edit source metrics.
AdvisorsAdministration.MMW.SourceMetrics.canDelete	The Delete function does not display on the Source Metrics page. Users require this privilege to delete custom source metrics.
FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.canView	Frontline Advisor supervisor dashboard
FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.TeamsPane.canView <i>The FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.canView privilege must also be present</i>	<b>Teams</b> pane in the FA supervisor dashboard. In addition to the <b>Teams</b> pane, the <b>Alerts</b> pane is not displayed to users to whom you have not assigned this privilege.
FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.AlertsPane.canView <i>Requires the FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.canView and FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.TeamsPane.canView privileges</i>	<b>Alerts</b> pane. If you have not assigned the FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.TeamsPane.canView privilege to a user, the user will not have access to the <b>Alerts</b> pane even though the FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.AlertsPane.canView privilege is assigned.
FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.ColumnChooser.canView <i>Requires the FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.canView privilege</i>	Column Chooser
FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.TeamsPane.canSort <i>Requires the FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.canView and FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.TeamsPane.canView privileges</i>	The data sorting functionality in the <b>Teams</b> pane
FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.TeamAlertsPane.canSort <i>Requires the FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.canView, FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.TeamsPane.canView and FrontlineAdvisor.SupervisorDashboard.AlertsPane.canView privileges</i>	The data sorting functionality in the <b>Alerts</b> pane
FrontlineAdvisor.Administration.canView	Frontline Advisor page in the administration module
FrontlineAdvisor.Administration.Settings.canView <i>Requires the FrontlineAdvisor.Administration.canView privilege</i>	The <b>Settings</b> tab on the FA administration page in the Administration module.
FrontlineAdvisor.Administration.Hierarchy.canReload <i>Requires the FrontlineAdvisor.Administration.canView and FrontlineAdvisor.Administration.Settings.canView privileges</i>	The hierarchy reload action on the <b>Settings</b> tab of the FA administration page in the Administration module.




---

# Create the Data Manager Base Object Configuration User

You must configure a user account in Configuration Server so that security permissions can be assigned to allow object configuration for the CCAdv/WA module in the Advisors Administration module (**Base Object Configuration** page). This is the *Object Configuration User*. This user must be created in the Configuration Server *before* you install Advisors Platform. Advisors Platform installer prompts you for the account name.

## Deployment Roadmap

The arrow icon in the following roadmap indicates where you are in the Advisors deployment process.

1. **[+] Install the databases that correspond to the Advisors products you will deploy.**
  - a. Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database
  - b. Advisors Platform database
  - c. Metric Graphing database
2.  Create the Advisors User and the Object Configuration User in Configuration Server.
3. **[+] Install the Platform service on servers where it is required for Advisors components.**
  - Advisors Administration
  - Advisors Web Services
  - WA Server
  - FA Server with rollup engine
  - CCAdv/WA/FA Accessibility services
  - CCAdv/WA Resource Management console
4. Install each adapter that you will use and configure the adapter Application objects with Stat Server connections.
5. **[+] Install the Advisors components for your enterprise.**
  - a. Contact Center Advisor server (CCAdv XML Generator)
  - b. Workforce Advisor server
  - c. Frontline Advisor server
  - d. SDS and the CCAdv/WA Resource Management console
6. Make any required configuration changes.

You create the Object Configuration User account in a Genesys configuration interface, such as Genesys Administrator or GAX. The Object Configuration User account is a container for security permissions for objects (agent groups, calling lists, and queues) in the Configuration Server. You grant



a Read permission for the monitored objects to enable selection of one or more source objects as monitored objects in a deployment.

This configuration is not required on Platform deployments that do not have CCAdv/WA deployed. For example, if only FA is deployed on a particular Platform instance, this configuration must be left blank.



# Deploying Advisors

The **Deploying Advisors** section contains topics to assist you when you use the Performance Management Advisors installation files to deploy Advisors components. Ensure you read the **Prerequisites** before you begin deployment.

## Deploying Components Controlled by SCS

For general information about deploying components controlled by the Genesys Solution Control Server, see:

---

[Deploying Components Controlled by Solution Control Server](#)

## Deploying Advisors Platform

To deploy Advisors Platform, see:

---

[General Prerequisites](#)

[Prerequisites for Advisors Platform](#)

[Deploying Advisors Platform](#)

## Deploying Advisors Genesys Adapter

To deploy Advisors Genesys Adapter, see:

---

[General Prerequisites](#)

[Prerequisites for AGA](#)

[Deploying Advisors Genesys Adapter](#)

## Deploying Contact Center Advisor or Workforce Advisor

To deploy Contact Center Advisor or Workforce Advisor, see:

---

[General Prerequisites](#)

[Prerequisites for CCAdv and WA](#)

[Deploying CCAdv and WA](#)

## Deploying Frontline Advisor and Agent Advisor

To deploy Frontline Advisor, see:

## Deploying Resource Management Console

To deploy the Resource Management Console, see:



General Prerequisites

Prerequisites for FAAA

Deploying FAAA

General Prerequisites

Prerequisites for AGA

Deploying SDS and RMC



# Overview: Configuring Advisors Application Objects and Deploying Modules that are Controlled by SCS

This page provides a summary of the tasks that you must perform in order to deploy the Advisors modules that are controlled by Solution Control Server (SCS). For the list of Advisors modules that are controlled by SCS, see [Integration with Solution Control Server](#).

## Related Information

See the following topics for more information:

- [Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby](#)

## Procedure:

### Steps

1. Install a supported version of the Local Control Agent (LCA) on any server that includes, or will include, an Advisors module that SCS will control (some Genesys products install LCA as part of the product deployment, but Advisors do not). See [Integration with Solution Control Server](#) for a list of these modules.  
For information about supported versions of LCA, see [Genesys Interoperability Guide](#).
2. Locate the `lca.cfg` file in your LCA installation directory and change the `AppRespondTimeout` parameter to 60 seconds:  

```
[lca]
AppRespondTimeout = 60
```
3. Restart the LCA.
4. For each Advisors module that will be controlled by Solution Control Server, perform the following tasks in Genesys Administrator.



- a. Create an Application Template of type Genesys Generic Server; Advisors Application objects will use this Application Template. Do not use UI Application-type templates. Use only Server Application-type templates.
  - b. Create a Host object representing the host on which the Advisors module will run.
  - c. Create an Application representing this Advisors module.
  - d. For the Application, choose the template you created earlier, with type Genesys Generic Server.
  - e. Associate the Application object with its Host.
  - f. In the **[Server Info]** section of the Application object:
    - You must supply the **default port number** in the **[Server Info]** section. In release 8.5.1, Advisors modules ignore these port numbers; therefore, you can enter any port number, but Genesys recommends that you enter the following HTTP port values for servers. Where the Application represents:
      - Tomcat running the WA Server or FA with the rollup engine: Use the default HTTP port number, which is 8080.
      - CCAAdv XML Generator: Use the default HTTP port number, which is 8090.
      - AGA: Enter the HTTP port number that will be used for the AGA instance.
    - Enter a period (.) as a placeholder in both the **Working Directory** and the **Command Line** fields.
    - If this module has a backup in an HA deployment, specify the Application that is the **Backup Server** and choose the **Redundancy Type** of Warm Standby.
5. Install each Advisors module on its system.  
For applications that have a corresponding Application object in Configuration Server, the installer replaces the "." placeholders with the working directory specified during installation, and with the command that starts the server. The installer also updates the startup timeout and shutdown timeout, if necessary.

### Important

For an Advisors server to support HA, it must be configured as an Application complete with a backup Application in the Configuration Server before the Advisors server starts. If you configure an Advisors server as an Application, start the Advisors server, and then add the backup Application to the server's Application, the server will not fail over correctly.

6. Genesys recommends that you specify a **disconnect-switchover-timeout** value on the SCS to avoid failovers due to temporary connection losses such as very short network disconnects. In a Genesys configuration interface, such as Genesys Administrator, configure the option on the **Options** tab for your SCS Application. For additional information, see the [Genesys Management Framework](#) documentation.



# Configuring Advisors as a Solution

Using a Genesys configuration interface, such as Genesys Administrator or Genesys Administrator Extension (GAX), you can create an Advisors Solution object that gives you centralized control: you can start, stop, and run the components as a group, rather than as individual Applications.

The following procedure describes how to configure the Advisors Application objects as a Solution.

## Procedure: Create an Advisors Solution object

**Purpose:** To create an Advisors Solution using existing Advisors Application objects. Once the Advisors suite is configured as a Solution, you can start, stop, and run the Advisors components using either Genesys Administrator or the Solution Control Interface (SCI).

### Prerequisites

- Ensure the Advisors Application objects exist that will be part of the Solution.
- You will need a "third-party" Application configured for every Advisors Web Services node that you want to control with the Solution.

### Steps

1. Follow the **Creating Solution Objects** procedure, available on the **Solutions** page in the *Genesys Administrator Extension Help*, to create the Advisors Solution object. Note the following recommended settings for an Advisors Solution:
  - You must select an option for **Solution Type**, but note the following limitations:
    - If you select Default Solution Type or Framework, you might have problems to start and stop the Applications with the Solution Control Interface (see the Note related to this topic in the **Creating Solution Objects** procedure).
    - If you specify the type as Unknown, the Solution might fail to save.
  - For **Application Type**, use Genesys Generic Server for Advisors. Enter the precise version number of the Generic Server template in your system.

If the Generic Server template version you enter does not match that of the template used for the Advisors Application objects, then you will not be able to start or stop the Solution; its commands will be disabled in menus and toolbars.

If the Generic Server template versions are different for some of the Advisors Applications, make an entry for each version on the **Application Definitions** tab.
  - In the **Application Definitions** tab, you can use a **Startup Priority** of 1.
  - In the **Applications** tab, set the following startup priority for the Advisors Applications (it is



acceptable to use the same **Startup Priority** number for more than one Application; Applications that have the same startup priority setting will start concurrently):

- a. Advisors Genesys Adapters (for Frontline Advisor [FA] and/or Contact Center Advisor [CCAdv]) = 1
- b. CCAdv XML Generator = 2
- c. FA Server = 2 or 3
- d. Advisors Administration, Platform, and Advisors Web services = 4
- e. Workforce Advisor (WA) server = 5



# Deploying Advisors Platform

You run a .jar installation file to deploy Advisors Platform. Use the procedure below to start your installation. The installer guides you through the deployment. The screens displayed during your deployment are dependent on the selections you make on the **Module to Install** screen. Information about each screen is available on the **Installation Screens** tab below.

You can deploy Advisors Platform on a Red Hat Linux or a Windows platform, and with Oracle or MS SQL databases.


If you are migrating your Advisors installation, see the *Pulse Advisors Migration Guide*.

## Warning

Do not use the database scripts that were supplied with the Platform distribution for Hot Fix release 8.5.202.10. Instead, use the database scripts supplied with release 8.5.202.09. If you have already migrated the Platform schema to release 8.5.202.09, no migration scripts need to be applied to the Platform schema during migration to release 8.5.202.10. For migration, follow the relevant [Data Migration Path](#) section in the *Pulse Advisors Migration Guide*.

## Deployment Roadmap

The arrow icon in the following roadmap indicates where you are in the Advisors deployment process.

1. **[+] Install the databases that correspond to the Advisors products you will deploy.**
  - a. Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database
  - b. Advisors Platform database
  - c. Metric Graphing database
2. Create the Advisors User and the Object Configuration User in Configuration Server.
3.  Install the Platform service on servers where it is required for Advisors components. The Platform service is a prerequisite for installing the following components:
  - Advisors Administration
  - Advisors Web Services
  - WA Server
  - FA Server with rollup engine
  - CCAAdv/WA/FA Accessibility services
  - CCAAdv/WA Resource Management Console
4. Install each adapter that you will use and configure the adapter Application objects with Stat Server connections.



**5. [+] Install the Advisors components for your enterprise.**

- Contact Center Advisor server (CCAdv XML Generator)
- Workforce Advisor server
- Frontline Advisor server
- SDS and the CCAdv/WA Resource Management Console (RMC)

**6. Make any required configuration changes.**

## Deploying the Advisors Platform Application

### Procedure:

#### Steps

**1. Launch the installation file.****[+] Show Steps for Linux****a. Navigate to the Advisors home directory:**

```
cd /home/advisors
```

**b. Run the Advisors platform installer. The page format of this document might cause a line break in the following command, but you must enter it on one line in the command prompt window:**

```
./jdk1.8.0_<version>/bin/java -jar advisors-platform-installer-<version>.jar
```

**[+] Show Step for Windows**

Do one of the following:

- Open a command line window, and enter the following command:

```
advisors-platform-installer-<version>.jar
```

- Double-click the advisors-platform-installer-<version>.jar file in the release bundle.

Double-clicking might not work due to system settings, but using the command line terminal should always work. Genesys recommends using the command line window to launch the installer.

**2. Use the **Next** and **Back** buttons on the installer to navigate through the installation screens. Enter your information on each screen. Use the information provided in the [Installer Screens](#) section on this page to complete the remaining deployment screens. Ensure you provide**



complete information on each screen.

3. On the final screen, click **Install**.  
If errors display, diagnose them in the **Errors** tab, or refer to the **Troubleshooting** tab on this page.
4. If you use a Windows platform, install the Advisors windows service as follows. Do this only for Advisors servers that are not controlled by Solution Control Server (SCS). For the list of servers that are not controlled by SCS, see [Integration with Solution Control Server](#).

#### [+] Show Steps

1. Open a command prompt, and change directory first to your Advisors base directory (for example, Program Files\GCTI\Advisors), then to bin.
2. On Windows 32-bit machines, run `installService-x86.bat` to install the service.
3. On Windows 64-bit machines, run `installService-x64.bat` to install the service.
4. After installation, you can make changes to the configuration of the service (for example, JVM options) using the `AdvisorsService.exe` utility in the `<Advisors directory>/apache-tomcat-<version>/bin` directory, if needed.

If you use a Linux platform, validate that the Advisors Platform component installed successfully, and then configure Advisors Platform to run automatically as a system service. Do this only for Advisors servers that are not controlled by Solution Control Server. For the list of servers that are not controlled by SCS, see [Integration with Solution Control Server](#).

#### [+] Show Steps

- a. Open the shell.
- b. Run the following export command to add the JDK to your path:  

```
export PATH=/home/advisors/jdk1.8.0_<version>/bin:$PATH
```
- c. Change the owner of the directory in which you installed the Advisors Platform to the Advisors user:  

```
chown -R advisors:advisors <Advisors directory>
```
- d. Test the installation as the Advisors user.
  - i. Specify the JDK path for this session (temporarily):  

```
export JAVA_HOME=/home/advisors/jdk1.8.0_<version>
```
  - ii. Start Advisors Platform:  

```
./<Advisors directory>/apache-tomcat-<version>/bin/catalina.sh run
```
  - iii. Ensure that there are no errors reported and that the Advisors Administration module is available at `http://<host>:8080/`.
- e. Configure Advisors Platform to run automatically as a system service.



- i. Using the `sudo` command, create an `/etc/init.d/advisors` file with the following contents; remember to replace `<version>` with the JDK version number that you use and `<Advisors directory>` with your directory's name:

```
#!/bin/bash
# description: Advisors Platform Start Stop Restart
# processname: advisors
# chkconfig: 235 20 80

JAVA_HOME=/home/advisors/jdk1.8.0_<version>
export JAVA_HOME
PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$PATH
export PATH
ADVISORS_BIN=/home/advisors/<Advisors directory>/apache-tomcat-<version>/bin

case $1 in
start)
/bin/su advisors $ADVISORS_BIN/startup.sh
;;
stop)
/bin/su advisors $ADVISORS_BIN/shutdown.sh
;;
restart)
/bin/su advisors $ADVISORS_BIN/shutdown.sh
/bin/su advisors $ADVISORS_BIN/startup.sh
;;
esac
exit 0
```

- ii. Using the `sudo` command, make the startup script executable:

```
sudo chmod 755 /etc/init.d/advisors
```

- iii. Using the `sudo` command, configure the system to start the Advisors process at boot time:

```
sudo chkconfig --add advisors
sudo chkconfig --level 235 advisors on
```

- iv. Check that the configuration is correct:

```
sudo chkconfig --list advisors
```

The output should be similar to the following:

```
advisors 0:off 1:off 2:on 3:on 4:off 5:on 6:off
```

- v. Using the `sudo` command, test the service startup script:

```
sudo service advisors start
```

Wait until startup is complete and then open the browser (`http://<host>:8080/`). The Administration module should be available after you log in.



- vi. Using the `sudo` command, test the service stop script:

```
sudo service advisors stop
```

Wait until shutdown is complete and then open the browser (<http://<host>:8080/>). The page should be unavailable.

### Important

To avoid file permission issues, Genesys recommends that you always start the Advisors service with the same user that you used during installation. This user should be a sudoer.

- vii. Using the `sudo` command, test that Advisors Platform starts automatically after a reboot:

### Warning

The following command restarts the whole system.

```
sudo shutdown -r now
```

Wait until the system reboots, and then open the browser (<http://<host>:8080/>). The Administration module should be available after you log in.

## Installer Screens

### [+] Authentication Options

**NEW** The **Authentication Options** screen is new in release 8.5.2. Starting with Advisors release 8.5.2, you have two user login options:

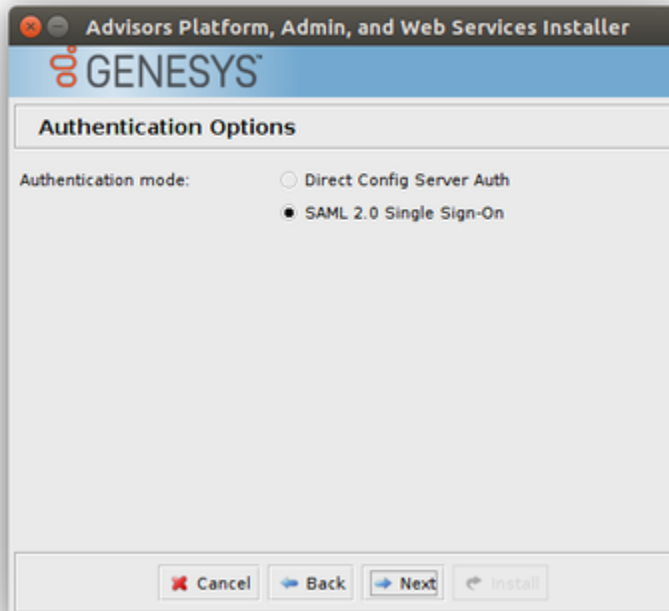
- Use the existing Configuration Server-based authentication system
- Use the SAML Single Sign-On (SSO) login process

Note that the following features are not supported when using the Single Sign-On login process:

- Change password and Forgot password functionality
- Advisors Resource Management Console (RMC)



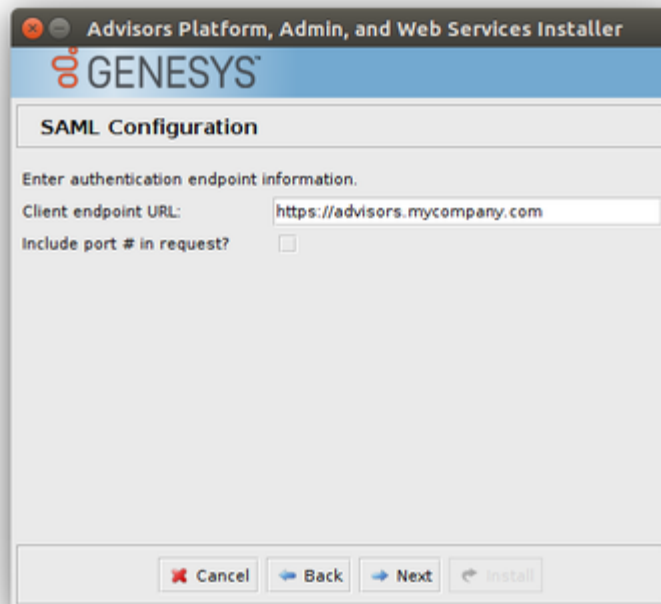
To continue to use the Configuration Server-based authentication system, which Advisors applications have used in earlier releases, select the **Direct Configuration Server Auth** authentication mode on the **Authentication Options** installation screen. To use the SAML SSO login system, select the **SAML 2.0 Single Sign-On** option.



If you opt to use the SSO method, the installer will prompt you for additional information. See the descriptions of the following screens for additional information:

- SAML Configuration

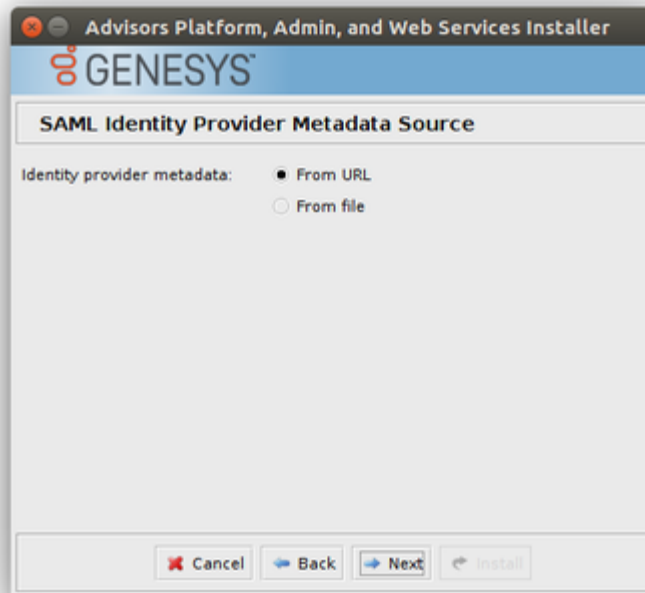




The endpoint URL should be the URL that users will use to access Advisors applications. If Advisors components are deployed in a clustered configuration, this would typically be the single URL to which users are directed and which then load-balances these requests across the cluster. Load balancing with sticky sessions is required when using the SAML SSO login process, and is typically required in clustered Advisors deployment regardless of the authentication process used.

- If your SAML Identity Provider (IdP) asks for an Assertion Consumer URL or "Single Sign-On" URL for IdP-initiated login, this should consist of the endpoint URL, described above, with the added path /adv/saml/SSO. For example, `https://advisors.mycompany.com/adv/saml/SSO`.
- If your SAML IdP prompts you for the Advisors Service Provider (SP) "Entity Id" or metadata, this should consist of the endpoint URL, described above, with the added path /adv/saml/metadata. For example, `https://advisors.mycompany.com/adv/saml/metadata`.
- SAML Identity Provider Metadata Source

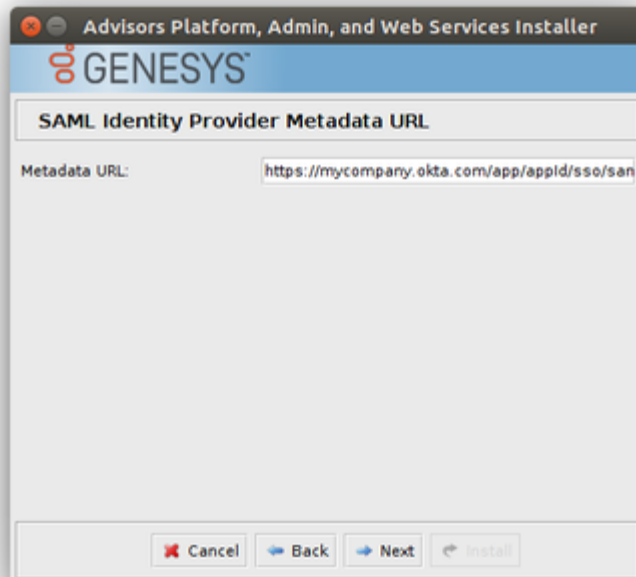




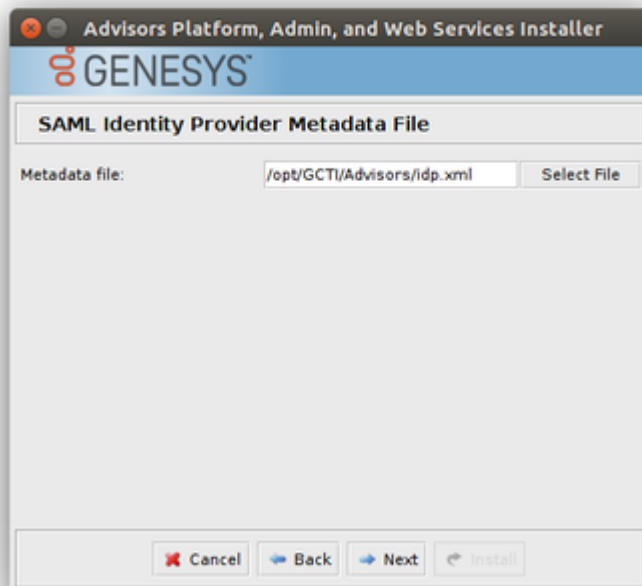
SAML Identity Provider (IdP) metadata can be configured by providing a file containing the metadata or a URL where the IdP metadata is served. This metadata should be provided by your Single Sign-On system. Refer to the documentation for your particular system for information on how to configure an Identity Provider and obtain its metadata. The following two figures show the screens on which you either provide the location of the metadata file or provide the URL from which the IdP metadata is served.

- SAML Identity Provider Metadata URL





- SAML Identity Provider Metadata File



## [+] Administration Configuration - CCAdv XMLGen



The **Administration Configuration - CCAdv XMLGen** screen displays for nodes on which you opted to install the Administration module (on the **Module to Install** screen). If your Advisors deployment includes XML Generator, you must enter information on this screen. This ensures XML Generator stays up-to-date with changes made in the Administration module.

If you are not deploying Advisors in a warm standby configuration, then enter information about the XML Generator application in the fields for the primary application.

If your deployment does not include XML Generator (for example, if you are installing only Frontline Advisor in this deployment), then leave the fields on the **Administration Configuration - CCAdv XMLGen** screen blank.

## [+] Administration Configuration - SC Server

The **Administration Configuration - SC Server** screen displays for nodes on which you opted to install the Administration module (on the **Module to Install** screen). If your Advisors deployment includes XML Generator, you must enter information on this screen. This ensures XML Generator stays up-to-date with changes made in the Administration module.

If your deployment does not include XML Generator (for example, if you are installing only Frontline Advisor in this deployment), then leave the field on the **Administration Configuration - SC Server** screen blank.

## [+] Backup Config Server

The **Backup Config Server** screen displays only if you selected the Add backup server checkbox on the **Genesys Config Server Connection Details** screen. Enter the backup Configuration Server details:

- Backup Server Name
- Backup Server Address
- Backup Server Port Number

## [+] Cache Configuration

On the **Cache Configuration** screen, specify the port to be used by the distributed cache for communication. If you are installing only one deployment of Advisors, accept the default that the installer offers.

The port number must be unique to this deployment of Advisors. All nodes in one cluster must use the same port number.

## [+] CCAdv/WA Object Configuration User

On the **CCAdv/WA Object Configuration User** screen, enter the name of the Object Configuration User account (configured in Configuration Server). You must enter this information if you use a Genesys data source and will be deploying Contact Center Advisor/Workforce Advisor (CCAdv/WA). This is not applicable on a Platform installation if CCAdv/WA is deployed with only Cisco data sources,



or if you intend to deploy only Frontline Advisor (FA).

The Object Configuration User account is used by Data Manager for object configuration for the CCAdv/WA modules.

You are not prompted for the password for this user account because there is no user authentication performed for this user.

## [+] Cluster Node Configuration

On the **Cluster Node configuration** screen, configure the Advisors Platform installation as a unique node in the cluster. Each server on which you install Advisors Platform requires a unique cluster node ID. On this screen you also enter the port number that nodes in this cluster use to communicate.

Configure the node with the following information:

- Node ID – A unique ID across all Platform installations. The ID must not contain spaces or any special characters, and must be only alpha numeric. Node IDs are not case sensitive. Within one cluster, Node1, node1, and NODE1 are considered to be the same ID. You can use node1, node2, and so on.
- IP Address/Hostname – The IP address or host name that other cluster members will use to contact this node, for example, 192.168.100.1. It is not localhost or 127.0.0.1. When using numerical IP v6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.
- Port number that the nodes in this cluster use to communicate. If you are installing only one deployment of Advisors, accept the default that the installer offers. The port number must be unique to this deployment of Advisors. All nodes in one cluster must use the same port number.
- Localhost address – The local host address: localhost or 127.0.0.1.

## [+] Destination Directory

On the **Destination Directory** screen, specify the directory for your Advisors installation.

Select the directory in which the files will be installed (the Advisors base directory).

The default directory is `..\GCTI\Advisors`. If this directory does not yet exist, you will be prompted to create it.

## [+] Genesys Advisors Platform Database

On the **Genesys Advisors Platform Database** screen, enter the database connectivity parameters for the already created or upgraded database (that is, the database must be present and at the current version prior to running the installer). If the database server is a named instance, then omit the port number.

If you use numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.

On the **Genesys Advisors Platform Database** screen, specify the parameters for the Advisors platform database:

---



- **Database server**—The host name or IP address of the database server. When using numerical IP v6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.
- **Database port number**—The database server's port number.
- **Database name (SQL Server) or Service name (Oracle)**—The unique name or service name of the database instance.
- **Database user**—The Advisors user with full access to the Advisors platform database.
- **Database user password**—The password created and used for the Advisors platform database.

## [+] Genesys Advisors Platform Database - Advanced

On the **Genesys Advisors Platform Database** screen, enter the database connectivity parameters for the already created or upgraded database (that is, the database must be present and at the current version prior to running the installer). If the database server is a named instance, then omit the port number.

If you use numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.

On the **Genesys Advisors Platform Database - Advanced** screen, specify the parameters for the Advisors platform database:

- **Database user and Database user password**—The database schema and password created and used for the Platform database.
- **Locate file**—Enter the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator. The installation wizard applies the specified advanced connection string when configuring the data sources.

## [+] Genesys Config Server Connection Details

On the **Genesys Config Server Connection Details** screen, configure the connection to the Genesys Configuration Server.

- **Config Server Name** - The name of the primary configuration server; for example, confserv. The name is obtained from your Genesys configuration interface (for example, Genesys Administrator) and is case sensitive.
- **Config Server Address** - The name or IP address of the machine hosting the Configuration Server. When using numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.
- **Config Server Port Number** - The port on which the configuration server is listening; for example, 2020. If you enter a port number in this field, and then enable a TLS connection, this port number is ignored.
- **Config Server Client Name** - Enter the name of the application that Advisors Platform will use to log in to the Configuration Server (for example, default).
- **Config Server user** - The user name of the account that Advisors Platform will use to connect to the Configuration Server; for example, default.
- **Config Server password** - The password of the account that Advisors Platform will use to connect to the Configuration Server. The Genesys Configuration Server password is encrypted and saved in the

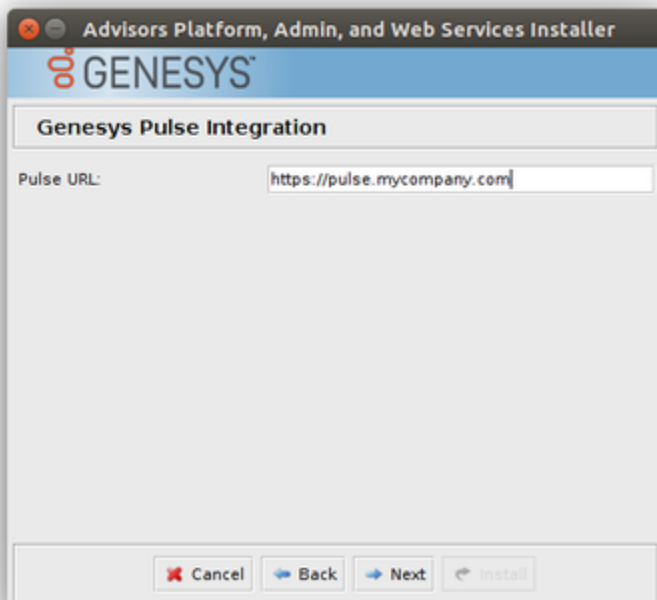


..\GCTI\Advisors\conf\GenesysConfig.properties file by default (unless altered). To change the password, see [Change Encrypted Passwords](#).

- **Enable TLS connection** – To configure a TLS connection to the Configuration Server, select this option on the installation screen.
- **Config Server TLS Port Number** – Enter the Configuration Server TLS port number. When TLS is enabled, Advisors Platform uses the TLS port number instead of the unsecured port number.
- **Locate TLS properties file** – Identify the location of the TLS properties file. The TLS properties file contains all the properties required to connect successfully using TLS, as well as any other optional TLS attributes that you use.
- **Add backup server** – Select this checkbox if you have a backup Configuration Server for this installation.  
If you select the Add backup server checkbox, the **Backup config server** screen displays after you click Next.

## [+] Genesys Pulse Integration

**NEW** Provide a URL to point users to your installation of Genesys Pulse. Entering the Pulse installation URL adds a link to Pulse in the navigation bar of each Advisors dashboard.



## [+] Java Development Kit

On the **Java Development Kit** screen, enter or select the root directory of the Java Development Kit (JDK).



## [+] Language Options

On the **Language Options** screen, specify the languages to use in email templates. You can select one option, or more than one, regardless of the regional and language setting of the system on which you are installing the platform. You can also specify which language to use as the default language; you can select only one default language. The default language is the language in which metric names and descriptions will be shown if there are none provided for the language in which the user is viewing the dashboard.

## [+] Mail Service Configuration

On the **Mail Service Configuration** screen, specify the email settings that the Forgot Password functionality will use to send email.

- SMTP Server—The SMTP service to use.
- Application from address—The *sender* of this email; for example, D0-NOT-REPLY@genesys.com.
- Application to address—The *recipient* of this email; for example, admin@genesys.com.

## [+] Metric Graphing Database

On the **Metric Graphing Database** screen, enter the database connectivity parameters for the already created or upgraded database (that is, the database must be present and at the current version prior to running the installer). If the database server is a named instance, then omit the port number.

If you use numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.

On the **Metric Graphing Database** screen, specify the parameters for the metric graphing database:

- Database server—The host name or IP address of the database server. When using numerical IP v6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.
- Database port number—The database server's port number.
- Database name (SQL Server) or Service name (Oracle)—The unique name or service name of the database instance.
- Database user—The Advisors user with full access to the Advisors metric graphing database.
- Database user password—The password created and used for the metric graphing database.

## [+] Metric Graphing Database - Advanced

On the **Metric Graphing Database - Advanced** screen, enter the database connectivity parameters for the already created or upgraded database (that is, the database must be present and at the current version prior to running the installer). If the database server is a named instance, then omit the port number.



If you use numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.

On the **Metric Graphing Database - Advanced** screen, specify the parameters for the metric graphing database:

- `Database user` and `Database user password`—The database schema and password created and used for the metric graphing database.
- `Locate file`—Enter the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator. The installation wizard applies the specified advanced connection string when configuring the data sources.

## [+] Modules to Install

Select the `Administration workbench` checkbox to install the Administration module. Installing the Administration workbench adds an `Administration.properties` file to the `<advisors>\conf` folder. You can install more than one instance of the Administration module in a clustered environment. For more information about a clustered Advisors suite server, see [Scaling the System to Increase Capacity](#).

**NEW** Select the `Genesys Pulse Integration` checkbox to configure a link in the Advisors navigation bar pointing to your installation of Genesys Pulse. This option only needs to be installed once per Advisors deployment and applies to all servers. If installed again, the navigation bar will point to the most recently configured link. If not configured, no link to Genesys Pulse will be displayed in the Advisors navigation bar.

**NEW** Select the `Advisors Web Services` checkbox to install the Web services. Starting with release 8.5.2, this option installs all of the dashboards, as well as the metric graphing services. The Platform installer will prompt you for the Metric Graphing database options when you have selected the `Advisors Web Services` option because metric graphing is not an optional feature; the metric graphing services are always installed with the other Web services.

You must install the Advisors Web services on [presentation nodes](#). If you will later install Contact Center Advisor (CCAdv) XML Generator, Workforce Advisor (WA) Server, or Frontline Advisor (FA) Server with rollup engine on this node, Genesys recommends that you avoid installing the Web Services on the node, for best performance. The Advisors Web Services option does not install the Resource Management Console or the accessible dashboards. For CCAdv/WA, you have the option to select those features when you run the CCAdv/WA installation wizard. The FA accessible dashboard is automatically installed when you run the FA installation wizard.

## [+] Oracle JDBC Driver

On the **Oracle JDBC Driver** screen, specify the location of the Oracle Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) driver. See the [Genesys Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide](#) for information about drivers supported in release 8.5.1.

## [+] Password Management Options



On the **Password Management Options** screen, configure the following.

1. Select the Allow Password Modification? checkbox to enable the Forgot your password? functionality in the Advisors login page, the Administration module, and the dashboards. If you leave this option unselected, you still see the functionality in the user interface, but if you try to use it, Advisors tells you that password modification is not enabled. Note that the user's ability to see this functionality depends on the `Advisors.ChangePassword.canView` privilege being granted to the user using a Genesys configuration interface.

### Warning

Performance Management Advisors do not fully support the password security authentication options available in Management Framework. As a result, it is possible for users to get locked out of the Advisors applications. To avoid lockouts, do one or both of the following:

- Change the following two options in Management Framework to true: the **no-change-password-at-first-login** option and the **override-password-expiration** option.
- Assign the `Advisors.ChangePassword.canView` privilege to all users.

For information about the **no-change-password-at-first-login** and **override-password-expiration** options, see the [Genesys Framework Configuration Options Reference Manual](#).

## [+] RDBMS Type And JDBC Connectivity

On the **RDBMS Type And JDBC Connectivity** screen, select either the SQL Server or the Oracle option – whichever you use for database(s). You must also select the Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) type that matches your environment. Select **Basic** for standalone databases or **Advanced** for clustered database configurations. The screens that follow are dependent on your selections on this screen.

## [+] Tomcat Configuration

**NEW** On the **Tomcat Configuration** screen, you can configure the port numbers that Tomcat will use, if necessary. You will typically use the default values that the installation wizard provides, except in the following situations:

- You are going to install two different deployments of Advisors on the same machine, so you require two sets of port numbers. For more information, see [Multiple Advisors Deployments on One System](#).
- Other software is running on the same host and is already using the ports, in which case you must assign other ports for Tomcat to use.

## [+] User Management Options

On the **User Management Options** screen, configure options associated with user activities.

1. Add the name of the default Genesys tenant to which new users will be added. The name of the tenant



is case sensitive.

## Troubleshooting

The following Table shows parameter validation errors that you may encounter at the end of installation.

Installation Error Message	Cause
<pre>[echo] Setting up cluster member configuration for this node  [java] Connecting to database: inf-wolf.us.int.genesyslab.com;oracle:1521;DatabaseName=orcl;user=yevgeny_plt_81 ... [java] updating node: KoolNode ipAddress: 138.120.xx.xx localhost: localhost [java] java.sql.SQLException: ORA-01013: user requested cancel of current operation [java] at oracle.jdbc.driver.DatabaseError.throwSQLException(DatabaseError.java:112) [java] at oracle.jdbc.driver.T4CTTIoer.processError(T4CTTIoer.java:331) [java] at oracle.jdbc.driver.T4CTTIoer.processError(T4CTTIoer.java:288) [java] at oracle.jdbc.driver.T4C80all.receive(T4C80all.java:745) [java] at oracle.jdbc.driver.T4CPreparedStatement.doOall8(T4CPreparedStatement.java:219) [java] at oracle.jdbc.driver.T4CPreparedStatement.executeForRows(T4CPreparedStatement.java:970) [java] at oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleStatement.doExecuteWithTimeout(OracleStatement.java:1190) [java] at oracle.jdbc.driver.OraclePreparedStatement.executeInternal(OraclePreparedStatement.java:3370) [java] at oracle.jdbc.driver.OraclePreparedStatement.executeUpdate(OraclePreparedStatement.java:3454) [java] at com.informiam.installer.DAO.executeTimedOutUpdate(DAO.java:214) [java] at com.informiam.installer.ConfigureClusterMember.performActivities(ConfigureClusterMember.java:60) [java] at com.informiam.installer.AbstractDatabaseUtility.doMain(AbstractDatabaseUtility.java:56) [java] at com.informiam.installer.ConfigureClusterMember.main(ConfigureClusterMember.java:34)</pre>	<p>This type of error may happen when the installer attempts to update a table which is locked by a not-committed transaction (usually with Oracle database).</p> <p>The wording of the error may differ, but the key phrase to look for is ORA-01013: user requested cancel of current operation. Typically this could happen with an Oracle database when someone runs a query such as DELETE FROM &lt;TABLE_NAME&gt; without then executing COMMIT, and the installer tries to update the same table. In this case, the installer will wait for 20 seconds and fail with an error similar to the above. To correct this, execute COMMIT; after the DELETE statement and re-run the installer. To prevent this situation, always run COMMIT; manually updating tables in Oracle.</p>
<pre>[java] Failed to connect to the database using connection URL:  [java] jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnn;DatabaseName=ys_pldb;user=sa;password=very_secure_pwd;selectMethod=cursor [java] The following exception was thrown: com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerException: The TCP/IP connection to the host 192.168.xx.yy, port nnn has failed. Error: "Connection refused. Verify the connection properties, check that an instance of SQL Server is running on the host and accepting TCP/IP connections at the port, and that no firewall is blocking TCP connections to the port."</pre>	<p>Wrong database server name / IP address or port number</p>
<pre>[java] Failed to connect to the database using</pre>	<p>Wrong database name</p>



Installation Error Message	Cause
<p>connection URL:</p> <pre>[java] jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnnn;DatabaseName=NotAPlatformDB;selectMethod=cursor; user=sa;password=very_secure_pwd [java] The following exception was thrown: com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerException: The TCP/IP connection to the host 192.168.xx.yy, port nnnn has failed. Error: "connect timed out. Verify the connection properties, check that an instance of SQL Server is running on the host and accepting TCP/IP connections at the port, and that no firewall is blocking TCP connections to the port."</pre>	
<pre>[java] Exception while connecting: Login failed for user 'badUserId'.</pre> <pre>[java] url used: jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnnn;DatabaseName=ys_pldb;selectMethod=cursor; user=badUserId;password=very_secure_password</pre>	Wrong database user name or password
<pre>[echo] pinging cluster node IP address 138.120.yy.zz...</pre> <pre>[java] WARNING! Host 138.120.yy.zz is unknown - java.net.UnknownHostException: 138.120.yy.zz. This may be due to a firewall blocking requests or a specific server configuration, e.g.: permissions.</pre> <pre>[java] ERROR! Host 138.120.yy.zz is unknown - java.net.UnknownHostException: 138.120.yy.zz. This may be due to a firewall blocking requests or a specific server configuration, e.g.: permissions.</pre> <pre>[java] Exception in thread "main" java.security.InvalidParameterException: Host 138.120.yy.zz is unknown - java.net.UnknownHostException: 138.120.yy.zz. This may be due to a firewall blocking requests or a specific server configuration, e.g.: permissions.</pre>	<p>The cluster member node identified by the IP address specified is not reachable. This may be for one of the following reasons:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The host is not online</li> <li>• A firewall is blocking access to the host</li> <li>• The IP address of the host is incorrect</li> <li>• The host is configured to not respond to ICMP ping requests</li> </ul>
<pre>Apr 11, 2011 3:53:46 PM oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver registerMBeans</pre> <pre>WARNING: Error while registering Oracle JDBC Diagnosability MBean. java.security.AccessControlException: access denied (javax.management.MBeanTrustPermission register) at java.security.AccessControlContext.checkPermission(Unknown Source) at java.lang.SecurityManager.checkPermission(Unknown Source) at com.sun.jmx.interceptor.DefaultMBeanServerInterceptor.checkMBeanTrust Permission(Unknown Source) at com.sun.jmx.interceptor.DefaultMBeanServerInterceptor.registerMBean(Unknown Source) at com.sun.jmx.mbeanserver.JmxMBeanServer.registerMBean(Unknown Source) at oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver.registerMBeans(OracleDriver.java:360) at oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver\$1.run(OracleDriver.java:199) at java.security.AccessController.doPrivileged(Native Method) at oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver.&lt;clinit&gt;(OracleDriver.java:195)</pre>	<p>Produced in error and can be ignored.</p> <p>Displays in the Errors tab when installing Platform with Oracle JDBC ojdbc6-11.2.0.2.0, and accurately reports that installation was successful.</p>
Exception in thread "AWT-EventQueue-0"	Produced in error and can be ignored.



Installation Error Message	Cause
<pre>java.lang.ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException: 32 at sun.font.FontDesignMetrics.charsWidth(Unknown Source) at javax.swing.text.Utilities.getTabbedTextOffset(Unknown Source) at javax.swing.text.Utilities.getTabbedTextOffset(Unknown Source) at javax.swing.text.Utilities.getTabbedTextOffset(Unknown Source) at javax.swing.text.PlainView.viewToModel(Unknown Source) at javax.swing.text.FieldView.viewToModel(Unknown Source) at javax.swing.plaf.basic.BasicTextUI\$RootView.viewToModel(Unknown Source) at javax.swing.plaf.basic.BasicTextUI.viewToModel(Unknown Source)</pre>	
<pre>[loadfile] Unable to load file: java.io.FileNotFoundException: C:\ (The system cannot find the path specified)</pre>	Produced in error and can be ignored.
<pre>java.sql.SQLRecoverableException: IO Error: Connection reset</pre>	<p>Related to the operation of the Oracle JDBC driver. Use the following workaround.</p> <p>Edit the &lt;jdk&gt;/jre/lib/security/java.security file: Change securerandom.source=file:/dev/urandom to securerandom.source=file:///dev/urandom.</p>
<p>The installer fails or gives the following error message:</p> <p>Caused by: java.security.AccessControlException: access denied ("javax.management.MBeanTrustPermission" "register")</p>	<p>To correct this error, go to the Java installation that is specified in the path included in the error message, or the Java installation defined as JAVA_HOME.</p> <p>To the java.policy file under jre/lib/security, add the following to the granted permissions: permission java.util.PropertyPermission "javax.management.MBeanTrustPermission", "register"</p>
<p><b>NEW</b> C:\Users\&lt;USERNAME&gt;\AppData\Local\Temp\antinstall\ build.xml:189: The following error occurred while executing this line:</p> <pre>C:\Users\&lt;USERNAME&gt;\AppData\Local\Temp\antinstall\ installer-common.xml:468: java.lang.NoClassDefFoundError: javax/xml/bind/DatatypeConverter at com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerConnection.sendLogon(SQLServerConnection.java:1000) ...</pre>	<p>Ensure that you are launching the installer with Java JDK version 1.8. You can type <code>java --version</code> in a Windows command prompt window or in the Linux terminal to see which version is currently configured on your system. If you are using a Windows OS, add the Java JDK 1.8 folder path to both JAVA_HOME and PATH in environment variables. If you are using Red Hat Enterprise Linux, add the Java JDK 1.8 folder path to the PATH variable.</p>



# Deploying Advisors Genesys Adapter

You run a `.jar` installation file to deploy Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA) and Resource Management Console (RMC). You use the same installation file to deploy both, although you can install only a single component (either the AGA core service or RMC) during a single installer run.

The installer guides you through the deployment. The screens displayed during your deployment are dependent on the selections you make on the **Module to Install** and **Server Type** screens. Information about each screen is available on the **Installer Screens** tab below.

If you will be configuring multiple Genesys Adapters, note the following:

- Each primary AGA among the multiple adapters configured should use Stat Servers different from those used by other primary adapters.
- The primary and the backup AGA in a pair must be configured with the same Stat Servers.

For example, if there are two pairs of adapters configured (AGA1 and AGA2, and AGA3 and AGA4). AGA1 and AGA2 form a primary-backup HA pair. AGA3 and AGA4 form another primary-backup HA pair. The Stat Servers configured for the AGA1/AGA2 pair must not be the same Stat Servers configured for the AGA3/AGA4 pair. The Stat Servers configured for AGA1 and AGA2 must be the same Stat Servers, and the Stat Servers configured for AGA3 and AGA4 must be the same.

The preceding rules ensure the following:

1. On restart of the system, based on the last persisted Stat Server-object mapping, the statistics are requested with the same adapters, and each adapter queries the same Stat Servers as previously.
2. On switching over from the primary adapter to the backup adapter, the statistics are requested with the same Stat Servers as previously.

## Important

Genesys recommends that the AGA metrics database selected for the primary and the backup AGA instances of a given adapter pair should be the same metrics database.

## Deployment Roadmap

The arrow icon in the following roadmap indicates where you are in the Advisors deployment process.

1. **[+] Install the databases that correspond to the Advisors products you will deploy.**
  - a. Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database
  - b. Advisors Platform database
  - c. Metric Graphing database
2. Create the Advisors User and the Object Configuration User in Configuration Server.



---

### 3. **[+] Install the Platform service on servers where it is required for Advisors components.**

- Advisors Administration
- Advisors Web Services
- WA Server
- FA Server with rollup engine
- CCAAdv/WA/FA Accessibility services
- CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console

### 4. Install each adapter that you will use and configure the adapter Application objects with Stat Server connections. See additional information for CCAAdv/WA installations.

### 5. **[+] Install the Advisors components for your enterprise.**

- Contact Center Advisor server (CCAAdv XML Generator)
- Workforce Advisor server
- Frontline Advisor server
- SDS and the CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console

### 6. Make any required configuration changes.

You can deploy AGA on a Red Hat Linux or a Windows platform, and with Oracle or MS SQL databases.

## Migration Notes

If you are migrating to a new software release, and not installing Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA) for the first time, there is an existing AGA entry in the ADAPTER\_INSTANCES table in the Platform database. You have two options when upgrading your AGA instance:

1. Install the new AGA instance with the same host name and port number as the previous installation. The previous adapter is updated with the new configuration. For this option, you must have information about the earlier adapter to ensure you overwrite it successfully: host and port number. Ensure you enter that information on the **Adapter Port and Registration Option** installation screen to match the previous entry exactly. If this information is unavailable, you can find it in the ADAPTER\_INSTANCES database table on the Platform database.
2. Install the new AGA instance with a different adapter host name and port number; it is added as a second adapter in the Platform database. Use this option to install a new adapter instance, or if you need to move the adapter to a new host name or port number. If moving the adapter to a new host name or port number, you must manually remove the previous adapter entry from the Platform database.

## Migrating the AGA Metrics Database or Schema

You use scripts supplied by Genesys to simply remove old objects and then add new objects to the Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database. Genesys provides two scripts for Oracle and one for MS SQL; see the following procedures. Review the Readme.txt file included with the scripts. The Readme file includes important information, including which tools Genesys recommends to execute the



scripts.

## Procedure: Migration of AGA Oracle METRICS Schemas

### Steps

1. Connect to your database management interface as the AGA METRICS user.
2. Execute one of the following scripts:
  - `gc_metrics_<version>_ObjectsPlus.sql` (if you use SQL\*Plus)
  - `gc_metrics_<version>_ObjectsDefault.sql` (if you use sqlDeveloper and all objects reside in the default tablespaces assigned to the METRICS user)
  - `gc_metrics_<version>_ObjectsCustom.sql` (if you use sqlDeveloper and you want to specify explicit names for tablespaces)
3. Re-issue the GRANT SELECT commands on each METRICS schema view to the Platform user.

## Procedure: Migration of AGA MS SQL Databases

### Steps

1. Connect to the AGA metrics database.
2. Execute `gc_metrics_db_<version>.sql`.



## Deploying Advisors Genesys Adapter

### Procedure:

#### Steps

1. Launch the AGA installation file.

##### **[+] Show Steps for Linux**

- a. As root, navigate to the Advisors home directory:

```
cd /home/advisors
```

- b. As root, run the AGA installer. The page format of this document might cause a line break in the following command, but you must enter it on one line in the command prompt window:

```
./jdk1.8.0_<version>/bin/java -jar aga-installer-<version>.jar
```

##### **[+] Show Steps for Windows**

Do one of the following:

- Open a command line window, and enter the following command:

```
java -jar aga-installer-<version>.jar
```

- Double-click the aga-installer-<version>.jar file in the release bundle.

Double-clicking might not work due to system settings, but using the command line terminal should always work. Genesys recommends using the command line window to launch the installer.

For 64-bit systems, if double-clicking to launch the installer, please ensure that the Java instance associated with the jar file type is 64-bit. Running the installer with a 32-bit Java instance will create a Windows service with the wrong executable.

2. On the **Module to Install** screen, select the **Adapter Server** radio button.
3. Use the **Next** and **Back** buttons on the installer to navigate through the installation screens. Enter your information on each screen. Use the information provided in the [Installer Screens](#) section on this page to complete the remaining deployment screens. Ensure you provide complete information on each screen.
4. Click **Show Details** and verify that there were no errors reported during installation.



## Installer Screens

### [+] Adapter Metrics Database

On the **Adapter Metrics Database** screen, specify the parameters for the metrics database:

- **Database Server**—The host name or IP address of the database server. When using numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.
- **Database name/Service name**—The unique name of the database instance; for example, `advisors_gametricsdb`.
- **Database port**—The database server's port number.
- **Database user**—The Advisors user that will be used by the Adapter to access the database.
- **Database password**—The password associated with the Advisors user that will be used by the Adapter to access the database.

#### Important

The CCAdv/WA metrics database password is encrypted and saved in the `...\GCTI\Advisors\Genesys\Adapter\conf\inf_genesys_importer.properties` file by default. To change the password, see [Change Encrypted Passwords](#).

### [+] Adapter Metrics Database - Advanced

You will see this screen only if you select Oracle as the database type and Advanced as the JDBC connectivity setup type on the RDBMS Type And JDBC Connectivity installer screen. On the **Adapter Metrics Database - Advanced** screen, enter the database connectivity parameters for the already created or upgraded database (that is, the database must be present and at the current version prior to running the installer).

Specify the following parameters for the metrics database:

- **Database user**—The Advisors user that will be used by the Adapter to access the database.
- **Database user password**—The password associated with the database user.
- **Locate file**—Enter the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator. The installation wizard applies the specified advanced connection string when configuring the data sources.

### [+] Adapter Port And Registration

On the **Adapter Port and Registration** screen, you enter information that the Advisors Platform database requires to register this adapter instance.

You must enter the following information about your adapter:



- The port number on which the Genesys Adapter web services will run. You can use the default port, 7000, if no other application is using that port.
- The IP address of the host.
- A description of the AGA server.

## [+] Advisors Platform Database

On the **Advisors Platform Database** screen, specify connection information for the the Advisors Platform database with which this AGA will be registered.

If you use numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.

You are prompted for the following information on the **Advisors Platform Database** screen:

- Database server—The host name or IP address of the database server. When using numerical IP v6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.
- Database name/Service name—The unique name of the database instance.
- Database port—The database server's port number.
- Database user—The Advisors user with full access to the Advisors Platform database.
- Database user password—The password created and used for the Advisors Platform database.

## [+] Advisors Platform Database - Advanced

You will see this screen only if you select Oracle as the database type and Advanced as the JDBC connectivity setup type on the RDBMS Type And JDBC Connectivity installer screen. On the **Advisors Platform Database - Advanced** screen, enter the database connectivity parameters for the already created or upgraded database (that is, the database must be present and at the current version prior to running the installer).

Specify the following parameters for the Advisors Platform database:

- Database user—The database user created and used for the Platform database.
- Database user password—The password associated with the database user.
- Locate file—Enter the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator. The installation wizard applies the specified advanced connection string when configuring the data sources.

## [+] Genesys Config Server Connection Details

On the **Genesys Config Server Connection Details** screen, configure the connection to the Genesys Configuration Server(s).

1. To connect to the primary (mandatory) Configuration Server in the Genesys environment, enter information in the following text fields:



- **Config Server name** – The name of the primary configuration server. The name is obtained from your Genesys configuration interface (for example, Genesys Administrator) and is case sensitive.
- **Config Server address** – The name or IP address of the machine hosting the Configuration Server. When using numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.
- **Config Server port number** – The port that the configuration server is listening on. If you enter a port number in this field, and then enable a TLS connection, this port number is ignored.
- **Config Server client name** – The name of the application that Advisors Platform will use to log in to the Configuration Server (for example, default).
- **Config Server user** – The user name of the account the Adapter will use to connect to the Configuration Server.
- **Config Server user password** – The corresponding password of the account the Adapter will use to connect to the Configuration Server.

### Important

The Genesys Configuration Server password is encrypted and saved in the <adapterhome>\conf\inf\_genesys\_adapter.properties file by default. To change the password, see [Change Encrypted Passwords](#).

2. If you use a TLS connection to the Configuration Server, also complete the following:

- **Enable TLS connection** – To configure a TLS connection to the Configuration Server, select this option on the installation screen. If you have a backup Configuration Server, AGA also connects to it using TLS if you enable a TLS connection to the primary Configuration Server.
- **Config Server TLS Port Number** – Enter the Configuration Server TLS port number. If you enable a TLS connection, the TLS port number is used for both the primary and backup Configuration Servers. The port number for an unsecured connection is ignored. The primary and backup Configuration Servers must use the same TLS port number.
- **Locate TLS properties file** – Identify the location of the TLS properties file. The TLS properties file contains all the properties required to connect successfully using TLS, as well as any other optional TLS attributes that you use. If you use a backup Configuration Server, the TLS properties for the primary server are also used for the backup server.

3. **Add backup server** – Select this checkbox only if you have a backup Configuration Server. The backup Configuration Server can be, but does not need to be, configured in a high-availability pair in Genesys.

## [+] Backup Config Server

You see the **Backup Config Server** screen only if you opted to add a backup Configuration Server on the **Genesys Config Server Connection Details** screen.

Enter the information required to connect to the backup Configuration Server:

- **Backup server name** – The name of the backup configuration server. The name is obtained from your Genesys configuration interface (for example, Genesys Administrator) and is case sensitive.
- **Backup server address** – The name or IP address of the machine hosting the backup Configuration Server. When using numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.



- **Backup server port number** – The port that the backup Configuration Server is listening on. If you enter a port number in this field, but enabled a TLS connection for the primary Configuration Server, this port number is ignored. If the primary server connection uses a TLS connection, then the backup server connection is also a TLS connection. When you enable the TLS connection, you must enter the Configuration Server TLS port number; Advisors uses that port for the connection for both the primary and backup Configuration Servers.

## [+] Installation Details

On the **Installation details** screen, specify the installation directory and the directory in which the log files will appear. The default installation directory is C:\Program Files\GCTI\Advisors\Genesys\Adapter.

## [+] Java Development Kit

On the **Java Development Kit** screen, specify the location of the root directory of the Java installation.

## [+] Oracle JDBC Driver

On the **Oracle JDBC Driver** screen, specify the location of the Oracle Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) driver. See the [Genesys Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide](#) for information about drivers supported in the current release.

## [+] RDBMS Type and JDBC Connectivity

On the **RDBMS Type And JDBC Connectivity** screen, select either the **SQL Server** or the **Oracle** option – whichever you use for database(s). You must also select the Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) type that matches your environment. Select **Basic** for standalone databases or **Advanced** for clustered database configurations. The screens that follow are dependent on your selections on this screen.

## [+] SCS Integration Configuration

You enter information about the AGA connection to the Genesys Management Layer on the **SCS Integration Configuration** screen. You must configure these properties even if you are not configuring warm standby mode of operation.

- **Adapter application name**—The application name specified in Genesys Administrator for this AGA instance.
- **LCA port**—Unless you changed the LCA port number, accept the default.
- **SCS application name**—The name of the Solution Control Server application object as it appears in Genesys Administrator.



## [+] Server Type

On the **Server Type** screen, select the radio button that corresponds to the Advisors module for which you are deploying this AGA instance. The options are **Contact Center Advisor/Workforce Advisor** and **Frontline Advisor**. You can select only one option on this screen.

## Multiple instances on a server

It is possible to deploy multiple instances of the Genesys Adapter core service on a single server. If you do use the same metrics database for more than one adapter, each adapter must monitor a completely distinct set of objects. For each installation, you should create the metrics database.

Deploy the second, and subsequent AGA instances, using the same procedure you use to deploy a single instance, and follow these rules:

- You must install each Genesys Adapter instance in a different directory. For example, the first instance could use the following location:  
C:\Program Files\GCTI\Advisors\Genesys\Adapter  
and the second instance could be located at:  
C:\Program Files\GCTI\Advisors\Genesys\Adapter2.
- You must specify a unique log directory for each Genesys Adapter instance.
- You must specify a unique port number for each Genesys Adapter instance.
- You must select a unique application name for each Genesys Adapter instance.

## Troubleshooting

The following Table shows parameter validation errors that you may encounter at the end of installation.

Installation Error Message	Cause
<pre>[java] Failed to connect to the database using connection URL:  [java] jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnn;DatabaseName=ys_gadb;user=sa;password=very_secure_pwd; selectMethod=cursor [java] The following exception was thrown: com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerException: The TCP/IP connection to the host 192.168.xx.yy, port nnn has failed. Error: "Connection refused. Verify the connection properties, check that an instance of SQL Server is running on the host and accepting TCP/IP connections at the port, and that no firewall is blocking TCP connections to the port.</pre>	Wrong database server name / IP address or port number



Installation Error Message	Cause
<pre>[java] Failed to connect to the database using connection URL:  [java] jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnnn;DatabaseName=NotAPlatformDB;selectMethod=cursor;user=sa; password=very_secure_pwd [java] The following exception was thrown: com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerException: The TCP/IP connection to the host 192.168.xx.yy, port nnnn has failed. Error: "connect timed out. Verify the connection properties, check that an instance of SQL Server is running on the host and accepting TCP/IP connections at the port, and that no firewall is blocking TCP connections to the port."</pre>	Wrong database name
<pre>[java] Exception while connecting: Login failed for user 'badUserId'.  [java] url used: jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnnn;DatabaseName=ys_gadb;selectMethod=cursor;user=badUserId; password=very_secure_password</pre>	Wrong database user name or password
<pre>[loadfile] Unable to load file: java.io.FileNotFoundException: C:\ (The system cannot find the path specified)</pre>	Produced in error and can be ignored.
<p><b>NEW</b> C:\Users\&lt;USERNAME&gt;\AppData\Local\Temp\antinstall\build.xml:189: The following error occurred while executing this line:</p> <pre>C:\Users\&lt;USERNAME&gt;\AppData\Local\Temp\antinstall\ installer-common.xml:468: java.lang.NoClassDefFoundError: javax/xml/ bind/DatatypeConverter at com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerConnection.sendLogin(SQLServerConnection.java:4061) ...</pre>	Ensure that you are launching the installer with Java JDK version 1.8. You can type <code>java -version</code> in a Windows command prompt window or in the Linux terminal to see which version is currently configured on your system. If you are using a Windows OS, add the Java JDK 1.8 folder path to both <code>JAVA_HOME</code> and <code>PATH</code> in environment variables. If you use Red Hat Enterprise Linux, add the Java JDK 1.8 folder path to the <code>PATH</code> variable.



# MCR Extensions

MCR extensions are required for your Stat Server only if Interaction Queue statistics are to be collected. Use the following procedure to deploy the extensions.

## Procedure:

### Steps

1. Install Stat Server.
2. Install the MCR extension package. The MCR version corresponding to the most recent Stat Server release can be obtained from the Genesys installation CD image.
3. Configure the JVM path options for the Stat Server in your Genesys configuration interface using the Stat Server application Options tab. If you require more information about Stat Server configuration than is provided below, see the [Framework Stat Server Deployment Guide](#).
  - Configure Stat Server Java options, such as [java-config], [java-options], and [java-extensions].
  - Set the JVM Path to the jvm.dll file (for example: C:\Program Files\Java\jre5\bin\client\jvm.dll).
  - Set the ext directory to the relative path of the extensions directory under the Stat Server installation (the default is ./java/ext).
  - Set the lib directory to the relative path of the library directory under the Stat Server installation (the default is ./java/lib).
  - Select the eServiceContactStat.jar and eServiceInteractionStat.jar Java Extension .jar files to be loaded.
4. Ensure that the Stat Server has a connection to the Interaction Server. Double-click the Stat Server application, and add this connection on the Connections tab if it is not already present.
5. Under the Stat Server application Options table, set enable-java to true.
6. Under the Stat Server application Options tab, create a new section named common. Set the value of option rebind-delay to 0 (zero).  
If you previously loaded the statserverentries.cfg file, this option is already there. Ensure you verify it is correct.
7. Ensure that the corresponding connection from the Interaction Server back to the Stat Server is also present. Double-click the Interaction Server Application, and add the connection on the Connections tab if it is not already present.
8. Restart both the Interaction Server and the Stat Server.



---

# Deploying CCAdv and WA

If you are installing any or all of the following Advisors modules, use the procedures and information in this section:



- Contact Center Advisor (CCAdv)
- Workforce Advisor (WA)
- Alert Management (AM) Administration

You can deploy these modules on a Red Hat Linux or a Windows platform, and with Oracle or MS SQL databases.

If you use a Genesys computer-telephony integration (CTI) installation, you must install Advisors Genesys Adapter with CCAdv and WA applications.

## Deployment Roadmap

The arrow icons in the following roadmap indicate where you are in the Advisors deployment process.

1. **[+] Install the databases that correspond to the Advisors products you will deploy.**
  - a. Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database
  - b. Advisors Platform database
  - c. Metric Graphing database
2. Create the Advisors User and the Object Configuration User in Configuration Server.
3. **[+] Install the Platform service on servers where it is required for Advisors components.**
  - Advisors Administration
  - Advisors Web Services
  - WA Server
  - FA Server with rollup engine
  - CCAdv/WA/FA Accessibility services
  - CCAdv/WA Resource Management console
4. Install each adapter that you will use and configure the adapter Application objects with Stat Server connections. See additional information for CCAdv/WA installations.
5. Install the Advisors components for your enterprise:
  -  Contact Center Advisor server (CCAdv XML Generator)
  -  Workforce Advisor server
  - Frontline Advisor server



- SDS and the CCAdv/WA Resource Management console

6. Make any required configuration changes.

You run a single .jar installation file to deploy any or all of the modules. Use the procedure below to start your installation. The installer guides you through the deployment. The screens displayed during your deployment are dependent on the selections you make on the **Modules to Install** screen. Information about each screen is available on the **Installation Screens** tab below.

## Deploying CCAdv, CCAdv XML Generator, and WA

### Procedure:

#### Steps

1. Launch the installation file.  
**[+] Show Steps for Linux**

- a. As root, navigate to the Advisors home directory:

```
cd /home/advisors
```

- b. As root, run the CCAdv/WA installer. The page format of this document might cause a line break in the following command, but you must enter it on one line in the command prompt window:

```
./jdk1.8.0_<version>/bin/java -jar ccadv-wa-installer-<version>.jar
```

#### **[+] Show Step for Windows**

Do one of the following:

- Open a command line window, and enter the following command:  
`java -jar ccadv-wa-installer-<version>.jar`
- Double-click the `ccadv-wa-installer-<version>.jar` file in the release bundle.

Double-clicking might not work due to system settings, but using the command line terminal should always work.

For 64-bit systems, if double-clicking to launch the installer, please ensure that the Java instance associated with the jar file type is 64-bit. Running the installer with a 32-bit Java instance will create a Windows service with the wrong executable.

2. On the **Modules to Install** screen, select which Advisors application(s) you will install. You can install an individual application or as many applications as you require during a single run of the



installation file.

Each of the modules can be installed on a different machine. Advisors Platform must be installed on each server where a module is installed, with the exception of CCAdv XML Generator. CCAdv XML Generator does not require Advisors Platform. When installing multiple modules on the same machine, the underlying components, such as Advisors Platform, are installed only once.

#### **[+] Show Information about Selections**

The modules are:

- Contact Center Advisor XML Generator application—Install this module no more than twice in one cluster of Advisors systems. One instance will run as the primary, and the second, if present, will run as the backup. CCAdv XML Generator runs independently of Advisors Platform.
  - CCAdv Accessibility Services—(Optional) If you need the CCAdv accessible dashboard, you can install this on one or more of the **presentation nodes**.
  - Workforce Advisor Server— Install this module no more than twice in one cluster of Advisors systems. One instance will run as the primary, and the second, if present, will run as the backup.
  - Workforce Accessibility Services—(Optional) If you need the WA accessible dashboard, you can install this on one or more of the **presentation nodes**.
  - Resource Management Console—(Optional) If you need access to the Resource Management console in CCAdv and WA, you can install this on one or more of the **presentation nodes**.
3. On the **Destination Directory** screen, specify the location and name of the base directory in which you will install Advisors. The installation directory for CCAdv/WA modules must be the same as the directory where Advisors Platform was installed. Contact Center Advisor XML Generator does not require Platform, so can be installed independently.
  4. Use the information provided in the **Installer Screens** section on this page to complete the remaining deployment screens.

## Installer Screens

### **[+] Data Source**

For each data source not already in the database, specify the following:

- the database name or linked server name
- the source type (Genesys or Cisco)
- (optional) the display name
- the threshold update delay. This is how long CCAdv will wait for new data from this data source before notifying users via the CCAdv dashboard, and, if configured to do so, administrators via e-mail.
- the Relational Database Management System (RDBMS) type

If you have additional data sources to add, select **Add another data source** and repeat this step.



Up to five data sources may be added using the installer.

## **[+] Database Type**

Specify the type of database you use in your enterprise.

## **[+] Genesys Advisor Platform Database**

Enter the database connectivity parameters for the already created or upgraded database (that is, the database must be present and at the current version prior to running the installer).

When using numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.

If the database server is a named instance, then omit the port number.

## **[+] Genesys Advisor Platform Database - Advanced**

- Database user and Database user password—The database schema and password created and used for the Platform database.
- Locate file—Enter the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator. The installation wizard applies the specified advanced connection string when configuring the data sources.

## **[+] Java Development Kit**

Enter or select the folder location for the Java Development Kit.

## **[+] Metric Graphing Database**

Specify the connection parameters for the Metric Graphing database.

When using numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.

## **[+] Metric Graphing Database - Advanced**

- Database user and Database user password—The database schema and password created and used for the Metric Graphing database.
- Locate file—Enter the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator. The installation wizard applies the specified advanced connection string when configuring the data sources.



## [+] Oracle setup type

Specify whether you use Oracle basic (single instance) or Oracle Real Application Cluster (RAC) databases.

## [+] RDBMS Type and JDBC Connectivity

On the **RDBMS Type And JDBC Connectivity** screen, select either the **SQL Server** or the **Oracle** option – whichever you use for database(s). You must also select the Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) type that matches your environment. Select **Basic** for standalone databases or **Advanced** for clustered database configurations. The screens that follow are dependent on your selections on this screen.

## [+] Workforce Advisor Page 1 - SCS Integration

Enter the WA Server Application name exactly as it is configured in Genesys Configuration Server.

## [+] Workforce Advisor Server Page 2 - WFM Systems

Select your sources for workforce management data.

## [+] Workforce Advisor Server Page 3 - EMail Addresses

Enter the e-mail address that will appear in the From: header of e-mail that WA sends about alerts, to users that are members of distribution lists configured in the Administration Workbench. For example, DONOTREPLY@genesys.com.

## [+] Workforce Advisor Server Page 4 - IEX TotalView

Enter the FTP Server port number on which the FTP connection in WA listens for data from TotalView.

## [+] Workforce Advisor Server Page 5 - Aspect eWFM

Enter the Aspect eWFM base retrieval URL.

The base retrieval URL should be file:/// followed by the location of the eWFM files.

If the component must read or write data kept on a drive accessible over the network, then enter the path name to the directory using the Uniform Naming Convention, which includes the host name and the name of the shared drive.

For example:

//host\_name/shared\_drive\_name/root\_directory\_name/directory\_1\_name/directory\_2\_name

You can use forward slashes in the name even on Windows systems. If you use back slashes, they must be escaped.

For example:

\\\\host\_name\\shared\_drive\_name\\root\_directory\_name\\directory\_1\_name\\directory\_2\_name



## [+] Workforce Advisor Server Page 6 - Genesys WFM

- Base URL—The base URL should contain the server name or IP address of the machine where the WFM server is installed, as well as the port on which the server is configured and listening. For example, `http://192.168.98.215:5007`. When using numerical IP v6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets. To make a secure connection to the WFM Server, the base URL must include:
  - the `https://` protocol (instead of `http://`)
  - the secure port number that is configured on the WFM Server
- Application name—The application name of the WFM server as configured in the Configuration Server or Genesys Administrator.
- User name—The user name with which WA Server will connect to Genesys WFM Server.
- Password—The password with which WA Server will connect to Genesys WFM Server.
- Polling interval (ms)—The interval at which the Genesys WFM Server is polled for forecast data.
- Number of hours to harvest—The number of hours of forecast metrics to get during each polling interval.

## [+] XML Generator Page 1 - Config Server

Starting in release 8.5.1, CCAdv XML Generator runs independently of Advisors Platform; it is no longer necessary to install Advisors Platform to support XML Generator. Also, XML Generator more actively communicates with Genesys Configuration Server, particularly in warm standby setups. You must, therefore, enter some of the same information for XML Generator's use that you entered for Advisors Platform.

On the **XML Generator Page 1 - Config Server** screen, enter information about the Genesys Configuration Server that is part of your deployment:

- Config Server Name - The name of the primary configuration server; for example, `confserv`. The name is obtained from your Genesys configuration interface (for example, Genesys Administrator) and is case sensitive.
  - Config Server Address - The name or IP address of the machine hosting the Configuration Server. When using numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.
  - Config Server Port Number - The port on which the configuration server is listening; for example, 2020. If you enter a port number in this field, and then enable a TLS connection, this port number is ignored.
  - Config Server Client Name - Enter the name of the application that Advisors Platform will use to log in to the Configuration Server (for example, `default`).
  - Config Server user - The user name of the account that Advisors Platform will use to connect to the Configuration Server; for example, `default`.
  - Config Server password - The password of the account that Advisors Platform will use to connect to the Configuration Server. The Genesys Configuration Server password is encrypted and saved in the `..\GCTI\Advisors\conf\GenesysConfig.properties` file by default (unless altered). To change the password, see [Change Encrypted Passwords](#).
  - Enable TLS connection - To configure a TLS connection to the Configuration Server, select this option
-



on the installation screen.

- **Config Server TLS Port Number** - Enter the Configuration Server TLS port number. When TLS is enabled, Advisors Platform uses the TLS port number instead of the unsecured port number.
- **Locate TLS properties file** - Identify the location of the TLS properties file. The TLS properties file contains all the properties required to connect successfully using TLS, as well as any other optional TLS attributes that you use.
- **Add backup server** - Select this checkbox if you have a backup Configuration Server for this installation.  
If you select the Add backup server checkbox, the **Backup config server** screen displays after you click Next.

## [+] XML Generator Page 2 - Backup Config Server

The **XML Generator Page 2 - Backup Config Server** screen displays only if you selected the Add backup server checkbox on the **XML Generator Page 1 - Config Server** screen.

Enter the backup Configuration Server details:

- Backup Server Name
- Backup Server Address
- Backup Server Port Number

## [+] XML Generator Page 3 - Config Server

Enter the name of the Object Configuration User account (configured in Configuration Server). You must enter this information if you use a Genesys data source. This is not applicable if you use only Cisco data sources.

You are not prompted for the password for this user account because there is no user authentication performed for this user.

## [+] XML Generator Page 4 - Config Server

Enter the name of the default Genesys tenant.

## [+] XML Generator Page 5 - SCS Integration

Enter the XML Generator application name exactly as it is configured in the Genesys Configuration Server.

## [+] XML Generator Page 6 - Cluster Member

Configure this XML Generator installation as a unique node in the cluster. Each server on which you install XML Generator requires a unique cluster node ID. On this screen you also enter the port number that nodes in this cluster use to communicate. The data you enter on this screen, and the following screen (**XML Generator Page 7 - Cluster Member**), is entered in the



ActiveMQ.properties and Caching.properties files in the Advisors Platform database. Configure the node with the following information:

- **Node ID**—A unique ID across all XML Generator installations. The ID must not contain spaces or any special characters, and must be only alpha numeric. Node IDs are not case sensitive. Within one cluster, Node1, node1, and NODE1 are considered to be the same ID. You can use node1, node2, and so on.
- **IP Address/Hostname**—The IP address or host name that other cluster members will use to contact this node; for example, 192.168.100.1. It is not localhost or 127.0.0.1. When using numerical IP v6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.
- **Localhost address**—The local host address: localhost or 127.0.0.1.
- **XMLGen Port Number**—The port number that the nodes in this cluster use to communicate. If you are installing only one deployment of Advisors, accept the default that the installer offers. The port number must be unique to this deployment of Advisors. All nodes in one cluster must use the same port number.

## [+] XML Generator Page 7 - Cluster Member

Enter information about port numbers used for communication within the cluster. The data you enter on the preceding screen (**XML Generator Page 6 - Cluster Member**) and on this screen is entered in the ActiveMQ.properties and Caching.properties files in the Advisors Platform database.

- **JMS port**—The Java Message Service (JMS) port number.
- **The first port in range and The last port in range**—Specify the port to be used by the distributed cache for communication. If you are installing only one deployment of Advisors, accept the default that the installer offers. The port number must be unique to this deployment of Advisors. All nodes in one cluster must use the same port number.

## [+] XML Generator Page 8 - SMTP Server

Enter the host name or IP address of the SMTP server that XML Generator will use to send e-mail with ERROR messages. You can see the ERROR messages in the log file for XML Generator.

## [+] XML Generator Page 9 - Generation Interval

Enter the interval for the Medium and Long groups of time profiles. For example, if you enter 120 seconds for this parameter, XML Generator stores metrics and threshold violations for these time profiles no more often than that. However, XML Generator might store the view data less frequently depending on load and the complexity of the configuration.

## [+] XML Generator Page 10 - DB Connection Retry

Enter the maximum number of retry attempts in the event of a database connection failure. This parameter is applicable to retry attempts when XML Generator is already running; that is, after establishing connections at startup.



Enter the number of seconds between XML Generator's reconnection attempts in the event of a database connection failure. This parameter is applicable to retry attempts when XML Generator is already running; that is, after establishing connections at startup.

## [+] XML Generator Page 11 - EMail Addresses

**Alert E-mail From Address:** Enter the e-mail address that will appear in the From: header of e-mail that XML Generator sends about alerts, to users that are members of distribution lists configured in the Administration Workbench. For example, DONOTREPLY@genesys.com.

Enter the e-mail address that will appear in the From: header of e-mail that WA sends about alerts. For example, DONOTREPLY@genesys.com.

**Support E-mail Address:** Enter the e-mail address to which XML Generator will send e-mail about events other than alerts. For example, an e-mail sent when XML Generator has not been able to connect to an external data source within the configured number of minutes. The address entered in this field also appears in the From: header of these types of e-mails.

## [+] XML Generator Page 12 - Metric Graphing

Specify how frequently (in seconds) snapshots should be stored in the metric graphing database. For example, if you enter 60 seconds, XML Generator and WA Server store graphable snapshots no more often than that. However, they may store the snapshots less frequently depending upon load and the complexity of the configuration.

Specify whether graphs should display values from the previous day. If you select the **Start at midnight** checkbox, then graphs will not display values from the previous day. Also, an open graph will delete values from the previous day as it reaches midnight.

See [Configure Metric Graphing Properties](#) for detailed information.

## [+] XML Generator and Workforce Advisor - Page 1

Select the time profile for the historical agent group metrics that CCAdv and WA will display.

If you choose **5 minute sliding**, then CCAdv and WA will display agent group metrics from the most recent 5 minutes. If you choose **30 minute growing**, then they will display agent group metrics from the current half hour.

For metrics imported from CISCO ICM, Advisors always imports agent group metrics with the 5 minute sliding profile. If you are running Advisors with CISCO ICM, and you choose the 30 minute growing option here, then on the dashboards, historical agent group metrics will display as a dash. Genesys recommends that you use the five minute growing setting if you have a CISCO source of data.

## [+] XML Generator and Workforce Advisor - Page 2

Enter information to connect to the Genesys Management Layer on the **XML Generator and Workforce Advisor - Page 2** screen. You must configure these properties for both a basic Advisors setup, as well as a warm standby setup.

---



- LCA port—The LCA port number for the server on which you are currently deploying a CCAdv or WA component. Unless you changed the LCA port number, accept the default.
- SCS application name—The name of the Solution Control Server application in Genesys Administrator.

## Troubleshooting

The following Table shows parameter validation errors that you may encounter at the end of installation.



Installation Error Message	Cause
<pre>[java] Failed to connect to the database using connection URL:  [java] jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnn;DatabaseName=ys_eadb;user=sa;password=very_secure_pwd; selectMethod=cursor [java] The following exception was thrown: com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerException: The TCP/IP connection to the host 192.168.xx.yy, port nnn has failed. Error: "Connection refused. Verify the connection properties, check that an instance of SQL Server is running on the host and accepting TCP/IP connections at the port, and that no firewall is blocking TCP connections to the port.</pre>	Wrong database server name / IP address or port number
<pre>[java] Failed to connect to the database using connection URL:  [java] jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnnn;DatabaseName=NotAPlatformDB;selectMethod=cursor;user=sa; password=very_secure_pwd [java] The following exception was thrown: com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerException: The TCP/IP connection to the host 192.168.xx.yy, port nnnn has failed. Error: "connect timed out. Verify the connection properties, check that an instance of SQL Server is running on the host and accepting TCP/IP connections at the port, and that no firewall is blocking TCP connections to the port."</pre>	Wrong database name
<pre>[java] Exception while connecting: Login failed for user 'badUserId'.  [java] url used: jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnnn;DatabaseName=ys_eadb;selectMethod=cursor;user=badUserId; password=very_secure_password</pre>	Wrong database user name or password
<pre>[loadfile] Unable to load file: java.io.FileNotFoundException: C:\ (The system cannot find the path specified)</pre>	Produced in error and can be ignored.
<p>An error message in the XML Generator log that contains the following string:</p> <pre>datamanager.adapters.MultiAdapterException</pre>	<p>Indicates that there is at least one (there might be more than one) configured Genesys Advisors Adapter (AGA) instance that is either not running or is not reachable. Genesys recommends the following actions to correct the condition:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check all configured AGA instances. Make sure that each one is running and reachable from XML Generator.</li> <li>2. If you have any AGA instances that are not absolutely</li> </ol>



Installation Error Message	Cause
	<p>required for the operation of CCAdv/WA, remove those from the configuration.</p> <p>If a configured adapter is reporting this error condition, and it is running correctly, then you need to look for other problems with the adapter. For example, the adapter Application that is registered in Configuration Server might not have any Stat Servers configured, or the configured Stat Server(s) might not be running.</p>
<p><b>NEW</b> C:\Users\&lt;USERNAME&gt;\AppData\Local\Temp\antinstall\ build.xml:189: The following error occurred while executing this line:</p> <p>C:\Users\&lt;USERNAME&gt;\AppData\Local\Temp\antinstall\ installer-common.xml:468: java.lang.NoClassDefFoundError: javax/xml/bind/DatatypeConverter at com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerConnection.sendLogon(SQLServerConnection.java:4061) ...</p>	<p>Ensure that you are launching the installer with Java JDK version 1.8. You can type <code>java -version</code> in a Windows command prompt window or in the Linux terminal to see which version is currently configured on your system. If you are using a Windows OS, add the Java JDK 1.8 folder path to both <code>JAVA_HOME</code> and <code>PATH</code> in environment variables. If you use Red Hat Enterprise Linux, add the Java JDK 1.8 folder path to the <code>PATH</code> variable.</p>



---


# Deploying Frontline Advisor

You run a `.jar` installation file to deploy Genesys Frontline Advisor (FA). The `fa-server-installer-<version>.jar` file installs the Frontline Advisor dashboard; you use **Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) privileges** to control the dashboard features that each user can see and use.

You can deploy FA on a Red Hat Linux or a Windows platform, and with Oracle or MS SQL databases.

## Deployment Roadmap

The arrow icon in the following roadmap indicates where you are in the Advisors deployment process.

1. **[+] Install the databases that correspond to the Advisors products you will deploy.**
  - a. Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database
  - b. Advisors Platform database
  - c. Metric Graphing database
2. Create the Advisors User and the Object Configuration User in Configuration Server.
3. **[+] Install the Platform service on servers where it is required for Advisors components.**
  - Advisors Administration
  - Advisors Web Services
  - WA Server
  - FA Server with rollup engine
  - CCAAdv/WA/FA Accessibility services
  - CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console
4. Install each adapter that you will use and configure the adapter Application objects with Stat Server connections.
5. Install the Advisors components for your enterprise in the following order:
  - Contact Center Advisor server (CCAAdv XML Generator)
  - Workforce Advisor server
  -  Frontline Advisor server
  - SDS and the CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console
6. Make any required configuration changes.



## Deploying the Frontline Advisor Application

### Procedure:

#### Steps

1. Launch the installation file.  
**[+] Show Steps for Linux**

- a. As root, navigate to the Advisors home directory:

```
cd /home/advisors
```

- b. As root, run the FA installer. The page format of this document might cause a line break in the following command, but you must enter it on one line in the command prompt window:

```
./jdk1.8.0_<version>/bin/java -jar fa-server-installer-<version>.jar
```

#### **[+] Show Step for Windows**

Do one of the following:

- Open a command line window, and enter the following command:  
`java -jar fa-server-installer-<version>.jar`
- Double-click the `fa-server-installer-<version>.jar` file in the release bundle.

Double-clicking might not work due to system settings, but using the command line terminal should always work.

For 64-bit systems, if double-clicking to launch the installer, please ensure that the Java instance associated with the jar file type is 64-bit. Running the installer with a 32-bit Java instance will create a Windows service with the wrong executable.

2. On the **Destination Directory** screen, accept the default directory, or specify a different directory. The installation directory for Frontline Advisor server must be the same as the directory where Advisors Platform has been installed.
3. Use the information provided in the [Installer Screens](#) section on this page to complete the remaining deployment screens.
4. After you deploy FA, you must modify the Apache configuration file (`httpd.conf`). See [Deploy and Configure Apache](#).

### Installer Screens

#### **[+] Distributed Mode - Rollup Engine**



You see the **Distributed Mode - Rollup Engine** screen only if you selected the Run as a cluster member option on the **Distributed Mode Configuration** screen.

On the **Distributed Mode - Rollup Engine** screen, select one of the two options:

- **Enable Rollup Engine**—Enable the rollup engine if you intend the FA instance you are installing to be responsible for data aggregation. When installing Advisors Platform to support the FA instance on which the rollup engine will be enabled, you must install the Administration workbench.

### Tip

Enable the rollup engine for only one of the FA instances in a cluster for a basic setup. In a warm standby configuration, however, ensure you enable the rollup engine on both the primary and backup applications; the two do not run simultaneously, and in the event of failover, the backup must be able to continue the data aggregation processes.

- **Disable rollup engine**—Disable the rollup engine if you intend the FA instance you are installing to be responsible for presentation only. When installing Advisors Platform to support the FA instance on which the rollup engine will be disabled, do not install the Administration workbench.

## [+] Failure Notification Configuration

On the **Failure Notification Configuration** screen, specify the email settings for system-level notifications:

- **Application from address**—The default *sender* of the notification message; for example, faadmin@genesys.com
- **Application to address**—The default *recipient* of the notification message; for example, faadmin@genesys.com
- **Subject**—The default subject line for notification messages; for example, Frontline Advisor Message

## [+] Genesys Advisor Platform Database

On the **Genesys Advisor Platform Database** screen, specify the parameters for the Advisors platform database:

- **Database server**—The host name or IP address of the database server. When using numerical IP v6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.
- **Database port number**—The database server's port number.
- **Database name or Service name**—The unique name of the database instance.
- **Database user or Database schema**—The Advisors user with full access to the Advisors platform database.
- **Database user password**—The password created and used for the Advisors platform database.



## [+] Genesys Advisor Platform Database - Advanced

You will see this screen only if you select Oracle as the database type and Advanced as the JDBC connectivity setup type on the **RDBMS Type And JDBC Connectivity** installer screen. On the **Genesys Advisor Platform Database - Advanced** screen, specify the parameters for the Advisors Platform database:

- Database user or Database schema—The Advisors user with full access to the Advisors platform database.
- Database user password or Database schema password—The password created and used for the Advisors platform database.
- Locate file—Enter the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator. The installation wizard applies the specified advanced connection string when configuring the data sources.

## [+] Hierarchy Source Details

You see the **Hierarchy Source Details** screen only if you selected the Run as a single instance option on the **Distributed Mode Configuration** screen.

On the **Hierarchy Source Details** screen, enter either:

- The name of the tenant in the Genesys Configuration Server in which the monitoring hierarchy resides, and the path to the hierarchy root folder.
- The name of a Person folder in your Genesys configuration interface (for example, Genesys Administrator), and the path to that Person folder. Selecting this option restricts the hierarchy view that is loaded at startup (or reloaded using the reload feature) to the team of agents belonging to that person (supervisor).

## [+] RDBMS Type And JDBC Connectivity

On the **RDBMS Type And JDBC Connectivity** screen, select either the **SQL Server** or the **Oracle** option – whichever you use for database(s). You must also select the Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) type that matches your environment. Select **Basic** for standalone databases or **Advanced** for clustered database configurations. The screens that follow are dependent on your selections on this screen.

## [+] SCS Integration

Enter the Advisors Application name exactly as it is configured in Genesys Configuration Server.



## Start the FA Service

### Procedure:

#### Steps

1. Follow the Advisors Platform instructions to install the Windows service.
2. Each time the service is started, the Monitoring Hierarchy Loader runs.
3. Start the service and refresh a few times to make sure the service stays running.
4. If you experience problems, check the Platform log file. It may take up to 45 minutes to fully start the FA service, depending on the number of agents and the complexity of the hierarchy.

## Troubleshooting

The following Table shows parameter validation errors that you might encounter at the end of installation.



Installation Error Message	Cause
<pre>[java] Failed to connect to the database using connection URL:  [java] jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnn;DatabaseName=ys_fadb;user=sa; password=very_secure_pwd;selectMethod=cursor [java] The following exception was thrown: com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerException: The TCP/IP connection to the host 192.168.xx.yy, port nnn has failed. Error: "Connection refused. Verify the connection properties, check that an instance of SQL Server is running on the host and accepting TCP/IP connections at the port, and that no firewall is blocking TCP connections to the port.</pre>	Wrong database server name / IP address or port number
<pre>[java] Failed to connect to the database using connection URL:  [java] jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnnn;DatabaseName=NotAPlatformDB; selectMethod=cursor;user=sa;password=very_secure_pwd [java] The following exception was thrown: com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerException: The TCP/IP connection to the host 192.168.xx.yy, port nnnn has failed. Error: "connect timed out. Verify the connection properties, check that an instance of SQL Server is running on the host and accepting TCP/IP connections at the port, and that no firewall is blocking TCP connections to the port."</pre>	Wrong database name
<pre>[java] Exception while connecting: Login failed for user 'badUserId'.  [java] url used: jdbc:sqlserver://192.168.xx.yy:nnnn;DatabaseName=ys_fadb;selectMethod=cursor; user=badUserId;password=very_secure_password</pre>	Wrong database user name or password
<pre>[loadfile] Unable to load file: java.io.FileNotFoundException: C:\ (The system cannot find the path specified)</pre>	Produced in error and can be ignored.
<p>An error message in the FA log that contains the following string:</p> <pre>datamanager.adapters.MultiAdapterException</pre>	<p>Indicates that there is at least one (there might be more than one) configured Genesys Advisors Adapter (AGA) instance that is either not running or is not reachable. Genesys recommends the following actions to correct the condition:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check all configured AGA instances. Make sure that each one is running</li> </ol>



Installation Error Message	Cause
	<p>and reachable from FA.</p> <p>2. If you have any AGA instances that are not absolutely required for the operation of FA, remove those from the configuration.</p> <p>If a configured adapter is reporting this error condition, and it is running correctly, then you need to look for other problems with the adapter. For example, the adapter Application that is registered in Configuration Server might not have any Stat Servers configured, or the configured Stat Server(s) might not be running.</p>
<p><b>NEW</b> C:\Users\&lt;USERNAME&gt;\AppData\Local\Temp\antinstall\build.xml:189: The following error occurred while executing this line:</p> <p>C:\Users\&lt;USERNAME&gt;\AppData\Local\Temp\antinstall\ installer-common.xml:468: java.lang.NoClassDefFoundError: javax/xml/bind/DatatypeConverter at com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerConnection.sendLogon(SQLServerConnection.java:406) ...</p>	<p>Ensure that you are launching the installer with Java JDK version 1.8. You can type <code>java --version</code> in a Windows command prompt window or in the Linux terminal to see which version is currently configured on your system. If you are using a Windows OS, add the Java JDK 1.8 folder path to both <code>JAVA_HOME</code> and <code>PATH</code> in environment variables. If you use Red Hat Enterprise Linux, add the Java JDK 1.8 folder path to the <code>PATH</code> variable.</p>




---

# Deploying SDS and RMC

Use the procedures on this page to deploy Supervisor Desktop Service (SDS) and the Resource Management console (RMC).

## Deployment Roadmap

The arrow icon in the following roadmap indicates where you are in the Advisors deployment process.

1. **[+] Install the databases that correspond to the Advisors products you will deploy.**
  - a. Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database
  - b. Advisors Platform database
  - c. Metric Graphing database
2. Create the Advisors User and the Object Configuration User in Configuration Server.
3. **[+] Install the Platform service on servers where it is required for Advisors components.**
  - Advisors Administration
  - Advisors Web Services
  - WA Server
  - FA Server with rollup engine
  - CCAAdv/WA/FA Accessibility services
  - CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console
4. Install each adapter that you will use and configure the adapter Application objects with Stat Server connections.
5. Install the Advisors components for your enterprise:
  - Contact Center Advisor server (CCAAdv XML Generator)
  - Workforce Advisor server
  - Frontline Advisor server
  -  SDS and the CCAAdv/WA Resource Management console
6. Make any required configuration changes.

## Resource Management and Resource Management User Configuration

The Resource Management Console (RMC) is subject to Role-Based Access Control (RBAC). After you have deployed RMC, a system administrator must assign privileges and permissions to users who will



use RMC in the Contact Center Advisor or Workforce Advisor dashboard. These privileges and permissions control a user's or group's access to RMC and, for users or groups who have access to RMC, access to specific functionality within it.

In addition to configuring permissions and privileges, you might need to change property file settings. See [Related Information](#) for links to related topics.

## Related Information

See the following for more information:

- For general information about using RBAC with Advisors, see [Role-Based Access Control for Advisors](#).
- For information about creating RMC Users in the Genesys environment, see [Configuring RMC Users in the Genesys Configuration Layer](#).
- For information about privileges and permissions for users of RMC, see [CCAdv/WA Access Privileges](#).
- For information about configuring RMC after installing it, see [Configure Resource Management Console Properties](#).
- Procedures on this page assume that you are familiar with, and regularly use, one of the Genesys configuration interfaces for creating users, roles, access groups, and so on, in the Configuration Layer. If you need detailed information about using the Genesys configuration interface, see the Help for the interface used in your enterprise:
  - [Configuration Manager Help \(8.1\)](#)
  - [Genesys Administrator Help](#)
  - [Genesys Administrator Extension Help](#)

## Important Information about the SDS and RMC Operating Environment

Before you deploy Supervisor Desktop Service (SDS) and Resource Management Console (RMC), ensure you have the correct operating environment for both. Read the following information carefully:

- Supervisor Desktop Service SDS is available in both 32-bit and 64-bit versions.
- When connecting SDS to a Configuration Server proxy, SDS supports a connection only to non-secure ports of the proxy server.
- When installing Java for SDS, use the following table as a guide. Follow this basic rule: if the SDS is



32-bit, use 32-bit Java. If SDS is 64-bit, use 64-bit Java. The SDS server for Linux is 32-bit only.

Operating System	SDS Version	Java 32 or 64
Linux 32- or 64-bit	7.6.300.11 32-bit, or 7.6.300.12 32-bit	Java 1.8.x 32-bit/Java 1.8.x 64-bit
Windows 32-bit	7.6.300.11 32-bit	Java 1.8.x 32-bit
Windows 64-bit	7.6.300.11 32-bit	Java 1.8.x 32-bit
Windows 64-bit	7.6.300.11 64-bit, or 7.6.300.12 64-bit	Java 1.8.x 64-bit

- Advisors release 8.5.2 requires SDS release 7.6.300.11 or higher, and is not compatible with earlier SDS releases. See the [SDS Release Note](#) for information that can help you to select the SDS release that is right for your environment.
- Install SDS and the RMC only after you have installed all other Advisors components that you use in your enterprise. Genesys recommends that you verify the dashboards are working for all installed components (CCAdv, WA, FA), and that the hierarchy in each dashboard rolls up correctly before you install SDS and RMC.
- If you use the Resource Management Console in Contact Center Advisor and/or Workforce Advisor, avoid running Resource Management in Microsoft Internet Explorer 10 or earlier versions; older versions of Internet Explorer can cause serious problems with the Resource Management console.

## SDS and RMC Deployment Procedures

Use the procedures on this page to deploy the Supervisor Desktop Service (required for RMC) and the Resource Management Console.

### Task Summary

The following tasks are listed in the order in which Genesys recommends you install and configure the Supervisor Desktop Service and the Resource Management Console.

For information about supported operating systems, see [the Advisors section in the Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide](#).

1. Configure the Supervisor Desktop Service Application in the Genesys Configuration Layer.  
See [Procedure: Configuring the SDS Application in the Genesys Configuration Layer](#).
2. Deploy Supervisor Desktop Service on a supported Windows or Linux operating system. Use one of the following procedures:
  - [Procedure: Deploying Supervisor Desktop Service on Windows](#)
  - [Procedure: Deploying Supervisor Desktop Service on Linux](#)
3. Complete the Supervisor Desktop Service configuration.  
See [Procedure: Completing the Supervisor Desktop Service Configuration](#).
4. Deploy the Resource Management Console on a supported Windows or Linux operating system.  
See [Procedure: Deploying the Resource Management Console](#).



5. Configure the Resource Management Console. See [Procedure: Configuring the Resource Management Console](#).

## Procedure: Configuring the SDS Application in the Genesys Configuration Layer

### Steps

1. On the Genesys server, launch the Genesys configuration interface (for example, Genesys Administrator).
2. Create a host object, under the Environment tenant, for the machine on which you will deploy the SDS, if one does not already exist.  
Genesys recommends that the IP address configured in this host object be the actual IP address of the server, not a loopback address.
3. Import the application template called `Genesys_Supervisor_Desktop_Service_763.adp`. This template is located with the SDS installation files.
4. Create a new Application using the `Genesys_Supervisor_Desktop_Service_763.adp` application template. Configure the Application using the following guidelines:
  - a. Specify the name of the application as `Genesys Supervisor Desktop`.
  - b. Add connections to the T-Servers, Interaction Servers, and the Stat Server to which the SDS will connect.  
SDS can be connected to one primary/backup Stat Server pair.
  - c. (Multi-tenant environments only) Add the non-Environment tenant that SDS will monitor.
  - d. Select the host object configured in **Step 2** above (that is, the server on which you will install SDS). If necessary, change the port number to 8080.
  - e. Enter a single period (.) for the working directory, command line, and command line arguments.
  - f. Ensure you select a login account that has full control privileges. For example, you can select the option to log in as System as long as your System user has full control access privileges.
  - g. Configure options as follows:
    - Under the **[license]** section, change the value for `license-file` to the port and host name of the server hosting the license server. This value should be in the format `Port@Hostname` (for example, `7260@inf-devlab`).
    - Specify the following options under the **[supervisor]** section:
      - set `calculated-statistics-enable` to `true`
      - set `stat-on-request` to `true`



- set `stat-threads` to `-1`
- set `stat-peeking` to `false`
- set `show-env-tenant` to `false` for multi-tenant configurations, or to `true` for single-tenant configurations

### Tip

The `stat-threads= -1` setting can be used to indicate “use all available processors”.

For smaller customers the following settings can be used to create periodic SDS statistics polling at 30-second intervals:

- `stat-peeking=false`
- `stat-refresh-rate=30`

The refresh rate can be increased for more frequent updates, at the cost of increased SDS and Stat Server load.

For larger customers the `stat-peeking=true` setting can be used to define on-demand statistics retrieval.

- Add the properties for your e-mail messaging system under the **[supervisor]** section in the list of options; see the following Table for additional information.

#### [+] Show Table

Property Name	Example Property Value	Description
email-sender-address	adminaccount@email-server.com	The From address used for all Resource Management notification e-mail messages.
email-server	email-server@domainname.com	The mail server name.
email-server-port	25	The default SMTP port.
email-user	sds.email.account	The user account for the e-mail server. Ignored if email-authenticate is set to off.
email-authenticate		Does the e-mail server require authentication? Valid values are on or off.
email-use-SSL		Does the e-mail server use SSL? Valid values are on or off.
password		The password for the e-mail server. Ignored if email-authenticate is set to off.



5. In the Application's permissions, grant to the Advisors user the following permissions on the Application: Read, Change, Read Permissions. See [Create the Advisors User Account](#).
6. Save the Application.
7. Verify that the T-Server(s), Interaction Server(s), and Stat Server(s) are configured with a correct host (that is, they do not use localhost).  
The SDS uses the hosts that are configured in the Configuration Server for the T-Servers, Interaction Servers, and the Stat Servers to determine where they are installed and how to reach them. If these servers are configured with the localhost host, the SDS tries to connect to the server on which it is installed. This will not work if the SDS and the other servers are installed on different machines.

### Next Steps

Deploy the SDS on a supported Windows or Linux host machine. See one of the following:

- [Procedure: Deploying Supervisor Desktop Service on Windows](#)
- [Procedure: Deploying Supervisor Desktop Service on Linux](#)

For information about supported operating systems for Advisors deployments, see [the Advisors section in the Supported Operating Environment Reference Guide](#)

## Procedure: Deploying Supervisor Desktop Service on Windows

### Steps

1. If an older version of SDS is already installed, you must uninstall it.  
**[+] Show Steps for Using Command Line**
  - a. Stop the SDS service.
  - b. In a command prompt, navigate to the bin subdirectory for the SDS installation.
  - c. Run `service.bat uninstall SupervisorDesktopService`.
  - d. Delete all files and subdirectories in the root SDS directory.



**[+] Show Steps for Using SDS Installer**

- a. Stop the SDS service.
  - b. Run the SDS installer, selecting the option to update an existing installation.
  - c. When prompted, select the option to remove the SDS.
  - d. Delete all files and subdirectories in the root SDS directory.
2. Ensure that you have either a JAVA\_HOME or JRE\_HOME environment variable set, pointing to the JDK or JRE root directory respectively.
  3. Copy the installation package to a directory of your choice.
  4. Run setup.exe.  
You can find the setup.exe file in the folder containing the Supervisor Desktop Service installation package.  
The Genesys Installation Wizard for SDS displays and guides you through the rest of the installation.

**[+] See information about installer screens**

- a. On the **Connection Parameters to the Configuration Server** screen, enter information in all fields.
- b. On the **Select Application** screen, select the application **that you created**.
- c. On the **Choose Destination** screen, specify the directory in which to install SDS. Clicking the Default button enters C:\GCTI\GenesysSupervisorDesktopService\Genesys\_Supervisor\_Desktop. Click the Browse button to navigate to a directory of your choice.

**Important**

The Supervisor Desktop Service (SDS) installation path must contain no spaces. For example, C:\Advisors\SDS\ADV\_Supervisor\_Desk\_Serv is a valid installation path, but C:\Advisors\SDS\ADV Supervisor Desk Serv is not.

- d. To configure a connection to a backup Configuration Server, enter the connection parameters on the **Connection Parameters to the Backup Configuration Server** screen. This is optional; you can leave this screen empty.
- e. On the **Configuration Parameters** screen, enter the Tomcat port information.

**Next Steps**

There are additional steps to complete the SDS configuration. See **Procedure: Completing the Supervisor Desktop Service Configuration**.



## Procedure: Deploying Supervisor Desktop Service on Linux

### Steps

1. If an older version of SDS is already installed, you must uninstall it.  
If you must uninstall SDS from a Linux platform for any reason, manually remove the installation directory and delete the web application from the server.
2. Ensure that you have either a JAVA\_HOME or JRE\_HOME environment variable set, pointing to the JDK or JRE root directory respectively.
3. Copy the installation package to a directory of your choice.
4. Run `./install.sh`.  
You can find the `./install.sh` file in the folder containing the Supervisor Desktop Service installation package.

#### **[+] See information about installer screens**

- a. On the **Connection Parameters to the Configuration Server** screen, enter information in all fields.
- b. On the **Select Application** screen, select the application **that you created**.
- c. On the **Choose Destination** screen, specify the directory in which to install SDS. Clicking the **Default** button enters `C:\GCTI\GenesysSupervisorDesktopService\Genesys_Supervisor_Desktop`. Click the **Browse** button to navigate to a directory of your choice.

### Important

The Supervisor Desktop Service (SDS) installation path must contain no spaces. For example, `C:\Advisors\SDS\ADV_Supervisor_Desk_Serv` is a valid installation path, but `C:\Advisors\SDS\ADV Supervisor Desk Serv` is not.

- d. To configure a connection to a backup Configuration Server, enter the connection parameters on the **Connection Parameters to the Backup Configuration Server** screen. This is optional; you can leave this screen empty.
- e. On the **Configuration Parameters** screen, enter the Tomcat port information.

### Next Steps

There are additional steps to complete the SDS configuration. See [Procedure: Completing the Supervisor Desktop Service Configuration](#).



## Procedure: Completing the Supervisor Desktop Service Configuration

### Steps

1. On the Genesys server, launch the Genesys configuration interface (for example, Genesys Administrator).
2. Edit the options for your Stat Server application as described below:
  - a. Import the StatServerEntries.cfg file (found in the Advisors Genesys Adapter installation directory) into the Stat Server application options. If prompted to overwrite the existing options, choose NO.
  - b. If prompted to overwrite/update any statistics options, do so. The file does not alter any default Stat Server metrics, only ones specific to Advisors. Changing any logging options is optional.
  - c. Restart the Stat Server.
3. For performance reasons, Genesys recommends that you update xms and xmx values for servers that host your SDS. Edit these values based on information in the [Genesys Performance Management Advisors Hardware Sizing Guide](#).
4. Use Solution Control Server, Genesys Administrator, or the SDS host to start SDS.  
To start SDS from the host machine:
  - On a Windows host machine: Use the Windows service
  - On a Linux host machine: Execute ./startup.sh in the /bin folder

### Next Steps

Deploy the Resource Management Console. See [Procedure: Deploying the Resource Management Console](#).

## Procedure: Deploying the Resource Management Console



## Steps

1. Launch the Contact Center Advisor/Workforce Advisor (CCAdv/WA) installation file.

### [+] Show Steps for Linux

- a. Navigate to the Advisors home directory:

```
cd /home/advisors
```

- b. Run the CCAdv/WA installer. The page format of this document might cause a line break in the following command, but you must enter it on one line in the command prompt window:

```
./jdk1.8.0_<version>/bin/java -jar ccadv-wa-installer-<version>.jar
```

### [+] Show Steps for Windows

Do one of the following:

- Open a command line window, and enter the following command:

```
java -jar ccadv-wa-installer-<version>.jar
```

- Double-click the ccadv-wa-installer-<version>.jar file in the release bundle.

Double-clicking might not work due to system settings, but using the command line terminal should always work. Genesys recommends using the command line window to launch the installer.

For 64-bit systems, if double-clicking to launch the installer, please ensure that the Java instance associated with the jar file type is 64-bit. Running the installer with a 32-bit Java instance will create a Windows service with the wrong executable.

2. On the **Modules to Install** screen, select the Resource Management Console checkbox. Genesys recommends that you install RMC after all other Advisors components are installed and working.
3. Enter the following information on subsequent screens:
  - On the **Destination Directory** screen, select the base location of the Advisors installation (that is, the base directory where the Platform components and Tomcat are installed). In most cases, this is C:\Program Files\GCTI\Advisors, which is the default location.
  - On the **RDBMS Type And JDBC Connectivity** screen, select either the **SQL Server** or the **Oracle** option – whichever you use for database(s). You must also select the Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) type that matches your environment. Select **Basic** for standalone databases or **Advanced** for clustered database configurations. The screens that follow are dependent on your selections on this screen.
  - On the **Genesys Advisor Platform Database** screen, specify the parameters for the Advisors platform database – the fields might vary depending on your selection of **Basic** or **Advanced** database type:
    - Database server—If requested, enter the host name or IP address of the database server. When using numerical IPv6 addresses, enclose the literal in brackets.



- Database name/Service name—If requested, enter the unique name of the database instance.
  - Database port number—If requested, enter the database server's port number.
  - Database user—The username to be used by CCAAdv/WA to access the database.
  - Database user password—The password associated with the database user.
  - Locate file—Enter the location of the file that contains the advanced database connection string. If you do not know how to correctly build the advanced database connection string, contact your database administrator. The installation wizard applies the specified advanced connection string when configuring the data sources.
- On the **Resource Management Console** screen, enter the IP address of the SDS server, as well as the port number for the SDS path (the default port number is 8080).
4. After you have entered information on all installer screens, click **Install**.
  5. Click **Show Details**. Use the **Errors** tab to verify that no errors were reported during installation.

#### Next Steps

See [Procedure: Configuring the Resource Management Console](#).

## Procedure: Configuring the Resource Management Console

### Steps

#### 1. Configure the RMC properties file

After RMC has installed successfully, you can edit the Advisors\conf\RMC.properties configuration file. For example, you might want to change the maximum skill level, the refresh interval, and/or the number of concurrent users properties. See [Configure Resource Management Console Properties](#) for more information.

#### 2. Enable transmission of login events to RMC

When an Advisors user logs in to or out of Advisors, a message describing this event is sent on a topic to the RMC Web application. The RMC receives the message and logs the user in to or out of the SDS server. By default, messages remain alive in the topic for 1 second, but the default value of 1 second is not long enough for the RMC to receive the messages. Using the default value, the RMC will not log users in to the SDS and, when the users try to open the RMC, they will see messages stating that they are not logged in to the SDS server.



To change how long the Advisors application keeps alive login messages in the topic, update the `advisors.user.auth.event.queue.ttl.secs` parameter in the `conf/ActiveMQ.properties` file. You must update the file for every Platform server that will receive requests from users to log in to Advisors.

Genesys recommends setting the `advisors.user.auth.event.queue.ttl.secs` property to 300 seconds:

```
advisors.user.auth.event.queue.ttl.secs=300
```

### Warning

To ensure that the login messages do not expire prematurely, the system time must be identical on the nodes in the Advisors cluster. The logic that decides if a message should expire uses the system time on *both the sending and receiving system*, so the system time must be synchronized within the cluster.

### 3. Add an entry to Apache `httpd.conf`

To access the Resource Management Notification administration pages through the Advisors interface (Advisors Administration module), you must add the following entry to the Apache `httpd.conf` file on the web server:

```
ProxyPass /rmc/ ajp://<rmc host>:<rmc port>/rmc/
```

where `<rmc host>` is the host name or IP address for the machine on which the RMC module is installed, and where `<rmc port>` is the corresponding port number (default: 8009).

### 4. Restart Platform servers

Restart every Platform server for which you changed either the `RMC.properties` properties or the `ActiveMQ.properties` file.

If the Platform server is running an Advisors application that is integrated with Solution Control Server, then restart the Advisors server from the Solution Control Interface.

If not integrated with Solution Control Server, then:

- On a Windows host machine: Open the Windows Services window and restart the Platform server.
- On a Linux host machine:
  - If you have not configured Advisors Platform to start as a service, then from the `/bin` folder, execute `./shutdown.sh` and then `./startup.sh` to stop and restart the Platform server.
  - If you have configured Advisors Platform to start as a service, then stop and start the Linux service that controls Advisors Platform.

### Next Steps

- See [Configure Resource Management Console Properties](#) for information about configuring RMC



properties for optimal performance.

- Configure permissions and privileges to allow users access to RMC in the Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor dashboards:
  - See [Role-Based Access Control for Advisors](#) for general information about using RBAC with Advisors.
  - See [CCAdv/WA Access Privileges](#) for information about privileges and permissions for users of RMC.
  - See [Configuring RMC Users in the Genesys Configuration Layer](#) for information about RMC User configuration in the Genesys environment.



# Post Installation Configuration

You perform initial Performance Management Advisors configuration during the deployment phase. At a later date, after installation is complete, you might require re-configuration of some components. Use the topics in the **Post Installation Configuration** section to assist you to find relevant configuration files and so on.



---

# General

This section contains information and procedures to help you change configuration for Performance Management Advisors after the Advisors modules are deployed.



# Cold Standby Configuration and Switchover

Performance Management Advisors support *cold standby* High Availability starting in release 8.5.0. *Cold standby* means you have redundant servers available for each of the nodes in the Platform database's `Cluster_Member` table for which you require backup, and also for any data adapters (Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA)) configured in the system. When an Advisors component or its host server fails, you switch over to the backup system.

You can install the backup system before the primary goes down, or after the primary fails. In either case, after the backup system is installed, you need only make small manual adjustments in the Platform database to replace the primary server with the backup server, and back again.

Note that starting in release 8.5.1, Advisors support warm standby HA for certain modules, integrating with Solution Control Server. See [Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby](#).

<tabber>

Install Redundant Servers=

1. Review the list of nodes in the Advisors Platform database `Cluster_Member` table, and then identify a backup server machine for each node for which you require a backup.
2. On each backup machine, install the same Advisors components that are installed on the primary machine. Use the installer properties files (`ant.install.properties`) from the original system.
3. For pre-installing the backups, ensure that the `Cluster_Node` page attributes are exactly the same on the backup as they were for the primary; that is, do not change the node name or host values. Using the identical configuration ensures the backup system installation does not overwrite the primary. You can change the following, if necessary, on the backup machine, but it is very important that you do not change any other installer options:
  - the installation path
  - the Java path
  - the folder from which the Oracle JDBC driver is provided to the installer
  - the log folder, depending on your file folder structure
4. Follow [Step 3](#) for data adapters (AGA). Again, do not change the host values or names of the adapters on their registration pages.
5. Run the primary system.
6. If a primary system fails and you must switch over to the backup, follow the relevant procedure on the other tabs of this page.

| - | Switchover on a Cluster Node Server=

If the primary server, or the platform service on a primary server goes down, use the following procedure to switch over to the redundant system. This procedure assumes the redundant server is installed. See the procedure on the *Install Redundant Servers* tab if you have not already installed the backup system.



1. Stop the system service on all other Advisors nodes in the deployment. The data adapters can continue to run, but you will have to restart them later.
2. Update the row in the Platform database `Cluster_Member` table that identifies the failed node; set the `IP_Address` column to the IP or hostname of the backup server for that node. If you use an Oracle database, commit the changes.
3. Update any affected addresses for ProxyPass entries in the Apache configuration file (`httpd.conf`) so that they point to the backup server. See information on the *HA and Apache Server* tab.
4. Restart the system service on all data adapters.
5. Start the main Advisors Platform node first (the node on which you installed the administration workbench), regardless of whether it is a primary or a backup node.
6. Follow the Advisors startup sequence to bring the full deployment back up, starting the other nodes on their respective servers in the correct order, and depending on which components you have installed:
  - a. Main (administration) Platform
  - b. Apache service
  - c. AGA for FA, if present
  - d. AGA for CCAdv, if present
  - e. CCAdv Web services, if not on the administration node
  - f. FA Platform
  - g. WA server, if present
  - h. XML Generator Platform, if it is different from the administration Platform
    - i. WA Web service, if not on the WA Platform
  - j. SDS, if present
  - k. XML Generator service
7. Users that were logged into the Advisors interface must log out, or close their browsers, and then log in again.

#### |–| Switchover on an Adapter=

If a data adapter (AGA) or its host server fails, use the following procedure to switch over to the redundant adapter/server.

To switch over from a backup adapter to the primary adapter again, you use the same procedure, but there is no need to update the `inf_genesys_adapter.properties` file on the primary server. That server's properties file was not changed during the switch over to the backup adapter; it therefore contains the correct information.

1. Stop the system service for all other adapters and all Advisors nodes in the deployment (you must restart nodes that depend on the adapters, and therefore all other nodes, as well).
2. In the Platform database `Adapter_Instances` table, identify the record that corresponds to the adapter that needs to be switched over. Update the `Host` property of this record to that of the redundant system's host name or IP address. Commit the change, if necessary.



3. On the redundant adapter server, open the `inf_genesys_adapter.properties` file (in the Advisors installation /conf folder). Update the following line to point to the redundant server's host name or IP address; if you used an IP address in [Step 2](#), you must use the IP address here (the same is true of the host name – you must use the same type of entry in both locations):

```
informiam_genesys_connector.host.name =
```

4. Repeat the preceding Steps (2 and 3) for each adapter instance that you want to switch over to its backup system.

5. Start the redundant adapters, and then restart all other adapters.

6. Restart the system service for each node in the correct Advisors startup sequence:

- a. Main (administration) Platform
- b. Apache service
- c. AGA for FA, if present
- d. AGA for CCAdv, if present
- e. CCAdv Web services, if not on the administration node
- f. FA Platform
- g. WA server, if present
- h. XML Generator Platform, if it is different from the administration Platform
- i. WA Web service, if not on the WA Platform
- j. SDS, if present
- k. XML Generator service

6. Users that were logged into the Advisors interface must log out, or close their browsers, and then log in again.

#### |–| HA and Apache Server=

If you move any Advisors node to a backup server, you must update the ProxyPass section of the Apache server configuration file (`httpd.conf`). It is important that you find every instance of the IP address or host name of the system that is being replaced, and change those instances to the IP address or host name of the system that you have configured as the backup.

After you complete and save updates to the Apache Server configuration file, stop and then restart the Apache service.

#### |–| HA and RMC=

The Supervisor Desktop Service (SDS) server that supports the Resource Management Console (RMC) has no inherent High Availability (HA) capability. Loss of the SDS server requires recovery of the service or machine, or a redundant SDS installation with the same configuration as the existing SDS installation (that is, it must point to the same Configuration Server, Stat Server(s), and TServer(s)), and with the same permission structure.

If you transfer from one SDS server to another, you must update the `RMC.properties` file in Advisors/conf to point to the new SDS instance. Instructions are available in the [Deploying SDS and RMC section](#) of the *Performance Management Advisors Deployment Guide*.

If your Advisors deployment uses RMC, Genesys strongly advises you to install the Advisors Web



---

services component into the Advisors Platform instance where the administration workbench is installed because RMC uses objects in both the workbench and in the Web services. RMC cannot connect to both sets of objects if the workbench and Web services are on different servers.

If you install RMC with both the administration workbench and CCAdv Web Services, RMC is supported for HA along with the entire node.



# Change Memory Allocation

Consider changing the memory allocation of an Advisors server if it is recording out-of-memory errors in its log file.

If the problem with memory persists, experiment with higher values; however, the Advisors server may fail to start if it is unable to allocate all of the memory requested from the operating system. This will be noticeable if the server fails to start (reports an error during start).

For more information on the Java Virtual Machine options used in this section, see <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/technotes/tools/windows/java.html> for Windows environments or <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/technotes/tools/unix/java.html> for Linux environments.

## Change Memory Allocation for Advisors Platform

The following sections describe changes that you can make to the memory allocation for Advisors Platform:

- [Advisors Server Controlled By Solution Control Server](#)
- [Advisors Server Controlled By Windows or Linux Service](#)

### Advisors Server Controlled by Solution Control Server

This section describes which memory allocation settings to edit for an Advisors server that is controlled by Solution Control Server (SCS). For a list of those components that are controlled by the SCS, see [Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby](#).

Consider changing the memory allocation for the Advisors Platform server if the `advisors.log` file for the Advisors server is recording an out-of-memory error. Edit the `CATALINA_OPTS= ... -ms` and `-mx` values in one of the following files to increase the heap size:

- On Windows, `apache-tomcat-<version>\bin\setenv.bat`
- On Linux, `apache-tomcat-<version>/bin/setenv.sh`

See the [Genesys Performance Management Advisors Hardware Sizing Guide](#) for memory allocation recommendations.

#### Tip

Java out-of-memory errors can also occur due to insufficient operating system (OS) resources or thread stack resources (rather than heap) exhausting available JVM memory. Reviewing the configuration of your JVM and OS resources, and adjusting if



necessary to ensure availability of resources, can prevent or fix such errors. For example, consider reviewing your ulimit configuration (nproc process limits, file descriptors, and so on) and Java thread stack size.

## Advisors Server Controlled by Windows Service

This section describes which memory allocation settings to edit for an Advisors server that is controlled by an OS service (that is, a server that is not controlled by SCS). For a list of the components that are controlled by an OS service, see [Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby](#).

To change memory allocation settings, edit the `<install_dir>/bin/service.bat` file. Towards the end of the file, locate the `--JvMMs` and `--JvMMx` settings. Edit the values, particularly the `--JvMMx` value, to increase the heap size.

See the [Genesys Performance Management Advisors Hardware Sizing Guide](#) for memory allocation recommendations.

## Change Memory Allocation for Advisors Genesys Adapter

Consider changing the memory allocation for Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA) if the AGA log file is recording an out-of-memory error. Edit the `JAVA_OPTS=-ms` and `-mx` values in one of the following files to increase the heap size:

- On Windows, `run.bat`
- On Linux, `setenv.sh`

See the [Genesys Performance Management Advisors Hardware Sizing Guide](#) for memory allocation recommendations.

## Change Memory Allocation for CCAdv XML Generator

Consider changing the memory allocation for CCAdv XML Generator if the XML Generator log file is recording an out-of-memory error.

Edit the `.../java" -server -ms` and `-mx` values in one of the following files to increase the heap size:

- On Windows, `xmlgen/run.bat`
- On Linux, `xmlgen/run.sh`

See the [Genesys Performance Management Advisors Hardware Sizing Guide](#) for memory allocation



---

recommendations.



---

# Change Encrypted Passwords

The passwords provided during installation are encrypted. The Advisors password encryption utility can be used to change passwords after installation.

## Procedure:

### Steps

1. Open the command prompt window and navigate to the `..\GCTI\Advisors\bin` directory.
2. Run the command `encrypt-password`.
3. When prompted, enter the new password and press Enter.
4. Copy the resulting encrypted password and replace the old password in the configuration file.

### Important

You cannot use this utility to change the password that is used to connect to the WA Server with FTP. To change this password, see [Importing Contact Groups into Advisors](#).



---

# Switching Advisors Oracle database connectivity from JDBC thin driver to Oracle Call Interface (OCI)

If you prefer using Oracle OCI for connectivity between Advisors and Oracle database, you need to perform the standard installation procedure with Oracle JDBC thin driver and then switch to OCI by applying a post-installation procedure presented below.

Genesys recommends that you have deployed (or migrated) your Advisors installation using procedures described in this document and in the [Genesys Performance Management Advisors Migration Guide](#), and verified that the Advisors installation is working correctly, before proceeding with the procedures described on this page.

## Download and Install the Oracle Instant Client

You must install the Oracle Instant Client on each machine in an Advisors installation (that is, all Platform, XML Generator, Frontline Advisor (FA), Workforce Advisor (WA), and Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA) machines).

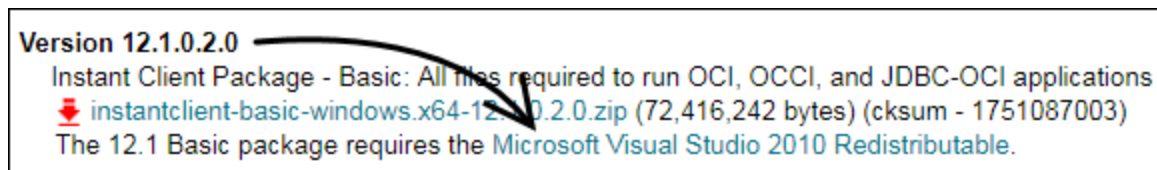
Go to the [Instant Client Downloads](#) page on the Oracle website. Click the link that matches your system type (for example, Instant Client for Linux x86-64). Choose "Accept License Agreement" at the top of the page, and then download the Instant Client Package (an .rpm file for Linux or a .zip file for Windows) for your target Oracle and operating system version. For example, if your Oracle version is 12.1.x, then select the Instant Client Package that matches the 12.1.x version.

In addition to downloading the Instant Client Package, you can also download the SQL\*Plus package that goes with your version of the Instant Client. Downloading the SQL\*Plus package is optional, but SQL\*Plus is useful for testing the OCI connection to an Oracle database. In fact, using SQL\*Plus to test the OCI connections is part of the process described on this page.

## Installation on Windows systems

On Windows-based machines, in addition to installing the Oracle Instant Client, you must also download and install the correct version of Microsoft Visual Studio Redistributable. You can find information about the required Microsoft Visual Studio Redistributable under each Instant Client Package on the *Instant Client Downloads for Microsoft Windows* page on the [Oracle Web site](#). For example:





On a Windows server, extract the Instant Client Package zipped files to the desired directory, and then add the path to the PATH system variable. For example:

```
C:\>set PATH=C:\instantclient_12_1;%PATH%
```

Make sure that the path is correct, and that no other PATH variable entry preceding this one ends in a slash (/) character. If one exists, then delete the slash character.

## Installation on Linux systems

To install the Oracle Instant Client on a Linux system, navigate to the folder where you downloaded the Instant Client package and execute the .rpm package. This example assumes that you are using a 12.1 version of Oracle; be sure to use the proper version and path for your system:

```
rpm -i oracle-instantclient12.1-basic-12.1.0.2.0-1.x86_64.rpm
```

If you are installing SQL\*Plus, then also execute the following command; again, be sure to use the proper version and path for your system:

```
rpm -i oracle-instantclient12.1-sqlplus-12.1.0.2.0-1.x86_64.rpm
```

Run the following two commands to export paths to the PATH variables. Once again, this example assumes that you are using a 12.1 version of Oracle; be sure to use the proper version and path for your system.

```
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/lib/oracle/12.1/client64/lib
export PATH=/usr/lib/oracle/12.1/client64/bin:$PATH
```

Alternatively, you can edit profile files to permanently set the OCI path.

## Using a TNS alias to connect to an Oracle system

The following example assumes that you are using a 12.1 version of Oracle; be sure to use the proper version and path for your system.

To use a TNS alias to connect from an Advisors application or from SQL\*Plus to an Oracle database:

1. On Linux systems, create a network/admin directory under /usr/lib/oracle/12.1/client64/, or on Windows systems, create a network\admin directory under the \instantclient\_12\_1 folder.
2. Add your tnsnames.ora file to the admin folder. The tnsnames.ora file must contain your Oracle database connection descriptors that point to the databases to which you intend to connect.

If you intend to use a TNS alias to connect to the database from an Advisors application, then Genesys strongly recommends that you place the tnsnames.ora file in the location mentioned above. Otherwise there is no guarantee that it will be possible to start the application from the Configuration Server Applications list.

The following is an example of a tnsnames.ora descriptor entry:



---

```
sales.example.com =(DESCRIPTION= (CONNECT_TIMEOUT=10)(RETRY_COUNT=3)
(ADDRESS_LIST= (LOAD_BALANCE=on)(FAILOVER=ON)
(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp)(HOST=sales1-scan)(PORT=1521))
(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp)(HOST=sales2-scan)(PORT=1521)))
(CONNECT_DATA=(SERVICE_NAME= salesservice.example.com)))
```

## Test Connectivity Between the Advisors Applications and the Oracle Databases

If you have installed SQL\*Plus, then you can now use it to test the client connectivity to the database. Genesys recommends that you verify that the client-database connectivity is successful before you update the Advisors applications to use the OCI instead of the JDBC driver.

### Example for Linux systems

The following example assumes that you are using a 12.1 version of Oracle; be sure to use the proper version and path for your system.

```
[root@vce-u0000 tmp]# export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/lib/oracle/12.1/client64/lib
[root@vce-u0000 tmp]# export PATH=/usr/lib/oracle/12.1/client64/bin:$PATH
[root@vce-u0000 tmp]# sqlplus adv_mg_852/password@'(DESCRIPTION =(ADDRESS_LIST = (ADDRESS =
(PROTOCOL = TCP)(HOST = sales-s.example.com.com)(PORT = 1522)))(CONNECT_DATA =(SERVICE_NAME =
salesservice.example.com)))'
```

### Example for Windows systems

```
C:\> sqlplus adv_mg_852/password@sales-s.example.com/salesservice.example.com
```

## Adjust the Advisors Database Connection Strings to use the OCI Driver

After you have installed the Advisors applications on servers, using normal procedures, make the following adjustments for each Advisors component:

- Advisors Platform installations:
  - In the [advisors]\apache-tomcat-<version>\conf folder, open the Catalina.properties file, and edit it. Update all of the JDBC URIs by replacing :thin: with :oci: in each JDBC string.
  - In the [advisors]\apache-tomcat-<version>\bin folder, edit the setenv.bat file (Windows systems) or setenv.sh file (Linux systems) to add the following string near the top of the file, before the JAVA path command (these are example values – make sure the path is correct for your system):
    - Windows systems: set PATH=C:\instantclient\_12\_1;%PATH%
    - Linux systems: export LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH=/usr/lib/oracle/12.1/client64/lib



- 
- XML Generator installations:
    - In the /conf folder, find the `xmlgen.properties` file, and edit it. Update all of the JDBC URIs by replacing `:thin:` with `:oci:`, as you did for Advisors Platform installations, above.
    - Under the /xmlgen folder, edit the `run.bat` file (Windows systems) or `run.sh` file (Linux systems) to add the following string near the top of the file, before the JAVA path command (these are example values – make sure the path is correct for your system):  
Windows systems: `set PATH=C:\instantclient_12_1;%PATH%`  
Linux systems: `export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/lib/oracle/12.1/client64/lib`
  - Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA) installations:
    - In the /conf folder, edit the `inf_genesys_adapter.properties` file to update the JDBC URIs as described above for both Advisors Platform and XML Generator installations (replace `:thin:` with `:oci:`).
    - If the AGA supports Contact Center Advisor (CCAdv), then also in the /conf folder, edit the `inf_genesys_importer.properties` file to update the JDBC URIs as described above for both Advisors Platform and XML Generator installations (replace `:thin:` with `:oci:`). This does not apply to an AGA that supports Frontline Advisor (FA).
    - In the /bin folder, edit the `run.bat` file (Windows systems) or `setenv.sh` file (Linux systems). Add the OCI path to this file, above the JAVA path command (these are example values – make sure the path is correct for your system):  
Windows systems: `set PATH=C:\instantclient_12_1;%PATH%;`  
Linux systems: `export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/lib/oracle/12.1/client64/lib`



---

# Deploy and Configure Apache

Use the information on this page to configure an Apache Web Server instance to direct http requests to the appropriate server within your Advisors deployment.

Genesys strongly recommends that you configure Apache to accept HTTP over SSL (HTTPS) connections. The streaming protocols used by Advisors are not required to be encrypted, but this is a more secure form of communication, and helps prevent possible interference from legacy virus scanners, firewalls, proxies, and so on, which don't properly support streaming protocols and might attempt to buffer unencrypted traffic. Using HTTPS connections helps to ensure both the security and reliability of the connection to the Advisors server. Requests between Apache and the Tomcat server running Advisors can also use HTTPS connections if needed.

## Configure Apache Modules

The recommended Advisors Apache configuration requires the following modules:

- ssl
- headers
- proxy
- proxy\_ajp
- proxy\_http
- proxy\_wstunnel

To enable Apache modules, edit the relevant file or use the relevant configuration tools for your environment. In many installations, this will involve editing your `httpd.conf` file. For more information on the files used to configure Apache, see the [Apache documentation describing the files used to configure Apache](#).

For example, to use the SSL module, uncomment that line:

*Uncomment this line:*

```
#LoadModule ssl_module modules/mod_ssl.so
```

*It now looks like this:*

```
LoadModule ssl_module modules/mod_ssl.so
```

## Configure HTTPS

To configure Apache to support HTTPS:



- Obtain or generate the SSL security certificate and private key.
- Configure Apache to use your certificate.

## Obtaining a Certificate

An SSL certificate signing request (CSR) can be generated and submitted to a certificate authority using OpenSSL or a similar tool. You can then issue a certificate if you are your own certificate authority, or a certificate can be issued by a third-party certificate authority.

The OpenSSL req command can be used to generate the request, or to generate a self-signed certificate in a single step. For more information, see the [OpenSSL documentation](#).

## Configure Apache to use your Certificate

In general, to configure Apache to use your certificate, add the following configuration to the Apache virtual host that is used for Advisors, and for the port on which HTTPS connections are accepted (the default HTTPS port is 443):

```
SSLEngine on
SSLCertificateFile      /path/to/your/certificate.pem
SSLCertificateKeyFile /path/to/your/certificate.key
```

For example, to configure the certificate globally in Apache, use the following configuration:

```
<VirtualHost *:443>
SSLEngine on
SSLCertificateFile      /path/to/your/certificate.pem
SSLCertificateKeyFile /path/to/your/certificate.key
</VirtualHost>
```

For more information about virtual hosts, see the [Apache virtual host documentation](#).

## Configure Routing for Advisors Components

Advisors components can be distributed across many servers. The Apache configuration enables proper routing of requests to these components. In some cases, there might be multiple installations of the same component. In these cases, requests can be load-balanced to different Apache servers, each one directing these requests to different servers.

Each Advisors component routing entry in the Apache configuration directs its request to `<hostname>` (see the [configuration example](#) below). In your configuration, change `<hostname>` to the host name of the server on which the component is installed. This will vary depending on your particular installation. Note that requests are matched to the first ProxyPass entry in the order in which they are listed within the Apache configuration, so Genesys recommends that you add the routing information in the same order that is outlined in the following configuration example.

### Template Configuration Example

In the following template configuration example, the text might wrap to multiple lines, but each ProxyPass statement must be on a single line in the Apache configuration.



Also take care to use the appropriate port for the url and its protocol being proxied. In this example requests to Tomcat over ajp use port 8009 while websocket communication uses http port 8080. The specific ports used may vary depending on your Tomcat configuration if modified from the default.

```
#Route to resource management console
ProxyPass /rmc/ ajp://<hostname>:8009/rmc/

#Route to CCAAdv accessibility web services
ProxyPass /ca-xml/ ajp://<hostname>:8009/ca-xml/

#Route to Workforce accessibiltiy web services
ProxyPass /wu/ ajp://<hostname>:8009/wu/

#Route to Advisors metric graphing
ProxyPass /ea-ws/ ajp://<hostname>:8009/ea-ws/
ProxyPass /dashboard/ ajp://<hostname>:8009/dashboard/

#Route to Advisors administration module
ProxyPass /admin ajp://<hostname>:8009/admin

#Route to FA server
ProxyPass /fa/com.informiam.fa.admin.gwt.AdminConsole/ ajp://<hostname>:8009/fa/
com.informiam.fa.admin.gwt.AdminConsole/ timeout=86400
ProxyPass /fa/ ajp://<hostname>:8009/fa/

#Route to Advisors web services
ProxyPass /adv/websocket/wsconnection/info ajp://<hostname>:8009/adv/websocket/wsconnection/
info
ProxyPassMatch /adv/websocket/wsconnection/(.*/)(.*/)websocket ws://<hostname>:8080/adv/
websocket/wsconnection/$1/$2/websocket
ProxyPass /adv/ ajp://<hostname>:8009/adv/

#Route to Advisors platform installation
ProxyPass /base-ws/ ajp://<hostname>:8009/base-ws/
ProxyPass /nav-service/ ajp://<hostname>:8009/nav-service/
ProxyPass /prefs-service/ ajp://<hostname>:8009/prefs-service/
ProxyPass / ajp://<hostname>:8009/
```

## Routing With HTTPS Connections From Apache

In addition to configuring HTTPS connections for incoming requests to Apache, as described in the [Configure HTTPS](#) section, you can also configure an HTTPS connection between Apache and Tomcat. To do this, you must update the following information in the ProxyPass entries that route requests:

- Use the HTTPS and WSS protocols, which replace AJP and WS.
- Specify the port. By default, the Tomcat HTTPS connector is configured to use port 8443.

The Tomcat HTTPS connector can be used on port 8443 without any additional configuration. If you will not be using the default configuration, see the documentation that describes [how to customize the configuration of the Tomcat HTTPS connector](#).

## [+] Example HTTPS Routing Configuration



---

```
#Route to resource management console
ProxyPass /rmc/ https://<hostname>:8443/rmc/

#Route to CCAAdv accessibility web services
ProxyPass /ca-xml/ https://<hostname>:8443/ca-xml/

#Route to Workforce accessibiltiy web services
ProxyPass /wu/ https://<hostname>:8443/wu/

#Route to Advisors metric graphing
ProxyPass /ea-ws/ https://<hostname>:8443/ea-ws/
ProxyPass /dashboard/ https://<hostname>:8443/dashboard/

#Route to Advisors administration module
ProxyPass /admin https://<hostname>:8443/admin

#Route to FA server
ProxyPass /fa/com.informiam.fa.admin.gwt.AdminConsole/ https://<hostname>:8443/fa/com.informiam.fa.admin.gwt.AdminConsole/ timeout=86400
ProxyPass /fa/ https://<hostname>:8443/fa/

#Route to Advisors web services
ProxyPass /adv/websocket/wsconnection/info https://<hostname>:8443/adv/websocket/wsconnection/info
ProxyPassMatch /adv/websocket/wsconnection/(.*/)(.*)/websocket wss://<hostname>:8443/adv/websocket/wsconnection/$1/$2/websocket
ProxyPass /adv/ https://<hostname>:8443/adv/

#Route to Advisors platform installation
ProxyPass /base-ws/ https://<hostname>:8443/base-ws/
ProxyPass /nav-service/ https://<hostname>:8443/nav-service/
ProxyPass /prefs-service/ https://<hostname>:8443/prefs-service/
ProxyPass / https://<hostname>:8443/
```

---



# Customizing the Tomcat HTTPS Connector

The Tomcat installation includes, by default, a self-signed certificate in the Java keystore file configured for the HTTPS connector. As a result, and without any additional configuration, you can use the HTTPS connector to accept SSL-encrypted HTTP requests from users directly and/or through Apache, as described in the documentation detailing [how to configure Apache to use HTTPS when routing requests](#) to the Advisors Tomcat server.

Although it should not be necessary to change this configuration, you might want to change it if you are planning to either use a different port to accept HTTPS connections, or to use a different certificate, such as one signed by a third-party certificate authority or an internal certificate authority.

## Procedure: Steps to Replace the Default Keystore for Tomcat HTTPS Connector

### Steps

1. Prepare a certificate keystore using the instructions from the [Apache Tomcat 8.0 documentation](#).
2. Edit the HTTPS connector configuration. The connector configuration is found in the installation `apache-tomcat-<version>/conf/` directory `server.xml` file:

```
<Connector port="${HTTPSPort}" protocol="org.apache.coyote.http11.Http11NioProtocol"
           connectionTimeout="${WebConnectorConnTimeout}"
           maxThreads="${MaxThreadPoolSize}"
           minSpareThreads="${MinThreadPoolSize}" SSLEnabled="true" scheme="https"
           secure="true"
           clientAuth="false" sslProtocol="TLS"
           keystoreFile="${informiam.conf.dir}/tomcat-cert" keystorePass="secret"/>
```
3. Set the `keystoreFile` attribute to the path of your keystore file (generated in Step 1).
4. Set the `keystorePass` attribute to the password used in your keystore file.
5. After the changes are complete, restart the Advisors Platform server.
6. You can test the HTTPS connection by accessing `https://<Tomcat Host>:<HTTPS Port>`. The `${HTTPSPort}` property value used in the connector configuration is defined in the installation `apache-tomcat-<version>/conf/` directory `catalina.properties` file and defaults to 8443.



---

# Change a JDBC Data Source Configuration

Use the procedures on this page if you must change database connection information for Performance Management Advisors.

To change the password for connections described on this page, see [Change Encrypted Passwords](#).

## Procedure: Changing Database Connection Parameters for Advisors Platform

### Steps

1. Edit the following properties in the Advisors\apache-tomcat-<version>\conf\catalina.properties file:  
database.username=  
database.password=  
database.url=  
database.driver=
2. Restart the Advisors server.

## Procedure: Changing Database Connection Parameters for the Metric Graphing Data Source

### Steps

1. Edit the following properties in the Advisors\apache-tomcat-<version>\conf\catalina.properties file:  
dw.database.username=  
dw.database.password=  
dw.database.url=



- ```
dw.database.driver=
```
2. Restart the Advisors server.

## Changing Database Connection Parameters for CCAdv XML Generator

You can change the database connection information for XML Generator after installation. The XML Generator database connection information is located in the following file:

- `conf/XMLGen.properties`

See also [Modifying the XML Generator Configuration](#) for information about ensuring XML Generator works properly with the metrics database.

## Changing Database Connection Parameters for Advisors Genesys Adapter

You can change the database connection information for Advisors Genesys Adapter after installation. The Advisors Genesys Adapter database connection information is located in the following files:

- `conf\inf_genesys_adapter.properties`
- `conf\inf_genesys_importer.properties`



---

# Adjust Logging Settings

To limit the disk space consumed by log information, some Advisor components manage both the size and the number of their log files. These components will roll each of their current log files to backup copies both at the beginning of each day, and after the size of the log file reaches a threshold. You can do this for:

- Platform log of authorizations, which records users logging in to and out of Advisors
- Administration module log, which records many actions carried out in the module
- Contact Center Advisor, Workforce Advisor, and Frontline Advisor Web services running in Tomcat
- Contact Center Advisor (CCAdv) XML Generator
- Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA)

The default setting for rollover of the log files is daily or when the log file size exceeds 10 MB.

See also [Configuring the Audit Logs](#) for more information.

## Configuring Rollover of the Log File

Starting in release 8.5.001, you can configure the `log4j.xml` and the `log4j.properties` files to use a rolling filename in this format: `<Component><Date><Time>.log`. `<Date>` and `<Time>` are configurable parameters. The appropriate component name is automatically added to the log filename.

The following are the rolling attributes for a log file:

- `datePattern`—Specifies the schedule on which the log file rolls over (closes the log file, renames it to a rolling file, and starts a new file). You can set the schedule so the log file rolls over by year, month, day, half day, hour, and minute. See [DatePattern Conventions](#) for more information.
- `maxFileSize`—Sets the size threshold past which the log file rolls over. Specify an integer value, along with either KB, MB, or GB (for example, 10MB for ten megabytes). `MaxFileSize` does not set a hard limit on the maximum size for the associated log file, but rather represents a threshold past which the log file is subject to rolling. The actual size of a log file will depend upon system load and the volume of log entries.
- `suffixPattern`—Specifies the suffix for the log's filename when the log file rolls over. The parameter supports Java's `SimpleDateFormat` conventions, such as `'.'yyyy-MM-dd_HH-mm-ss'.log'`. The literal text must be escaped within a pair of single quotes.
- `MaxRollFileCount`—Sets the number of backup log files to keep.
- `ScavengeInterval`—An interval in milliseconds. On this schedule, `log4j` checks to see if it should delete backed-up log files because there are more than `MaxRollFileCount` files. If you set `ScavengeInterval` to -1, `MaxRollFileCount` will be ignored, and all backup copies will be retained. You will need to manually clear the backup copies from the log directory on a periodic basis.

See [Advisors Platform Server](#), [Contact Center Advisor XML Generator](#), and [Advisors Genesys Adapter](#)

---



for procedures to configure log filenames and additional log file attributes.

## DatePattern Conventions

You can specify the schedule on which the log file rolls over to a new file using the `DatePattern` parameter. The parameter uses Java's `SimpleDateFormat` conventions. The Table below shows the possible entries to specify for the `DatePattern` parameter.

| DatePattern      | Rollover Schedule                                                                        |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| yyyy-MM          | Rollover at the beginning of each month.                                                 |
| yyyy-ww          | Rollover on the first day of each week. The first day of the week depends on the locale. |
| yyyy-MM-dd       | Rollover at midnight each day.                                                           |
| yyyy-MM-dd-a     | Rollover at midnight and midday of each day.                                             |
| yyyy-MM-dd-HH    | Rollover at the top of every hour.                                                       |
| yyyy-MM-dd-HH-mm | Rollover at the beginning of every minute.                                               |

For example, if you set the `File` option to `/xxx/yyy.log`, you set the `DatePattern` to `yyyy-MM-dd`, and you set the `SuffixPattern` to `'.'yyyy-MM-dd`, the logging file `/xxx/yyy.log` is copied to `/xxx/yyy.log.2014-02-16` on 2014-02-16 at midnight and logging for 2014-02-17 continues in the `/xxx/yyy.log` file until it rolls over the next day, and so on.

## Advisors Platform Server

You can adjust the size threshold, as well as the number of backup copies retained, by editing the properties in the logging properties file. Use the following procedure.

1. Navigate to your base Advisors directory, and then to the `conf` subdirectory.
2. Edit the `log4j.properties` file.
3. Look for the rolling properties and, for each log file, adjust them appropriately.

## Contact Center Advisor XML Generator

CCAdv XML Generator uses a logging properties file that is different from the one used by the modules running in the Tomcat application server. Use the following procedure to make changes to the logging properties file for CCAdv XML Generator.

1. Navigate to your base Advisors directory, and then to the `xmlgen` subdirectory.
2. Edit the `log4j.xml` file.
3. Look for the rolling properties and, for each log file, adjust them appropriately.



## Advisors Genesys Adapter

Use the following procedure to make changes to the logging properties file for AGA.

1. Navigate to your base AGA directory, and then to the conf subdirectory.
2. Edit the log4j.properties file.
3. Look for the rolling properties and, for each log file, adjust them appropriately.

## Specifying the Log File Storage Locations

**NEW** By default, the Platform server logs are written to the following log folder:  
<Advisors>\apache-tomcat-<version>\logs

To specify a different directory for the Platform server logs, see [Specifying a Location for the Platform Server Log Files](#).

The AGA log file storage location is specified in a .properties file that is located within the AGA installation directory. Similarly, the CCAdv XML Generator log file storage location is specified in an .xml file, which is located within the XML Generator installation directory. To specify a different location for either the AGA or the CCAdv XML Generator log file, see [Specifying a Location for the AGA and CCAdv XML Generator Log Files](#).

## Specifying a Storage Location for the Platform Server Log Files

### Procedure:

#### Steps

1. To change the location of the advisors.log file, edit the location in the <Advisors>/conf/log4j.properties file:  
`log4j.appender.FILE.file=${catalina.base}/logs/advisors.log`
2. To change the location of the auth.log file, edit the location in the <Advisors>/conf/log4j.properties file:  
`log4j.appender.AUDIT.file=${catalina.base}/logs/auth.log`
3. To change the location of the AdministrationAudit.log file, edit the location in the <Advisors>/conf/log4j.properties file:  
`log4j.appender.ADMINISTRATIONAUDIT.file=${catalina.base}/logs/AdministrationAudit.log`



4. To change the location of the Tomcat Access log, locate the `directory` entry property in the `<Advisors>\apache-tomcat-<version>\conf\server.xml` file, and edit the value to specify a new location.

If you do not specify an absolute path, then the location is relative to the Tomcat base folder (`apache-tomcat-<version>`). For example (this is the default setting):

```
<Valve className="org.apache.catalina.valves.AccessLogValve"
  directory="logs" prefix="localhost_access_log" suffix=".txt"
  pattern="%h %l %u %t \"%r\" %s %b" />
```

## Specifying a Storage Location for the AGA and CCAdv XML Generator Log Files

The default location in which to store the AGA and XML Generator log files is specified in files that reside within the installation directory of each component.

To specify a non-default location for the AGA log file, edit the following file:

`<Adapter>/conf/log4j.properties`

To specify a non-default location for the CCAdv XML Generator log file, edit the following file:

`<XMLGen>/log4j.xml`



# Advisors Platform

This section contains information and procedures to help you change configuration for Advisors Platform after this module is deployed.



# Configure Administrative Actions Logs

All administration actions carried out in the Advisors environment are logged. The following sections give information about how the logging should be configured. See also [Adjust the Log File Roll and Retention Settings](#).

<tabber>

Modules for which Actions are Logged=

The following modules have administrative logging available:

- Advisors Administration for Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor
- Advisors Genesys Adapter

You can find logs related to metrics in the Metric Manager audit logs (generated when a user creates a new metric, attempts but fails to create a new metric, or deletes a metric).

| - | Modules for which Actions are Not Logged=

- Configuration Server, for actions on objects that are used by Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor
- Frontline Advisor Administration
- Resource Management Administration

| - | Actions Not Logged by This Functionality=

Changes to contact groups that are made when contact groups are imported from a WFM system are not captured by this logging functionality.

| - | Information Logged=

The following information about each action is logged:

- A timestamp of when the action's data was saved in the format specified by the log configuration properties. For additional information, see the *Configuring the Audit Logs* tab on this page.
- The username of the user who performed the action.
- The properties or relationships of the object that are being changed by the action, showing their values both before and after the action.
- Whether the action succeeded or not.

| - | Configuring the Audit Logs=

**NEW** The audit logs are in a file called `AdministrationAudit.log`, which is written to the following directory by default:  
`Advisors\apache-tomcat-<version>\logs`



You can configure the audit log using the log4j properties in the `log4j.properties` file, which is located in the following directory:  
`Advisors\conf`

### Sample log4j Appender

The following information is the definition of the appender that configures the audit logs.

```
log4j.appender.ADMINISTRATIONAUDIT.append=true
log4j.appender.ADMINISTRATIONAUDIT.file=${org.apache.geronimo.server.dir}/var/log/
AdministrationAudit.log
log4j.appender.ADMINISTRATIONAUDIT.bufferedIO=false
log4j.appender.ADMINISTRATIONAUDIT.maxBackupIndex=3
log4j.appender.ADMINISTRATIONAUDIT.maxFileSize=10MB
log4j.appender.ADMINISTRATIONAUDIT=org.apache.log4j.RollingFileAppender
log4j.appender.ADMINISTRATIONAUDIT.threshold=INFO
log4j.appender.ADMINISTRATIONAUDIT.layout=org.apache.log4j.PatternLayout
log4j.appender.ADMINISTRATIONAUDIT.layout.ConversionPattern=%d %m%n
```

The appender ensures the log file names indicate the day on which they were written. If more than one file is written per day, then the name also indicates the order in which the file was produced on that day. For example:

```
AdministrationAudit.log
AdministrationAudit.log.2011-12-01.1
AdministrationAudit.log.2011-12-01.2
AdministrationAudit.log.2011-11-31.1
AdministrationAudit.log.2011-11-31.2
```

### Definitions

- `MaxFileSize` of 10 MB—Indicates that the largest size of any individual log file is 10 MB.
- `MaxBackupIndex` of 3—Indicates that on any day, a maximum of three files will be written. If more than that are actually produced, the oldest ones will be deleted.



# Advisors Genesys Adapter

This section contains information and procedures to help you change configuration for Advisors Genesys Adapter after this module is deployed.



# Manage Advisors Stat Server Instances

**NEW** Starting in release 8.5.2, you configure Stat Servers as connections to the Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA) Application object in the Genesys Configuration Server. You can add a Stat Server primary/backup pair (or more than one) to each adapter's configuration. The Stat Server-to-AGA relationships, as well as the object-to-Stat Server mapping, continues to be stored in the Advisors Platform database.

Be sure to review the [permissions required by the Advisors User](#). To perform some of the tasks described on this page, your Advisors User account requires a few permissions that were not previously specified for this account.

## Configuring the Connection to Stat Server in the AGA Application Object

Using a Genesys configuration interface, such as Genesys Administrator, configure a Stat Server connection on the AGA Application object. See the [Creating Application Objects](#) procedure in the *Genesys Administrator Extension Help* for information about creating and configuring Application objects, which includes steps to configure connections to other Application objects. The following information is specific to configuring a Stat Server connection to the AGA Application:

- The only supported type of connection is to the "default" port. The AGA Application does not support a secure connection.
- The connection protocol type can be either Simple or ADDP. When you specify an ADDP connection mode, AGA uses the ADDP properties that you configure for the connection.

The following figure shows a sample Stat Server connection configured on an AGA Application object, using Genesys Administrator.



**Connection Info**

**General** | Advanced | Network Security

\* Server: StatServer

\* ID: default (10580)

Connection Protocol: simple

Local Timeout: 0

Remote Timeout: 0

Trace Mode: [Unknown Trace Mode]

Connection Type: Unsecured

OK Cancel

Stat Server Connection Configured on an AGA Application Object

## Configuring the Backup Stat Server

Advisors Genesys Adapter supports Stat Server primary/backup pairs. Deploy a redundant (backup) Stat Server by configuring a redundancy link on the primary Stat Server Application object, much like you deploy **redundant Configuration Servers**. An Advisors adapter cannot identify a backup Stat Server if you fail to configure that backup Stat Server as a redundancy link on the primary Stat Server Application object. (Advisors applications do not use the settings for parameters such as redundancy type, timeout, and the number of attempts.)

After the Stat Servers are configured as primary/backup pairs, there are two ways in which you can configure a backup Stat Server connection to an adapter Application object. Use one of the following methods:

1. Add the primary and backup Stat Servers as connections to the adapter Application object in the Configuration Server.

Using this method has the following implications:

- An adapter will ignore a backup Stat Server if you fail to add it as a connection to the adapter Application object.
- You have the option to purposefully remove a backup Stat Server from the Advisors configuration, in cases where you want to use only the primary Stat Server of a pair.

2. If you always use Advisors Stat Servers as redundant pairs in your environment, then you can set the following property in the `inf_genesys_adapter.properties` file to false:  
`advisors.genesys_adapter.statserver.backup.configure.as.connections`

Setting this option to false removes the need to manually configure the backup Stat Servers as connections to the adapter Applications.

Using this method means that any Stat Server that is configured as a backup on a primary Stat Server Application object will automatically be connected to the adapter to which the primary Stat Server is connected.



## How the Advisors Adapter Identifies a Backup Stat Server

The Advisors adapter determines which Stat Server connections are to primary Stat Servers and which are to backup Stat Servers based on the configuration of the Stat Server Application. If a Stat Server is configured as a redundancy link to another configured Stat Server connection, then the adapter identifies that Stat Server connection as the connection to a backup Stat Server. If a backup Stat Server is not configured correctly as a redundancy link on the primary Stat Server Application, then the adapter to which the Stat Server pair is connected cannot identify the backup.

## How Stat Server Connections Work on a Backup Adapter

When switching over from a primary adapter to the backup, the backup adapter uses the same object distribution that the primary adapter was using. This means that the distribution of objects remains the same even though a failover to the backup adapter occurred.

For this to work, the Stat Server connections configured on the backup adapter need to be the same as those configured on the primary adapter. Genesys Administrator automatically ensures that the connections are added or removed on the backup adapter Application when you modify the connections on the primary adapter Application, provided that a backup adapter is configured on the primary adapter Application.

## Configuring the Stat Server Type for Advisors

You can configure an Advisors Stat Server as one or more of the following types:

1. Core (default)
2. Multimedia
3. Thirdpartymedia

The Stat Server type(s) you specify will depend on the purpose of the Stat Server, and what type of statistics it serves.

You configure the Stat Server type on the **Annex** section of the Stat Server Application object, under a new section called **Advisors-StatServerTypes**. The following figure shows the configuration in Genesys Administrator.

| Advisors-StatServerTypes (3 Items)       |                          |                 |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| Advisors-StatServerTypes/CORE            | Advisors-StatServerTypes | CORE            |
| Advisors-StatServerTypes/MULTIMEDIA      | Advisors-StatServerTypes | MULTIMEDIA      |
| Advisors-StatServerTypes/THIRDPARTYMEDIA | Advisors-StatServerTypes | THIRDPARTYMEDIA |

Advisors-StatServerTypes Section in the Stat Server Application Annex

It is the presence or absence of the "type" setting that matters in this configuration; Advisors ignores the "yes" or "no" values. For example, if you add an entry in the Annex for **Advisors-StatServerTypes**, and you enter the type as MULTIMEDIA, and set the value to no, then the Stat Server type is configured as MULTIMEDIA, regardless of the no value.



An Advisors Stat Server defaults to a type of CORE if you do not explicitly enter a type. In other words, it is necessary to configure the Stat Server types only when non-CORE Stat Server types are required in your configuration.

It is unnecessary to configure the Advisors Stat Server types on the backup Stat Servers because this configuration is only fetched from the primary Stat Servers.

## Migrating Stat Server-Adapter Relationships from the Platform Database to Configuration Server

If you have Genesys Performance Management Advisors release 8.5.1 deployed in your enterprise, then you can use the migration wizard to export the existing Stat Server configuration from the Advisors Platform database to the Configuration Server in order to add the connections to the AGA Application object. The migration wizard "Export Stat Server Config to Config Server" option performs the migration operation for all configured adapters in a single pass. Alternatively, you can manually configure the Stat Server connections and the Stat Server types using a Genesys configuration interface, such as Genesys Administrator. You might do this for security reasons, for example.

For more information about using the migration wizard to export your existing Stat Server configuration to the Configuration Server, see the *[Genesys Performance Management Advisors Migration Guide](#)*.



# Configure a TLS Connection Between AGA and Stat Server

**NEW** To establish a secure Transport Layer Security (TLS) connection between an Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA) and Stat Server, the following configuration is required:

1. You must configure a secure connection port on Stat Server.
2. You must configure a secure connection between the AGA and Stat Server.
3. You must add the client-side TLS properties on the AGA Application object or AGA connection to the Stat Server.

This page provides additional information about each step, as well as examples of the configuration.

## Using TLS with Primary and Backup Stat Servers

If you have more than one Stat Server configured, and you want to enable TLS encryption and security on all of the connections, you have two options:

- If all of the Stat Servers connected to an adapter share the same TLS certificates, then you can configure the client-side TLS properties on the AGA Application object.
- If the Stat Servers connected to an adapter do not share TLS certificates (for example, the primary and backup Stat Servers are on different hosts), then you configure the TLS properties on each AGA-Stat Server connection.

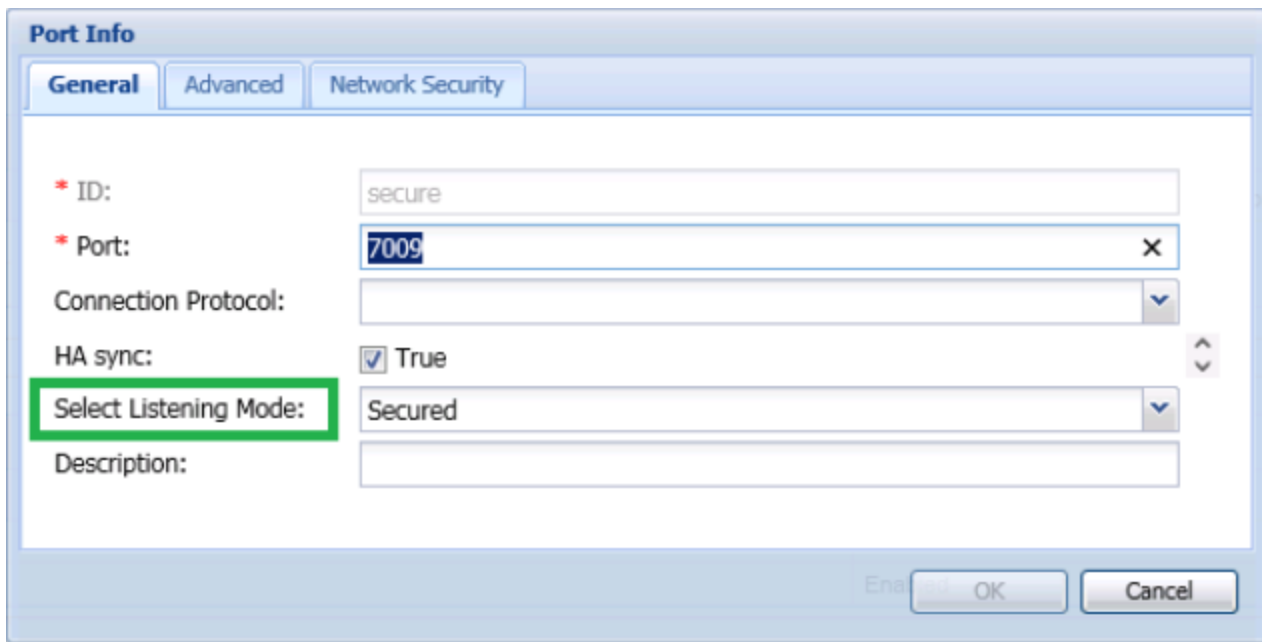
## Configuring a Secure Connection Port on Stat Server

To configure a secure connection port on each Stat Server Application object, see the instructions in the [Genesys Security Deployment Guide](#). You can configure security certificates on the Host application (recommended), on the Application object, or on the connection port.

For additional information, see the [Configuring TLS Parameters](#) and the [Using and Configuring Security Providers](#) sections of the *Platform SDK* guide.

The following figure shows the configuration of a secure port on the Stat Server Application object. In this example, the port ID is called "secure", but it is not necessary to call it that; name it according to the conventions you use in your enterprise.





The screenshot shows a 'Port Info' dialog box with three tabs: 'General', 'Advanced', and 'Network Security'. The 'General' tab is selected. It contains the following fields:

- \* ID:** A text box containing 'secure'.
- \* Port:** A text box containing '7009' with a small 'x' icon to its right.
- Connection Protocol:** A dropdown menu.
- HA sync:** A checkbox labeled 'True' which is checked.
- Select Listening Mode:** A dropdown menu showing 'Secured'. This label and its dropdown are highlighted with a green rectangle.
- Description:** A text box.

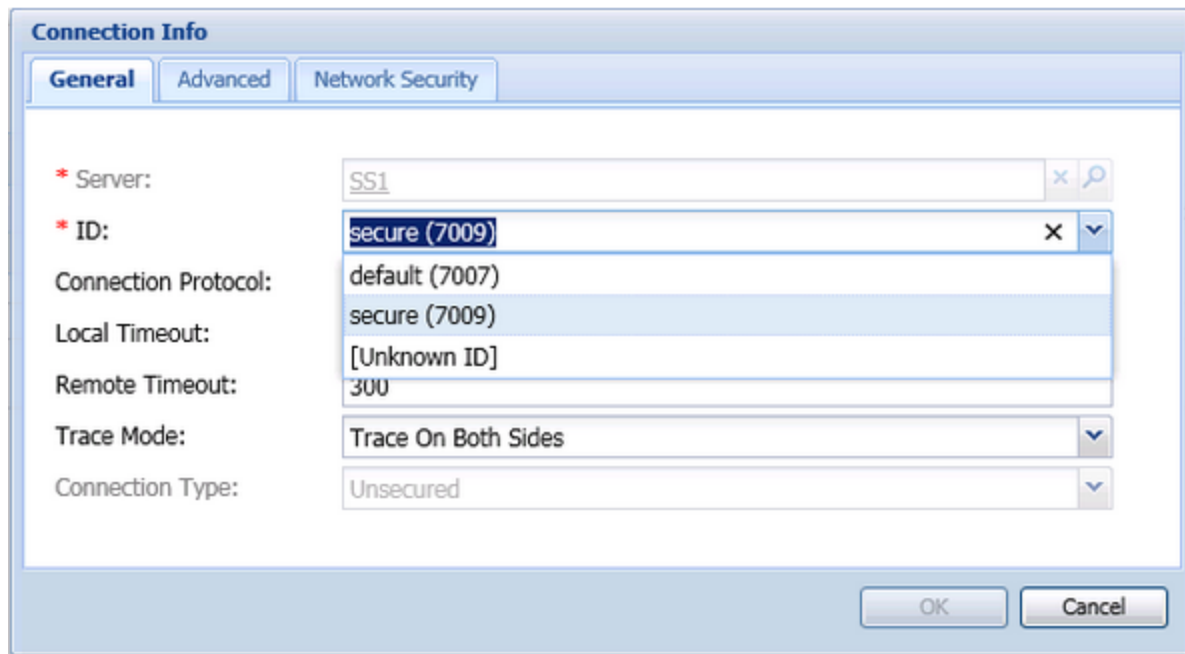
At the bottom right, there is a disabled 'Enable' button and two active buttons: 'OK' and 'Cancel'.

## Configuring Client-side TLS Properties

To configure a secure connection between AGA and each Stat Server, you must configure the connection on a secure Stat Server port. For detailed information, see the [Connection Object](#) section of the *Platform SDK* guide.

In the following figure, an existing secure port is used for the connection to AGA. Repeat this configuration for each of the AGA-Stat Server connections.





In general terms, enabling TLS on a secure AGA-Stat Server connection requires the following two actions:

- Configure the certificates.
- Set the `tls=1` configuration option (to enable TLS encryption and security).

In cases where all of the Stat Servers share the same TLS certificates, you can configure the TLS properties on the AGA Application object. In this scenario, the TLS settings are applied to all AGA-Stat Server connections. However, in cases where the Stat Servers do not share TLS certificates, then you cannot apply a "global" TLS configuration. Instead, you must configure the TLS properties on each AGA connection to a Stat Server. For example, when the primary Stat Servers are on one host, and the backup Stat Servers are on another host, then you enable TLS on the connection, and not on the AGA Application object.

If TLS is enabled on the AGA-Stat Server connection, then the Stat Server Application object must have a secure port configured for the connection. If you fail to configure the secure connection port on Stat Server, then an exception message will be written to the log file.

If you will not be using TLS on an AGA-Stat Server connection, then you can either omit the `tls=1` configuration option, or set the option to zero (`tls=0`). You might do the latter if you want to later enable TLS encryption and security on the connection. If you are not using TLS to secure the AGA-Stat Server connection, then you must not use a secure port on Stat Server to connect to AGA. If you do not enable TLS on the AGA-Stat Server connection, but you use a secure Stat Server port to connect to AGA, then an exception message will be written to the log file.

### Example: Configuring client-side TLS properties

In this example, the Stat Servers are deployed in such a way that they can share TLS certificates. Therefore, the TLS configuration can be completed on the AGA Application object, and will uniformly apply to all of that adapter's Stat Server connections. In cases where Stat Servers do not and cannot



share TLS properties, then you must configure the TLS properties on the Connection object, rather than the AGA Application object.

The following figure shows the TLS certificate configuration in the **Network Security** section of an AGA Application object:

**\* Server Info**

**\* Network Security**

Certificate Source: Application

\* Certificate: C:\cert\...server1-cert.pem

Description:

Certificate Key: C:\cert\...server1-key.pem

Trusted CA: C:\cert\...ca.pem

The following figure shows the TLS option configuration (to enable TLS for connections) in the **security** section of an AGA Application object's **Options** tab:

|                                                                              |  |          |             |              |        |      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|----------|-------------|--------------|--------|------|
| Configuration                                                                |  | Options  | Permissions | Dependencies | Alarms | Logs |
| <div><div>New</div><div>Delete</div><div>Export</div><div>Import</div></div> |  |          |             |              |        |      |
| Name                                                                         |  | Section  | Option      | Value        |        |      |
| Filter                                                                       |  | Filter   | Filter      | Filter       |        |      |
| security (1 Item)                                                            |  |          |             |              |        |      |
| security/tls                                                                 |  | security | tls         | 1            |        |      |

## Mutual TLS Authentication

The Stat Server Application object can enforce mutual TLS authentication on a connection. To configure mutual TLS for the AGA-Stat Server connection, set the `tls-mutual=1` configuration option in the **security** section of the Stat Server Application object's **Options** tab.

## Making Changes to the Application Objects

From time to time, you might make changes to your Application object configuration. If you change the Stat Server configuration in the (Stat Server) Application object, then those changes take effect when the Stat Server is restarted. If you change the adapter's configuration in the (AGA) Application object, then those changes take effect when the adapter is restarted.



# AGA Configuration Parameters

This page contains information about the Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA) configuration properties file (`inf_genesys_adapter.properties`). Use this information to help you to edit the AGA configuration.

| Parameter                                                                                                                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>informiam.genesys_connector.transformer.CCAdv.CCAdvChannel</code><br>= 10                                                                                         | Frequency of the transformer upload task for CCAdv.<br>If the transformer upload task has not finished before the next scheduled one, the subsequently scheduled task waits in a queue.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>informiam.genesys_connector.ObjectChangeStatRequest.Frequency</code><br>= 60                                                                                      | Frequency for requesting incremental statistics for the selected object changes (in seconds).<br><br>This property determines the interval at which the Genesys Adapter will handle changes to agent groups such as the addition or removal of agents.<br><br>Reducing this value enables the adapter to handle those changes immediately and send updates for the Advisors dashboard.<br><br>Increasing this value enables the adapter to batch the changes and request any additional statistics for the agents added.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.maxOpenRequestsPerGroup</code><br>= 1000<br><br><code>informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.interGroupDelay</code><br>= 1 | Statistics open request grouping.<br><br>This property controls the maximum number of statistic open requests that will be sent to the Stat Server consecutively with no pause, as well as the pause delay (in seconds) when that many number of statistics are requested.<br><br>Reducing this value ensures that the Stat Servers are not overloaded with large number of requests.<br><br>Increasing this value enables quicker processing of the statistics and therefore shorter startup/restart/overnight refresh times.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.allowRedistribution</code><br>= false                                                                                      | Allow redistribution to other Stat Servers.<br><br>This property allows redistribution of statistics between multiple Stat Servers when more than one Stat Server pair is configured. The purpose of this flag is to allow another available Stat Server pair to support the statistics, when the Genesys Adapter can not re-establish a connection to a given Stat Server pair.<br><br>If connection to both the primary Stat Server and the backup Stat Server are not available during the runtime, the Genesys Adapter receives a connection close event after the ADDP timeout. The Genesys Adapter then tries to re-establish a connection to the same pair for a number of times as configured by the following parameters:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><code>informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.reconnect.attempts</code></li><li><code>informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.reconnect.attempt-interval</code></li></ul> |



| Parameter                                                                                                                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                     | <p>If the adapter cannot re-establish the connection before the expiry of the reconnect period, redistribution of the statistics is attempted.</p> <p>This functionality is disabled by default. If the statistics requested with one Stat Server pair are distributed to another Stat Server pair it could result in overloading of the other Stat Server pair.</p> <p>This property can be set to <code>true</code> for small customers where the total number of statistics requested is small or where the amount of statistics redistributed is small and will not result in overloading of the Stat Servers.</p> |
| <pre>informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.onStartWaitTimeForAllSSConnections ToOpen = 20</pre>                                                    | <p>Time in seconds to wait on Stat Server connection to open before sending statistics requests to all opened Stat Server connections.</p> <p>This property controls how long the adapter waits for the connection to Stat Server to be established before distributing the request more widely. On start, if it is taking longer to establish connections to the configured Stat Servers, consider increasing this time limit. Waiting a longer time before establishing connection to all Stat Servers ensures more equal distribution of the statistics to the configured Stat Servers.</p>                         |
| <pre>genesys_connector.default_time_profile.oneday = Default,Growing</pre>                                                                          | <p>Specify the time profile to use in the statistics requests.</p> <p>Starting with Advisors release 8.5.101, you can specify the time at which each Advisors Stat Server is to reset the daily statistics by configuring the One day/Growing TimeProfiles options in the Stat Servers.</p> <p>Ensure you configure the AGA parameter to match the time profile specified on the Stat Server from which AGA is requesting statistics.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Configure the Daily Reset Time for Statistics on a Stat Server</a> for more information.</p>                                                              |
| <pre>informiam.genesys_connector.configServer.reconnect_attempts = 5 informiam.genesys_connector.configServer.reconnect_attempt interval = 30</pre> | <p>Indicates the number of reconnect attempts to the Configuration Server before trying to connect to the backup Configuration Server in the case of the connection dropping and the interval between the reconnect attempts (in seconds).</p> <p>This is in addition to - and after - the ADDP time out, if configured.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <pre>informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.reconnect_attempts = 3 informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.reconnect_attempt interval = 10</pre>     | <p>Indicates the number of reconnect attempts to the Stat Server before trying to connect to the backup server in the case of the connection dropping and the interval between the reconnect attempts (in seconds).</p> <p>This is in addition to - and after - the ADDP timeout, if configured</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <pre>informiam.genesys_connector.api.port =</pre>                                                                                                   | <p>The port of communication between CCAAdv and the Genesys Adapter and between FA and the Genesys Adapter.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |



| Parameter                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>informiam.genesys_connector.waitForStatOpenEventsTimeout</code><br>= 600                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Process timeout values, in seconds.<br><br>This property controls how long the Genesys Adapter waits for a response from the Stat Servers after requesting to open the statistic requests. If there is a slow response from the Stat Server, or if there are too many objects configured, consider increasing this timeout.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>informiam.genesys_connector.numOfMaxStatRerequestTimes</code><br>= 3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Number of times the connector will attempt to re-request statistics.<br><br>When there is an error in the process of requesting the statistics, this property determines the number of times the adapter should try and re-request all the statistics, to clear away any runtime issues. If the issue is with the configuration of statistics, it is not likely to be cleared by re-requesting of the statistics.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>informiam.genesys_connector.configServer.addp.turnon</code><br>= true<br><br><code>informiam.genesys_connector.configServer.addp.tracemode</code><br>=<br><code>informiam.genesys_connector.configServer.addp.servvertimeout</code><br>= 300<br><code>informiam.genesys_connector.configServer.addp.clienttimeout</code><br>= 120<br><code>informiam.genesys_connector.configServer.protocol.request.timeout</code><br>= 180 | ADDP Settings to be used with the Configuration Server connection.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.addp.turnon</code><br>= true<br><br><code>informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.addp.tracemode</code><br>=<br><code>informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.addp.servvertimeout</code><br>= 300<br><code>informiam.genesys_connector.statServer.addp.clienttimeout</code><br>= 120                                                                                                    | ADDP Settings to be used with the Stat Server connections.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>informiam.genesys_connector.transformerjob.pausechecklimit</code><br>= 25000<br><br><code>informiam.genesys_connector.statsissue.pausechecklimit</code><br>= 5000                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Pause parameters that check against the queue of the incoming Stat Server messages.<br><br>When statistics are requested, in order to avoid the JVM being overwhelmed by processing of the incoming messages from the Stat Server, the above check limits are prescribed. This enables the adapter to pause the writing of updates to the metrics database and any further processing of requests of more statistics. Once the number of statistics waiting to be processed goes below the configured limits, the paused jobs are resumed.<br><br>In environments where sufficient runtime memory is not available, consider setting these limits to a smaller value.<br><br>Setting a very small value could lead to delay in sending the updates to the Advisors dashboard. |
| <code>informiam.genesys_connector.psdk.server.fileEncoding</code><br>= windows-1252                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | File encoding to be used with the Configuration Server and the Stat Server connections.<br><br>This file encoding property is used in encoding the text that is read from the Configuration Server and sent to the Stat Server in requesting the statistics. Adjustments to this may be needed depending upon the supported language's character encoding.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |



| Parameter                                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>genesys_connector.configServer.tls.enabled</code>   | <p>Enable or disable a TLS connection to the Configuration Server (applicable to both the primary and backup servers if using Configuration Server warm standby configuration).</p> <p>You can set the flag to <code>true</code> post-installation if you require a TLS connection to the Configuration Server, but did not enable the TLS connection when deploying Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA). The <code>genesys_connector.configServer.tls.enabled</code> property is the only property that AGA recognizes to enable or disable a TLS connection to Configuration Server. TLS is configured and enabled completely inside Advisors, unlike other applications whose TLS configuration can be stored in a Configuration Server Application object. A setting to disable or enable TLS (<code>tls=0</code> or <code>tls=1</code>) in the TLS properties file that you prepare is also ignored.</p> |
| <code>genesys_connector.configServer.tls.port</code>      | <p>Identify the Configuration Server port number for establishing a TLS connection from AGA.</p> <p>If you enable a TLS connection, the TLS port number is used for both the primary and backup Configuration Servers, where both are configured. The port number for an unsecured connection, if configured, is ignored. The primary and backup Configuration Servers must use the same TLS port number.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>genesys_connector.configServer.tlsproperties</code> | <p>When using a TLS connection to the Configuration Server, specify the location of the TLS properties file that you prepared.</p> <p>The TLS properties file contains all the properties required to connect successfully using TLS, as well as any other optional TLS attributes that you use. If you use a backup Configuration Server, the TLS properties for the primary server are also used for the backup server.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |



## CCAdv and WA

This section contains information and procedures to help you change configuration for Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor after these modules are deployed.



# Configure Resource Management Console Properties

You can configure parameters for the Resource Management console (RMC) to make the application more specific to the user configuration in your enterprise.

Edit the `Advisors\conf\RMC.properties` configuration file.

After you change properties in this file, restart the Advisors server on which RMC is running.

## Automatic Dashboard Refresh Interval

By default, the RMC dashboard does not refresh the content automatically, however you can configure an automatic refresh. Set `advisors.resourceManagement.refreshTimeSeconds` to a number of seconds that is not zero (the default value). Genesys suggests a value of 60 or more. There is no benefit to setting the refresh interval to less than 60 seconds because it can take more than 45 seconds to retrieve information if a user opens the RMC dashboard to display the agents related to a level in the **Contact Centers** pane of a CCAdv or WA dashboard.

For example, to set the `refreshTimeSeconds` property value to 60:

```
advisors.resourceManagement.refreshTimeSeconds=60
```

Users of RMC can still click the **Refresh** button to refresh the dashboard at any time if it is not refreshing automatically.

### Procedure: Tuning the RMC Refresh Interval

**Purpose:** To find out how long it takes for the RMC server to respond to a typical query for data, and to tune the refresh time based on that information.

#### Steps

1. Edit the `Advisors\conf\log4j.properties` file:
  - a. Set the logging category `log4j.category.com.informiam.genesys.dcc` to `DEBUG`.



- b. Save the file and wait at least one minute.
2. Use RMC, opening its dashboard on data as you typically would in the CCAdv or WA dashboard.
3. Examine the log to see how long it takes to process each request for agents' data.
4. Set the refresh time to a higher value than the longest duration found.
5. Set the logging category `log4j.category.com.informiam.genesys.dccto INFO`.
6. Restart the Platform server that is running RMC.

## Maximum Skill Level in Dashboard

In the RMC dashboard, users with the correct Advisors permission can assign and remove agent skills, as well as change the skill level of the agents' existing skill. The dashboard presents a set of numeric skill levels, from 0 to  $n$ , where  $n$  is the maximum that can be assigned.

The default maximum skill level is 10. You can change it by setting `advisors.resourceManagement.maxSkillLevel` to a different value. To set it to 5, for example:

```
advisors.resourceManagement.maxSkillLevel=5
```

## Number of Concurrent Users of RMC

The default value of the `advisors.resourceManagement.expectedNumberConcurrentUsers=10` property is 10, which you can leave unchanged if you have 10 or fewer users using RMC simultaneously.

If you typically have more than 10 people using RMC simultaneously, the value should more accurately reflect the maximum number. If the value you use is too small in relation to the number of people simultaneously using RMC, then RMC might become slow to respond as more and more users open RMC.

Change the number of concurrent RMC users by setting `advisors.resourceManagement.expectedNumberConcurrentUsers=10` to a different value. For example, to set it to 20:

```
advisors.resourceManagement.expectedNumberConcurrentUsers=20
```



## Other RMC Properties

For details about other properties in the RMC.properties file, see [Deploying SDS and RMC](#).



# Configure Metric Graphing Properties

You configure metric graphing properties during the installation of the CCAdv and WA modules.

There is no system-wide setting that determines the time period of values displayed in graphs. Users can graph five minutes and thirty minutes data in the same graph. Use the **Time Profile for Charting** option on the **Report Metrics** page of the Administration module to enable a metric and time profile for graphing.

If changes are required in the metric graphing properties after installation, use the CONFIG\_PARAMETER table in the Advisors database. The following list describes the properties that govern metric graphing in the CONFIG\_PARAMETER table:

- The duration of the historical values retained for graphing.  
The default number is 120 minutes, or 2 hours. Changing this number will increase or decrease the number of minutes that the historical data for metrics is kept in the metric graphing database. See **Change the duration of historical values**.
- The duration of the future values displayed for graphing.  
The default number is 120 minutes, or 2 hours. Changing this number increases or decreases the number of minutes that the future data of WA forecast metrics is displayed on the complete X axis (horizontal axis) of a graph. See **Change the duration of future values**.
- The minimum interval in seconds between graphed values in all graphs for points stored after the change.  
See **Change the interval between values**.
- Whether graphed values display from midnight.  
The default value is true. Changing this to false means that a graph will not show values with times from the previous day. See **Retain or delete values at midnight**.
- The number of metric/time profile combinations that can be graphed.  
See **Specify the number of metric/time profile combinations**.

<tabber>

Change the duration of historical values=

Use the following procedure to change the duration, in minutes, of the historical values that are retained for graphing.

Note that CCAdv/WA is optimized with the graphing parameters of 120 minutes of graphable values that are no closer than 60 seconds apart.

If you decrease the interval in seconds between values, you should decrease the duration of values stored, so that only approximately 120 values are stored for graphing. See the procedure on the **Change the interval between values** tab on this page.

1. In the Advisors database, execute:

```
UPDATE CONFIG_PARAMETER SET PARAM_VALUE = 'n'  
Where  
PARAM_NAME = 'warehoused.metrics.max.minutes.kept'
```



For n, substitute your desired value. Note that the value is entered as a character string, surrounded by single quotes. The configured value for the `warehoused.metrics.max.minutes.kept` parameter is maintained when you upgrade to another software release.

2. Wait at least five minutes until the configuration parameter cache expires, and the value you set is loaded into the cache.

3. From this point on, CCAdv/WA stores up to n minutes of historical values for each metric in the metric graphing database. The graphing service will return n minutes of values for each graph. The graphing service also returns future values when they are available. See the procedure on the **Change the duration of future values** tab on this page.

#### | Change the duration of future values=

Use the following procedure to change the duration, in minutes, of the future values that are displayed for graphing. Only WA contact group forecast metrics have future values.

1. In the Advisors database, execute:

```
UPDATE CONFIG_PARAMETER SET PARAM_VALUE = 'm'
Where
PARAM_NAME = 'warehoused.metrics.forecast.minutes.displayed'
```

For m, substitute your desired value. Note that the value is entered as a character string, surrounded by single quotes.

2. Wait at least five minutes until the configuration parameter cache expires, and the value you set is loaded into the cache.

3. From this point on, CCAdv/WA displays up to m minutes of future values for each metric in the metric graphing database.

The graphing service returns n (`warehoused.metrics.max.minutes.kept`) minutes of historical values, plus m (`warehoused.metrics.forecast.minutes.displayed`) minutes of future values (when available) for each graph.

#### | Change the interval between values=

The supported amount of historical data that CCAdv/WA stores for one graphed metric is 120 values. By default, CCAdv/WA keeps 120 values that are not closer than one minute apart.

If you decrease the interval in seconds between values, you should decrease the duration of values stored, so that only approximately 120 values are stored for graphing.

Use the following procedure to change the minimum number of seconds between values in a graph.

1. In the Advisors database, execute:

```
UPDATE CONFIG_PARAMETER SET PARAM_VALUE = 'n'
Where
PARAM_NAME = 'warehoused.metrics.min.interval.secs'
```

For n, substitute your desired value. Note that the value is entered as a character string, surrounded by single quotes.

2. Wait until the configuration parameter cache expires, and the value you set is loaded into the cache.

3. From this point on, CCAdv/WA stores values for graphing such that a value is at least n seconds after the previous value stored. The graphing service returns the values that have been stored, according to any minimum interval setting that has existed for the duration of storage.



## Example

You want to display a graph of values for one day all the way back to midnight; that is, at most 24 hours. We can calculate that (24 hours \* 60 minutes per hour / 120 data points) means 1 data point will be graphed not more than every 12 minutes.

1. At installation set the Store snapshots for graphing interval to 720 seconds (12 minutes \* 60 seconds per minute) This setting corresponds to `warehoused.metrics.min.interval.secs` in `CONFIG_PARAMETER.NAME` in the Advisors database.
2. Manually, in the `CONFIG_PARAMETER` table in the Advisors database, set `PARAM_VALUE` to 1440 for the `warehoused.metrics.max.minutes.kept` parameter. That is the result of 24 hours \* 60 minutes per hour, for 1440 minutes.

After CCAdv/WA has been running for 24 hours, a newly opened graph would display the last 24 hours of values, with values spaced at least 12 minutes apart.

**[-] Retain or delete values at midnight=**

Use this procedure to specify whether graphs display values from the previous day.

1. In the Advisors database, execute:

```
UPDATE CONFIG_PARAMETER SET PARAM_VALUE = 'n'
Where
PARAM_NAME = 'warehoused.metrics.start.at.midnight'
```

For n, substitute your desired value. Legal values are true and false.

2. Wait until the configuration parameter cache expires, and the value you set is loaded into the cache again.

3. From this point on, when you first open a graph, it will not contain values whose times are from the previous day. In addition, open graphs will delete values from the previous day, when the time crosses midnight into the next day.

**[-] Specify the number of metric/time profile combinations=**

Use this procedure to specify the number of metric/time profile combinations that users can graph. Use this procedure if you try to configure more than the default maximum number of metric/time profile combinations for graphing in the **Report Metrics** page of the Administration module, and you receive an error saying you cannot configure any more.

1. In the Advisors database, execute:

```
UPDATE CONFIG_PARAMETER SET PARAM_VALUE = 'n'
Where
PARAM_NAME = 'max.metrics.graphing.enabled'
```

For n, substitute your desired value. Note that the value is entered as a character string, surrounded by single quotes.

### Important

This parameter is shared by all Advisors modules, including CCAdv and WA. The parameter governs the total number of graphable combinations in both CCAdv and WA. While this property can theoretically be set to any value, Genesys recommends you configure the limit to be 5 or less for performance reasons. Each metric/time profile combination is counted as 1. For example, if you select AHT 30 Min Growing and AHT 5 Min Sliding, that is counted as 2 graph-enabled metrics.



---

# Importing Contact Groups into Advisors

This page provides the information you need to import Contact Groups into Performance Management Advisors.

## Data for Contact Groups

Workforce Advisor accepts data from three WFM systems:

- Genesys Workforce Management (WFM)
- IEX TotalView
- Aspect eWFM

See *Workforce Advisor* in the [Genesys 7.x - 9.x Product Availability table](#) of the [Genesys Interoperability Guide](#) for information about supported versions.

## From Genesys WFM

WA requests data from Genesys WFM directly using the API of Genesys WFM. The properties that govern this are set at installation. The properties are stored in the `conf/WorkforceAdvisor.properties` file.

The `WorkforceUtilization-GenesysMetricsMapping.properties` file is another properties file specific to importing from Genesys WFM. The properties in the file let you choose the KPIs that WA imports from Genesys WFM. For information about how to map those KPIs to WA's metrics, see [Metrics Correspondences among WFM Systems](#).

## From IEX TotalView

Input data sets with forecasts from IEX TotalView are sent by FTP to a port number chosen when installing WA Server. The port number is preserved in a property in the `conf/WorkforceAdvisor.properties` file. WA's FTP functionality listens on that port for incoming data.

IEX TotalView can send data to WA directly using FTP. That is, it is not necessary to first write the data to files on the disk, and then send those to WA by FTP.

One data set from IEX TotalView can contain data from more than one contact group.

After WA accepts one of these data sets, it backs it up in a file in the Advisors directory. The file is placed in the subdirectory `apache-tomcat-<version>\bin\ftpd\iex`. There you can find the latest version of the data that WA accepted, although WA does not use this file. Changing this file



does not affect WA.

The `conf/WorkforceUtilization.properties` file has properties that tell WA how to remove these files from the backup directory:

- `iexLogCleaner.repeatInterval`: The default setting checks for files to remove every 12 hours.
- `iexLogCleaner.period`: The default setting removes files older than three days.

### Sending IEX TotalView files to WA using an FTP server

Unlike eWFM forecast data that WA fetches, IEX files are pushed to WA. WA does not read the IEX data sets until an external FTP server pushes them to WA.

Note that IEX TotalView can send data to WA directly using FTP. That is, it is not necessary to first write the data to files on the disk, and then send those to WA by FTP.

If you want to use FTP to push data from files on disk to WA, you require the following, in addition to the IEX files:

1. A batch file that contains the following:  

```
REM sends the current IEX file to the ftp service in WU on port 6021.
ftp -s:sendIEXFile.txt
pause
```
2. A `SendIEX.txt` file that contains the names of the IEX files:  

```
open localhost 6021
iex
iex!bat
bin
send "<<Enter your IEX filename here and repeat this line for every IEX file that
exists>>"
quit
```

Use a *Cron-job* to send the IEX files on a daily basis using the FTP server. To create a Cron-job on a Windows system, go to Start > Accessories > System tools > Scheduled Tasks. Create a new scheduled task and set up the batch file to run automatically at specific times.

### Changing the Password Used by WA Server's FTP Server

**NEW** As you can see from the example commands above, the default username to connect to WA Server with FTP is `iex` and the default password is `iex!bat`.

To change this password, update the encrypted password stored in WA Server's `ftpUsers.properties` file.

1. Choose the new password.
2. Use any utility available online to produce an MD5 hash of the password. You cannot use the Advisors password encryption utility for this task.
3. In the hashed result, replace lower-case letters with upper-case ones, if necessary. This makes the new hashed password consistent with existing hashes.
4. Go to the `apache-tomcat-<version>\webapps\wu-server\WEB-INF\classes` directory.



5. Edit `ftpUsers.properties`.
6. Replace `ftpserver.user.iex.userpassword` with the MD5 hash of your new password.
7. Save the file.
8. Restart WA Server.
9. Update the password in your `SendIEX.txt` file.

## From Aspect eWFM

Input files from Aspect eWFM are read from a directory chosen at installation. WA preserves the directory path in a property in the `conf/WorkforceUtilization.properties` file.

WA reads the files at an interval configured by a property in the `conf/WorkforceAdvisor.properties` file. That file also has properties that determine the field separator character and date format it uses when reading the file's data. WA does not back up these files, nor does it delete them after reading them.

One file from Aspect eWFM can contain data for only one contact group.

### How WA Distributes Metrics from eWFM

For the distributed scenario of data from Aspect eWFM, the data for each contact group is in more than one file. The metrics for one forecast contact group are in one file.

Metrics for related staff contact groups are in one or more different files.

WA apportions the metrics' values from the forecast contact group among the staff contact groups, and then ignores the forecast contact group. That is, essentially it imports only the staff contact groups, but these have all the necessary metrics.

Below is how WA apportions the metrics' values from the forecast contact group to the related staff contact groups. For one staff contact group:

Staff CG RVOL = (Forecast CG RVOL \* (Staff CG SGRSCH / Sum(SGRSCH of all Staff CGs related to Forecast CG))

Staff CG RSL = Forecast CG RSL

Staff CG RDELAY SEC = Forecast CG RDELAY SEC

Staff CG RAHT = Forecast CG RAHT

[Back to Top](#)

---

## Importing Contact Groups into Primary and Backup WA Servers

In a deployment of WA Server that supports **warm standby HA**, WA Server is installed on two different systems.

---



The same is true in a deployment that supports **cold standby**.

In such deployments, the configuration to import contact groups must be done on both of those systems.

If you perform the configuration, for example, only on the system that runs the primary WA Server, and then that system fails over to the backup system, the WA Server that runs there will not have any forecast data about contact groups to use in its calculations. The WA dashboards will display N/A for contact groups' metrics and metrics that depend on them.

[Back to Top](#)

## Contact Group Synchronization Log

WA does not create a separate log file to record the effect of an import of data for contact groups from any system. WA logs the data in the `advisors.log` file of the Tomcat in which the WA Server is deployed. This log file is in the Advisors deployment directory, in subdirectory `apache-tomcat-<version>/logs`.

This logging is controlled by a category in the `log4j.properties` file in the `Advisors/conf` directory. The category is `com.informiam.workforceutilization.service.integration.batch.ContactGroupImporterImpl` and, by default, is set to `INFO`, which will output the messages described here.

An example of an entry in the log is:

```
ContactGroupImportLogEntry{
  logDate=Fri Jun 01 22:34:58 EDT 2012,
  netNewContactGroups=[ContactType{id=WFMProd01-Complaints, name='Complaints'}],
  inactivatedContactGroups=[],
  reactivatedContactGroups=[]}
```

This log entry says that:

- On the last import of a contact group or set of them, there was one new contact group.
- The new contact group's source system's name is `WFMProd01`.
- The group's ID in its system of origin, (as far as Advisors can determine), is `Complaints`. The name is `Complaints`.

[Back to Top](#)

## File Names for Contact Groups

The names of the files with contact group data have special meaning, as described in the following sections. The file names carry this meaning because the contents of the file cannot carry it.



## From IEX TotalView

The format of the name of a file from IEX TotalView is:  
`sourceSystemName.anyText`

The segment `.anyText` is mandatory, but can simply be the file's extension. For example:  
`IEXSystem1.ContactGroupsForecastData.txt`  
`Prod02.DailyForecast.csv`

The source system name establishes a namespace for the names of all the contact groups that the file contains. It allows Advisors to distinguish contact groups with the same name from different WFM systems.

Source system names are case-sensitive. Source names must be unique across all sources. That is, data from IEX TotalView and Aspect eWFM cannot have the same source name.

Once you first import a file with a given source system name, you should not change it. If you change it, WA will not recognize that the contact groups come from the same source system. It will create in the Advisors database a new set of contact groups with a different source system name.

The source system name appears in the Administration module, in the **Contact Groups Configuration** page, Contact Group Details tab. It can also qualify contact groups' names in other places in which Advisors displays them.

Advisors assigns the type forecast to all contact groups from IEX TotalView. This type also appears in the Administration module, in the **Contact Groups Configuration** page, Contact Group Details tab. Advisors does not use this type; it is for information only.

## From Aspect eWFM

The format of the name of a file from Aspect eWFM is:  
`sourceSystemName.contactGroupName.anyText.csv`

The segment `.anyText` is optional. WA ignores it if it is present. If you replace `anyText` with a timestamp, you can use this text to differentiate the same data sent at different times. This prevents WA from trying to read a file that something else is currently writing. For example:

`AspectSystem1.RS.csv`  
`Aspect.RS.csv`  
`ewfm.03_RET.csv`  
`Aspect1.04DESQ.2011-09-13.csv`

The source system name establishes a namespace for the contact group whose name follows it in the file name. It allows Advisors to distinguish contact groups with the same name from different WFM systems.

Source system names are case-sensitive. Source names must be unique across all sources. That is, data from IEX TotalView and Aspect eWFM cannot have the same source name.

Once you first import a file with a given source system name, you should not change it. If you change it, WA will not recognize that the contact groups come from the same source system. It will create in the Advisors database a new set of contact groups with a different source system name.

The source system name appears in the Administration module, in the **Contact Groups**

---



**Configuration** page, Contact Group Details tab. It can also qualify contact groups' names in other places in which Advisors displays them.

The contact group name is the name of the contact group.

If the contact group name starts with FG, then Advisors assigns the type forecast to the contact group; otherwise it assigns the type staff. This type (forecast) also appears in the Administration module, in the **Contact Groups Configuration** page, Contact Group Details tab. Advisors does not use this type; it is for information only.

You can put multiple files in the ewfm folder for a given `sourceSystemName.contactGroupName`. Genesys recommends that you format the files using the following convention to ensure WA imports the most recent file:

`<sourceSystemName>.<contactGroupName>.<yyyyMMddhhmmss>`

For example:

- Pipkins1.CAE.20130605101010.csv
- Pipkins1.CAE.20130605111010.csv

These two files have the same `sourceSystemName` and `contactGroupName`, but the time values differ. WA compares these values and imports the most recent file. From the previous example, WA imports the line items in the Pipkins1.CAE.20130605111010.csv file, and ignores the Pipkins1.CAE.20130605101010.csv file.

## Distributed and Undistributed Scenarios

From Aspect eWFM, the real-time data for one contact group is in:

- One file (the undistributed scenario)
- More than one file (the distributed scenario)

For WA to read these files, you must follow a convention about where to put them in the file system.

For the undistributed scenario, put the files into the directory you supplied for WA at installation.

For the distributed scenario, the data for each contact group is in more than one file. Metrics for forecast contact groups are in one file. Metrics for related staff contact groups are in one or more different files.

Put the file of forecast contact group metrics in the directory supplied for WA at installation.

Put the files of staff contact groups in a subdirectory of that directory. The name of the subdirectory should be the name of the file of the forecast contact group.

### Example

Data for the forecast contact group is in:  
`Aspect.A_FCAST_GROUP.csv`

Data for the staff contact groups is in:  
`Aspect.A_STF_GROUP_1.csv`



```
Aspect.A_STF_GROUP_2.csv
Aspect.A_STF_GROUP_3.csv
Aspect.A_STF_GROUP_4.csv
```

1. In the directory chosen at installation, put `Aspect.A_FCAST_GROUP.csv`.
2. In that directory, create a subdirectory named `Aspect.A_FCAST_GROUP`.
3. In the subdirectory, put the other files. The names of these files do not matter. WA knows they belong to `Aspect.A_FCAST_GROUP.csv` because the directory name matches its file name.

You can mix both scenarios. That is, you could also put `Aspect.A_CONTACT_GROUP.csv` in the top directory, and WA would read and interpret it as usual.

See [How WA Distributes Metrics from eWFM](#) for information about how the distributed scenario affects the way WA collects metric values for contact groups.

[Back to Top](#)

## Contact Group File Header

Each file must have a header exported by the WFM system so that Workforce Advisor knows which metrics are present, and their order. The columns in these files can be in any order. The only requirement is that the column's header, in the first row, must be in the same position in that row as the data in the following rows for that column. For example, if period is the fifth column header, then the values for period must be the fifth value in each row.

In a file from IEX TotalView, the header records are as follows:

```
#fields:date|period|TZ|custID|saGroupID|saGroupName|ssGroupID|ssGroupName|buID|
buName|ctID|ctName|acdID|modify|fcstContactsReceived|fcstContactsHandled|fcstAHT|
fcstSLPct|slPctObj|slTime|fcstOcc|maxOcc|fcstASA|asaObj|fcstReq|revPlanReq|commitPlanReq|schedOpen

#sort:date,period,TZ,custID,saGroupID,saGroupName,ssGroupID,ssGroupName,buID,buName,
ctID,ctName,acdID,modify,fcstContactsReceived,fcstContactsHandled,fcstAHT,fcstSLPct,slPctObj,
slTime,fcstOcc,maxOcc,fcstASA,asaObj,fcstReq,revPlanReq,commitPlanReq,schedOpen
```

The `#sort` record is not necessary.

For Aspect eWFM, the forecast and staff groups are either in one of the following formats:

- One file (undistributed)
- Two files (distributed)

The header records are as follows:

- Undistributed scenario  
In the one file for both forecast and staff groups, WA uses the data from the following fields:  
START\_TIME, HOUR, MINUTE, RVOL, RAHT, RSL, RDELAY SEC, SGRREQ, SGRSCH
- Distributed scenario



In a file of metrics for forecast contact groups, WA uses the data from the following fields:  
START\_TIME, HOUR, MINUTE, RVOL, RAHT, RSL, RDELAY SEC, SGRREQ, SGRSCH

In a file of metrics for staff contact groups, WA uses the data from the following fields:  
START\_TIME, HOUR, MINUTE, SGRSCH, SGRREQ, RDELAY SEC

WA does not use the PRI\_INDEX, ROUTING\_SET, or STOP\_TIME fields.

WA uses the following fields from eWFM data files:

- START\_TIME—WA uses the date component of the start time to determine the day, month, and year to which the data applies.
- HOUR, MINUTE—WA uses these fields to determine the time of day to which the data applies.

[Back to Top](#)

## Importing Contact Groups with Fifteen Minute Forecasts into WA

Workforce Advisor will accept data in which the forecast intervals are 15 minutes instead of 30 minutes. It will accept such data from any of the supported WFM systems.

Because WA is designed to display metrics only for a 30-minute forecast period that starts on the current half hour, WA has to combine the metrics from 15-minute periods in order to use them.

The simplest case is two 15-minute forecast periods, starting on a half hour and 15 minutes after that. For example, two periods starting at 09:00 (period 1) and 09:15 (period 2). The information below describes how WA combines the forecast metrics from these periods into metrics for the 30-minutes period starting at 09:00.

In the equations, a metric for period 1 is  $M^1$ , and a metric for period 2 is  $M^2$ .

- $FNCO \text{ for 30 minutes} = FNCO^1 + FNCO^2$ .
  - If either  $FNCO^1$  or  $FNCO^2$  is null, then the result is the value of the other.
  - If both are null, then the result is null.
- $FNCOTotal \text{ for 30 minutes} = FNCOTotal^1 + FNCOTotal^2$ .
  - If either  $FNCOTotal^1$  or  $FNCOTotal^2$  is null, then the result is the value of the other.
  - If both are null, then the result is null.
- $FAHT \text{ for 30 minutes} = (FAHT^1 * FNCO^1 + FAHT^2 * FNCO^2) / (FNCO^1 + FNCO^2)$ .
  - If either metric from period 1 is null, then the result is  $FAHT^2$ .
  - If either metric from period 2 is null, then the result is  $FAHT^1$ .
  - If the denominator is 0, then the result is null.



- 
- $FSL \text{ for 30 minutes} = (FSL^1 * FNCO^1 + FSL^2 * FNCO^2) / (FNCO^1 + FNCO^2)$ .
    - If either metric from period 1 is null, then the result is  $FSL^2$ .
    - If either metric from period 2 is null, then the result is  $FSL^1$ .
    - If the denominator is 0, then the result is null.
  - $REQ \text{ for 30 minutes} = (REQ^1 * FNCO^1 * FAHT^1 + REQ^2 * FNCO^2 * FAHT^2) / (FNCO^1 * FAHT^1 + FNCO^2 * FAHT^2)$ .
    - If any metric from period 1 is null, then the result is  $REQ^2$ .
    - If any metric from period 2 is null, then the result is  $REQ^1$ .
    - If the denominator is 0, then the result is null.
  - $SCH \text{ for 30 minutes} = (SCH^1 * FNCO^1 * FAHT^1 + SCH^2 * FNCO^2 * FAHT^2) / (FNCO^1 * FAHT^1 + FNCO^2 * FAHT^2)$ .
    - If any metric from period 1 is null, then the result is  $SCH^2$ .
    - If any metric from period 2 is null, then the result is  $SCH^1$ .
    - If the denominator is 0, then the result is null.
  - $AdjREQ \text{ for 30 minutes} = (AdjREQ^1 * FNCO^1 * FAHT^1 + AdjREQ^2 * FNCO^2 * FAHT^2) / (FNCO^1 * FAHT^1 + FNCO^2 * FAHT^2)$ .
    - If any metric from period 1 is null, then the result is  $AdjREQ^2$ .
    - If any metric from period 2 is null, then the result is  $AdjREQ^1$ .
    - If the denominator is 0, then the result is null.
  - $AdjSCH \text{ for 30 minutes} = (AdjSCH^1 * FNCO^1 * FAHT^1 + AdjSCH^2 * FNCO^2 * FAHT^2) / (FNCO^1 * FAHT^1 + FNCO^2 * FAHT^2)$ .
    - If any metric from period 1 is null, then the result is  $AdjSCH^2$ .
    - If any metric from period 2 is null, then the result is  $AdjSCH^1$ .
    - If the denominator is 0, then the result is null.

WA combines 15-minute periods as follows:

- Period 1 starting at n:00 and period 2 at n:15 combine to one 30-minute period starting at n:00.
  - Period 1 starting at n:30 and period 2 at n:45 combine to one 30-minute period starting at n:30.
  - A missing period 1 starting at n:00 and available period 2 starting at n:15 combine to one 30 minute period starting at n:00 that has the metrics from period 2.
  - A missing period 1 starting at n:30 and available period 2 starting at n:45 combine to one 30 minute period starting at n:30 that has the metrics from period 2.
  - Period 1 starting at n:00 and a missing period 2 starting at n:15 combine to one 30 minute period starting at n:00 that has the metrics from period 1.
-



- Period 1 starting at n:30 and a missing period 2 starting at n:45 combine to one 30 minute period starting at n:30 that has the metrics from period 1.

[Back to Top](#)

## Metrics Correspondences among WFM Systems

The Table below shows the relationships among the WFM metrics from different WFM systems. If a metric is not available from a WFM system, then its name in the Table, in the context of that system, is '-'.

Notes:

- Name shows the data in the NAME column of the METRICS table in the Advisors database.
- Display Name shows the data in the DISPLAY\_NAME column of the METRICS table in the Advisors database.
- IEXTotalView names are in the headers of files imported from that system.
- Aspect eWFM names are in the headers of files imported from that system.
- Genesys WFM's names are constants in `com.genesyslab.wfm7 ... EPerfInfoItems`. They are supplied to `WFMPerformanceService750Soap.getPerformanceData()`. If these parameters are not correct, you can map different ones to WA's canonical names in the `conf/WorkforceUtilization-GenesysMetricsMapping.properties` file.

| Name      | Display Name             | WA Canonical Name         | IEX TotalView        | Aspect eWFM | Genesys WFM                |
|-----------|--------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|-------------|----------------------------|
| FNCO      | Forecast NCO             | fcstContactsReceived      | fcstContactsReceived | RVOL        | PERF_ITEM_FRC_IV           |
| FAHT      | Forecast AHT             | fcstAHT                   | fcstAHT              | RAHT        | PERF_ITEM_FRC_AHT          |
| FSL       | Forecast SL%             | fcstSLPct                 | fcstSLPct            | RSL         | PERF_ITEM_FRC_CALC_SERVICE |
| FASA      | Forecast ASA             | fcstASA                   | fcstASA              | RDELAY SEC  | PERF_ITEM_FRC_CALC_ASA     |
| REQ       | Required Staff           | fcstReq                   | fcstReq              | SGRREQ      | PERF_ITEM_FRC_REQ_STAFFING |
| SCH       | Scheduled Staff          | schedOpen                 | schedOpen            | SGRSCH      | PERF_ITEM_SCH_COVERAGE     |
| AdjREQ    | Adjusted Required Staff  | fcstReqAdj                | -                    | SGRREQ JU   | -                          |
| AdjSCH    | Adjusted Scheduled Staff | schedOpenAdj              | -                    | SGRSCH J    | -                          |
| FNCOTotal | Forecast NCO Total       | fcstContactsReceivedTotal |                      | RVOL_TOTAL  | -                          |

[Back to Top](#)



# Bulk Configuration Overview

The bulk configuration tool allows you to quickly configure Contact Center Advisor (CCAdv), Workforce Advisor (WA), or both outside of the Advisors Administration module. The tool configures CCAdv, WA, or both based on the lists of objects you define and export from other systems and load into temporary structures in the Advisors Platform database. The bulk configuration tool retrieves the data from the temporary structures, validates it, and transforms it into CCAdv, WA, or CCAdv/WA rollup configuration.

You can use spreadsheets or CSV files to collect the configuration information into a simple file structure that can be loaded into blk database tables. Templates of Excel spreadsheets are supplied in the installation package.

Alternatively, you can omit the file preparation and load the data directly into blk database tables from the sources available through your relational database management system (RDBMS).

The bulk configuration procedures for CCAdv and WA can be executed on the Platform Oracle schema or Advisors Platform MS SQL Server database. The configuration logic, rollups, and dashboard views depend on which of the following two configuration modes you select:

- integrated configuration mode: you can configure CCAdv and WA simultaneously if the aggregation mappings of WA contact groups are expected to match the aggregation mappings of the applications related to those contact groups. Set the integrated configuration mode for CCAdv and WA and use the bulk configuration tool for integrated mode. Contact groups listed in the prepared data structures inherit the aggregation mappings specified for the relevant CCAdv applications.
- independent configuration mode: if you require the aggregation mappings to be different between CCAdv and WA, set the independent configuration mode and use the bulk configuration tools for the independent mode.

For information about the configuration modes and how to set the mode, see the [Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor Administrator User's Guide](#). You must select the configuration mode before you perform bulk configuration.



# CCAdv/WA Bulk Configuration – Integrated Mode

For information about the configuration modes and how to set the mode, see the [Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor Administrator User's Guide](#). You must select the configuration mode before you perform bulk configuration. Integrated mode is the default mode of operation.

Use the CCAdv/WA bulk configuration tool supplied in the `\bulkconfig\integrated\ccadv-wa-bulkload` folder when you run CCAdv and WA in integrated configuration mode. When you set the integrated configuration mode:

- Agent group-to-application relationships are automatically propagated to the configured contact groups mapped to these applications.
- Applications are available for mapping to a contact group only if they are configured and have a compatible aggregation structure with this contact group.
- Applications mapped to contact groups are included in the WA rollup only if those applications are configured and have a compatible aggregation structure. Any change of application configuration for CCAdv, or a change of contact group configuration for WA that makes the aggregation structures incompatible, removes the application from WA configuration.
  - A configured application and a configured contact group mapped to a non-AGCC contact center have compatible aggregation structures if both are mapped to the same contact center, application group, and regions.
  - A configured application and a configured contact group mapped to an AGCC contact center have compatible aggregation structures if both are mapped to the same application group and regions and the application is mapped to a contact center that represents a parent of the AGCC to which the contact group is mapped.
- Agent groups cannot be mapped to network contact center (NCC) contact groups directly. The list of available agent groups is always empty for NCC contact groups, while the list of assigned agent groups represents the agent groups derived from the contact group-application-agent group relationships.
- Agent groups mapped to an agent group contact center (AGCC) can be mapped to contact groups associated with the AGCC, but they are not included in WA dashboard views until mapped to an application that belongs to the parent NCC and that has a compatible aggregation structure.

**NEW** In releases prior to release 8.5.2, the bulk configuration tool required the presence of the business hierarchy objects (regions, operating units, application groups, and contact centers) in the Advisors configuration. You had to first add the business hierarchy data to the Genesys Configuration Server's **Business Attributes** folder, and then manually activate the same objects using the Advisors administration module. Starting with release 8.5.2, none of that is necessary prior to using the bulk configuration tool; the bulk configuration tool now has a business hierarchy bulk configuration feature. All business hierarchy names will be automatically added to the Advisors configuration and activated. All new business attributes can then be added to the Genesys Configuration Server's **Business Attributes** folder using the migration wizard supplied in the installation package.



## Database Structures, Scripts, and Procedures

An object creation script, `blkObjectsCre.sql`, is supplied in the installation package, in the `\bulkconfig\integrated\ccadv-wa-bulkload` folder. You must execute `blkObjectsCre.sql` as a script – not as a statement – if opened and executed from the SQL Developer SQL Worksheet.

You apply the `blkObjectsCre.sql` object creation script to the Platform schema to create the following tables, which are required for the contact group bulk configuration:

- `blkAllNames`
- `blkAllAgntGr`
- `blkAllLog`

You must create all of the preceding tables, but the content is optional. Any and all tables can remain empty. Empty tables do not impact the configuration in any way.

Objects already present in CCAdv/WA configuration, but absent from these tables, remain in the CCAdv/WA configuration after you perform the bulk configuration procedure.

### Stored Procedure for Bulk Configuration

You implement the bulk configuration by running a stored procedure, `spblkConfigCCAdvWAINtegrated`, which is also created when you run the `blkObjectsCre.sql` script. You execute the procedure against the Platform Oracle schema, or against the Advisors Platform MS SQL Server database, after all base data is prepared in the tables created by running the `blkObjectsCre.sql` script.

### Script to Remove Objects Used in Bulk Configuration Process

The `blkObjectsDrop.sql` script removes all objects used in the bulk configuration (such as the tables that the `blkObjectsCre.sql` script creates). You must execute the `blkObjectsDrop.sql` script before you switch to the independent configuration mode and use bulk configuration tools for that mode.

### Stored Procedure for Removing Configuration

You can quickly and completely remove all CCAdv application, agent group and related AGCCs configuration created inside or outside the bulk configuration tool. To remove the configuration, execute the `spblkRemoveConfigCCAdv` stored procedure.

In integrated configuration mode, WA configuration depends on the CCAdv configuration. The removal of CCAdv configuration also removes parts of the WA configuration, specifically all relationships of contact groups to applications and agent groups. As a result, the WA dashboard will not contain real-time metrics and agent groups. If you restore the CCAdv configuration, all WA relationships will be restored, unless the WA configuration removal procedure is applied before the CCAdv configuration is restored.

Execute the `spblkRemoveConfigWA` stored procedure to remove the WA contact group configuration including relationships to applications, agent groups, and agent group contact centers and to remove the agent group contact centers associated with WA.



Executing the spblkRemoveConfigCCAdv procedure (Oracle):

```
DECLARE
M VARCHAR2(200);
R NUMBER;
BEGIN
"spblkRemoveConfigCCAdv"
(
M => M,
R => R
);
END;
```

Executing the spblkRemoveConfigWA procedure (Oracle):

```
DECLARE
M VARCHAR2(200);
R NUMBER;
BEGIN
"spblkRemoveConfigWA"
(
M => M,
R => R
);
END;
```

In an MS SQL Server installation, execute the procedure as follows:

```
USE <name of Advisors platform database>
GO
DECLARE
@m varchar(255),
@r int
EXEC spblkRemoveConfigWA
@m = @m OUTPUT,
@r = @r OUTPUT
SELECT @m as N'@m',
@r as N'@r'
GO

DECLARE
@m varchar(255),
@r int
EXEC spblkRemoveConfigCCAdv
@m = @m OUTPUT,
@r = @r OUTPUT
SELECT @m as N'@m',
@r as N'@r'
GO
```

## Important

The procedure will remove all data left from previous configurations that might have a negative impact on the new configurations. It can be very useful before the configuration mode is changed.

To be able to restore the configuration, you must have a reliable set of bulk configuration files or blk tables that you can use to re-load the configuration. Before you execute the configuration removal procedures, make sure that such data exists.

If you do not have a copy of your bulk configuration files or blk tables, you can use the export utility

---



to generate a "clean" copy of blk tables from the existing application configuration before you run the configuration removal procedure. See additional details in [Exporting CCAdv/WA Configuration](#).

You also can execute the bulk configuration removal procedures if you are comfortable with the current configuration loss and want to re-configure the applications from the beginning.

The configuration removal procedure does not remove the data from blk files. Those are always preserved unless the tables are dropped by running the blkObjectsDrop.sql script.

## Prerequisites and Preparations

**NEW** Starting with release 8.5.2, the contact centers, regions, operating units, and application groups that you will use in the bulk configuration structures do not need to be present in the Genesys Configuration Server, nor do they need to be visible in the Advisors configuration pages at the time that you run the bulk configuration procedure. The bulk configuration tool automatically adds all hierarchy objects to the Advisors configuration as long as they are entered in the bulk configuration structures, and if they are not currently present in the Advisors configuration. After the bulk configuration procedure is executed, all new business attributes can be added to the Genesys Configuration Server's **Business Attributes** folder using the migration wizard supplied in the installation package. No existing configuration is removed when using the bulk configuration tool. If any objects are already configured, or any application-to-agent group relationships are added manually (using the administration module), they are not removed by the bulk configuration tool. The tool adds to the configuration or changes the mappings of the existing configured objects based on the data contained in the temporary structures.

**NEW** Review the following considerations before using the bulk configuration import procedure:

- A contact center will be added to the configuration only if the corresponding Geographic Region name is supplied.
- If a contact center is already present in your configuration, then the bulk configuration import process will make no changes to the existing contact center configuration.
- A contact center that is automatically added to the configuration as part of the bulk configuration process will be assigned the default value for opening ("00:00") and the default value for closing time ("23:59"). If you need to change those values, then you must adjust those properties manually using the **Contact Center** page in the administration module.
- A contact center that is automatically added to the configuration as part of the bulk configuration process will be assigned the local time zone if the contact center name does not match any geographic location in the list of time zones. If the matching location is found in the time zone list, then the time zone associated with that geographic location will be assigned to the contact center. An administrator can adjust the time zone property at any time. It is important to adjust this property in accordance with the actual contact center time zone if the open and close times are different than the default values ("00:00"/"23:59").
- A contact center that is automatically added to the configuration as part of the bulk configuration process will always be of the "Network" type. If you need to create a "Site" contact center, then you must manually configure it on the **Contact Center** configuration page of the Advisors administration module *before* you execute the bulk configuration procedure.
- The application server and XML Generator service must be up and successfully running until the required data (see the following two bullet points) displays on the pages of the Advisors administration



module. To ensure that the import runs successfully, check the XML Generator log for import-related errors.

- All relevant applications and agent groups have been automatically imported by XML Generator, and are available for configuration.
- If WA configuration is included in the bulk data, all relevant contact groups have been automatically imported by the WA server from the WFM system(s) specified during Advisors installation, and are available for configuration.

If an AGCC does not already exist, one is created by the bulk configuration procedure under every network call center where each application mapped to it (that is, to the NCC) is also mapped to an agent group and that agent group is mapped to an AGCC.

### Considerations for SL Threshold Bulk Configuration

**NEW** The bulk configuration tool now accepts the SL Threshold property, which you enter in the CustomSLThreshold field. For more information, see [Data Preparations](#) below.

**NEW** Be sure to follow these rules if you use SL Threshold values that are not the default value (20 seconds):

- The CustomSLThreshold field is measured in seconds; enter values accordingly.
- If you do not supply a value in the CustomSLThreshold field before you run the bulk configuration import procedure, the default value of 20 seconds will be assigned to the corresponding application, even if the current value is different.
- Only the predetermined SL Threshold values shown in the THRESHOLD\_VALUE column of the database table are allowed:

| NAME    | THRESHOLD_VALUE |
|---------|-----------------|
| Unknown | 0               |
| 10 sec  | 10              |
| 20 sec  | 20              |
| 30 sec  | 30              |
| 40 sec  | 40              |
| 45 sec  | 45              |
| 50 sec  | 50              |
| 60 sec  | 60              |
| 70 sec  | 70              |
| 80 sec  | 80              |
| 90 sec  | 90              |
| 5 min   | 300             |
| 8 min   | 480             |

If you enter an SL Threshold value in the bulk configuration structure that is not listed in the SL\_THRESHOLD database tables, the configuration of the related application will be skipped and



an error will be registered in the bulk configuration log file.

## Bulk Configuration of CCAdv/WA in Integrated Configuration Mode

The following procedure summarizes the steps to perform bulk configuration of CCAdv and WA when you use the applications in integrated configuration mode. The information following this procedure provides additional information to assist you.

### Procedure:

#### Steps

1. Start Advisors Application Server and XML Generator.
2. Watch the XML Generator and Geronimo logs. The logs must be free of any import-related errors.
3. Allow the Advisors application to run for approximately 10 minutes.
4. Open the Administration module in the browser.
5. Open each of the following pages and ensure that you can see objects among the available and/or configured object lists, as applicable:
  - Application Configuration page
  - Agent Group Configuration page
  - Contact Group Configuration page
6. Connect to the Oracle or MS SQL instance as the platform user.
7. Execute the blkObjectsCre.sql script. You must execute blkObjectsCre.sql as a script, not as a statement, if opened and executed from the SQL Developer SQL Worksheet.
8. Populate the blk database tables with your application, agent group, and contact group configuration data.

For information about preparing your data, see [Data Preparation](#).

For information about importing data from spreadsheets to the database, see [Loading Data from Spreadsheets into Temporary Database Structures](#).
9. Execute the spblkConfigCCAdvWAIIntegrated procedure; for example, use the following string with an Oracle schema:

```
DECLARE
M VARCHAR2(200);
R NUMBER;
BEGIN
"spblkConfigCCAdvWAIIntegrated" (
```



```
M => M,
R => R
);
END;
```

In an MS SQL Server installation, execute the procedure as follows:

```
USE <name of Advisors platform database>
GO
DECLARE
```

```
    @m varchar(255),
    @r int
```

```
EXEC spblkConfigCCAdvWAIIntegrated
    @m = @m OUTPUT,
    @r = @r OUTPUT
```

```
SELECT  @m as N'@m',
        @r as N'@r'
```

```
GO
```

10. Verify the log stored in the blkAllLog table.

For information about logs related to the bulk configuration, see [Bulk Configuration Validation and Logs](#).

11. Correct the data, if necessary, and go back to [Step 9](#).
12. Examine all relevant configuration pages in the Advisors administration module to verify the configuration.
13. Examine the dashboards to verify the configuration.
14. Do one of the following:
  - a. If you are satisfied with the resulting configuration, connect to the Oracle instance as the Platform user and execute the blkObjectsDrop.sql script to remove all temporary structures and bulk load procedures.
  - b. If you are not satisfied with the resulting configuration, go to [Step 11](#). Alternatively, if you see unpredictable results, and you have a reliable set of bulk configuration data loaded into blk tables, you can remove the whole CCAdv/WA configuration by executing the CCAdv and WA configuration removal procedures. After that you can reload the configuration as described in [Step 9](#).

To remove the entire configuration in Oracle installations, execute the following:

```
DECLARE
M VARCHAR2(200);
R NUMBER;
BEGIN
"spblkRemoveConfigCCAdv"
(
M => M,
R => R
);
END;
```

```
DECLARE
M VARCHAR2(200);
R NUMBER;
BEGIN
"spblkRemoveConfigWA"
```



```
(  
M => M,  
R => R  
);  
END;
```

To remove the entire configuration in MS SQL Server installations, the procedure calls are done as follows:

```
USE <name of Advisors platform database>  
GO
```

```
DECLARE  
    @m varchar(255),  
    @r int
```

```
EXEC spblkRemoveConfigCCAdv  
    @m = @m OUTPUT,  
    @r = @r OUTPUT
```

```
SELECT @m as N'@m',  
    @r as N'@r'
```

```
GO
```

```
DECLARE  
    @m varchar(255),  
    @r int
```

```
EXEC spblkRemoveConfigWA  
    @m = @m OUTPUT,  
    @r = @r OUTPUT
```

```
SELECT @m as N'@m',  
    @r as N'@r'
```

```
GO
```

## Data Preparation

You can use spreadsheets or CSV files to collect data in a simple file structure that can be loaded into blk database tables. Data preparation for WA can be done while doing data preparation for CCAdv.

Alternatively, you can omit the file preparation and load the data directly into blk database tables from the sources available through your relational database management system (RDBMS).

If you use spreadsheets or CSV files to collect your data, use the information in this section.



---

## Applications

Your spreadsheet or CSV file contains the list of all application names that need to be configured together with the corresponding application display names, contact center names, application group names, geographic region, reporting region, and operating unit names. **NEW** Starting with release 8.5.2, your file must contain 11 columns with headers (headers are mandatory). If you are use a "custom" SL Threshold (that is, the value is something other than the default value of 20 seconds), then you will have 12 columns because you will have to provide your custom SL Threshold value (in seconds). Provide the following information in the file:

- Application Name
- Application Display Name
- Contact Center Name
- **NEW** Geographic Region Name (to allow Contact Center bulk configuration)
- Application Group Name
- Reporting Region Name
- Operating Unit Name
- Contact Group Name
- Contact Group Display Name
- **NEW** Custom SL Threshold Value (provide this only if you use a value other than the default value of 20 seconds)
- Application Include in Rollup Property
- Contact Group Include in Rollup Property

Add relevant data to the spreadsheet or file under the corresponding column headers. You then import this data into the blkAllNames database table. To expedite the import of the data from the file into the database table, use the column names exactly as they are used in the associated blkAllNames database table.

## Guidelines

Use the following guidelines when preparing your data for bulk configuration:

- If a display name, geographic region, reporting region, or operating unit is not defined, you must leave the related cell empty (that is, do not populate the cell with N/A or any other identifier). The reporting region, or the operating unit must have a valid name – both cells cannot be empty. If the geographic region is not provided, and the associated contact center is not yet present in the Advisors configuration, the contact center will not be created and the application or contact group configuration will not be added. A corresponding message will be written in the blkAllLog table. If the geographic region is not supplied, but the contact center is already present, no error will be logged and the application or contact group configuration will be added to the Advisors rollup configuration, unless other issues are detected. If a contact center is already present in the Advisors configuration, but the geographic region that is supplied in the bulk configuration data does not match the existing geographic region property, no changes will be made to the existing contact center geographic region property. The whole content of the data row is rejected if any incomplete configuration is detected or there are names that cannot be resolved.



- Each application name (that is, the application name shown on the Application rollup page in the Administration module) must match the name contained in the `tmplImportCallType.PeripheralName`, `tmplImportInteractionQueue.PeripheralName`, or `tmplImportApp.PeripheralName` column of the Platform database.
- If used, each contact group name must match the name contained in the `CONTACT_GROUP.NAME` column of the Platform database. If the contact group names are unique within each source system, but are not unique across all source systems, append a dot and the source system qualifier to the contact group name in the bulk configuration data, i.e. the name in the bulk configuration will consist of `[CONTACT_GROUP.NAME].[CONTACT_GROUP.SOURCE_SYSTEM]`.
- Include only contact groups that will be mapped to applications; do not include contact groups that you do not want mapped to applications.
- An empty cell, or any values in the `Include in Rollup` properties that are different from Y or N are interpreted as Y (for information about the two `Include in Rollup` columns, see [Applications](#) above).

WA does not support interaction queues. Any contact groups specified and associated with interaction queues are ignored.

## Application-to-Agent Group Relationships

Your spreadsheet or CSV file contains a list of application names, agent group names, and display names. If the related agent groups must be assigned to agent group contact centers (AGCC), you also specify the names of these AGCCs. If the specified agent group contact center does not exist, the tool creates it, but only if the related application is already mapped to a contact center or listed in the `blkAllNames` table. If no AGCC, contact group, or display name needs to be specified, leave the corresponding field(s) empty.

This structure is not used for application-to-contact group mapping. A contact group is mentioned in this structure only if you want the contact group to be assigned to an AGCC and the associated agent group.

Your file must contain the following columns with headers and provide the following information:

- Application Name
- Agent Group Name
- Agent Group Contact Center Name
- Contact Group Name
- Contact Group Display Name
- Contact Group Include in Rollup Property

Add relevant data to the spreadsheet or file under the corresponding column headers. You then import this data into the `blkAllAgntGr` database table. To expedite the import of the data from the file into the database table, use the column names exactly as they are used in the associated `blkAllAgntGr` database table.

## Guidelines

Use the following guidelines when you create the spreadsheets to import configuration information about application and agent group relationships:



- Each agent group name must match the name contained in the `tmpImportSkill.EnterpriseName` column of the Platform database.
- If used, each contact group name must match the name contained in the `CONTACT_GROUP.NAME` column of the Platform database. If the contact group names are unique within each source system, but are not unique across all source systems, append a dot and the source system qualifier to the contact group name in the bulk configuration data; that is, the name in the bulk configuration will consist of `[CONTACT_GROUP.NAME].[CONTACT_GROUP.SOURCE_SYSTEM]` .
- Do not include contact groups that need to be mapped to network contact centers. Such contact groups must be placed into the `blkAllNames` table instead.
- If an AGCC name is supplied, include only contact groups that you want to be mapped to the specified AGCC and agent group; do not include contact groups if the AGCC name is not specified.
- An empty cell, or any values in the `Contact Group Include in Rollup` property that are different from Y or N are interpreted as Y. If the contact group is not specified, the `Contact Group Include in Rollup` property is ignored.

## Loading Data from Spreadsheets into Temporary Database Structures

Import content from the spreadsheets or files into the relevant columns of the corresponding database tables using the Oracle SQL Developer or the MS SQL import option. Follow the procedure for each table.

### Importing Content into Tables (Oracle)

#### Procedure:

##### Steps

1. Open SQL Developer and register a connection to the Advisors Platform schema.
2. Navigate to the Advisors Platform schema, then to each created table.
3. Right-click a table and select the **Import Data ...** option from the menu.
4. Navigate to the relevant file and select it.
5. Follow the SqlDeveloper Import Data Wizard instructions; the wizard guides you through the import process.

Ensure that you verify the data for each step of the Data Import Wizard, in particular:



- Review the data on the Data Preview screen to ensure accuracy.
- Ensure you exclude any unrelated columns that might be present in the file. It is best if you remove unwanted columns from the file before you start the import, rather than excluding columns each time you run the import wizard.
- Ensure that you correctly map columns in the database table to columns in the file. Verify each and every column.
- Verify the parameters before import.

See the SQL Developer documentation if you have questions related to data import using SQL Developer.

### Importing Content into Tables (MS SQL)

You must match each spreadsheet with a destination table. Ensure you choose the table that was created for bulk configuration and not the one suggested by the wizard.

## Procedure:

### Steps

- Open Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio and register a connection to Advisors Platform database.
- Navigate to the Advisors Platform database and launch the import tool for one of the created tables.
- Follow the import wizard instructions.
- Import the data from each file that contains prepared configuration data.  
Using MS SQL Server, you can load data in one import session if you use Microsoft Excel and the data is consolidated into one spreadsheet with tabs representing the content of each table.

Ensure that you verify the data for each step of the Data Import Wizard, in particular:

- Review the data on the Data Preview screen to ensure accuracy.
- Ensure you exclude any unrelated columns that might be present in the file. It is best if you remove unwanted columns from the file before you start the import, rather than excluding columns each time you run the import wizard.
- Ensure that you correctly map columns in the database table to columns in the file. Verify each and every column.

See the MS SQL Server documentation if you have questions related to data import using Microsoft



## SQL Server Management Studio.

MS SQL Server Import is very sensitive to special characters which, if present in the files, can trigger an import failure accompanied by a message that might seem completely unrelated and will not explain the actual reason. Make sure that the files are clean. Special characters are often invisible; to avoid import failure, check the files for unnecessary empty trailing spaces, as well as empty rows or formatting, and remove them before you proceed with the import. While preparing the data, do not copy it from web pages or forms that might contain such characters.

## Bulk Configuration Validation and Logs

The contact group bulk configuration procedure (spblkConfigCCAdvWAIIntegrated) validates each record in the database blk structures. The procedure does not add to the configuration if any serious misconfiguration is discovered in the blk tables. Instead, the procedure records a message in the blkAllLog table and exits. Always review the blkAllLog table content; note rows that contain an asterisk (\*). The asterisks typically indicate problems with data in the tables. The number of asterisks normally indicates the number of found issues in the configuration for the related object. See [Prerequisites and Preparations](#) and [Data Preparation](#) for information about correct data preparation.

Examine the log to see if you encountered errors when performing the bulk configuration. If there are errors reported in the log, correct the data in the spreadsheets or files, and reload the content to the related tables and columns. You can also correct the data directly in the tables and then save the change for the future by exporting the new table content into the files. You can correct only some of the records leaving the rest intact. When you execute the bulk configuration procedure, the procedure applies changes to objects present in both the CCA and WA parts of bulk configuration tables.

Re-run the procedure to complete or correct the configuration using the updated data. Repeat the process as many times as necessary. The procedure does not reduce existing configuration. The procedure applies all modifications and additions that occurred in the blk tables after your previous execution of the procedure. Any deletion of data from the blk tables, however, is ignored.

The resulting configuration can be verified from the Advisor Administration module and on the dashboard.

## Correct Configuration Validation in Advisors Administration Module

Execution of the spblkConfigCCAdvWAIIntegrated procedure results in the following configuration, which you can validate in the Advisors Administration module:

- Associates applications contained in the blkAllNames table with contact centers, application groups, geographic regions, reporting regions, and operating units contained in the associated columns. The applications for which all names are resolved (all objects with those names are found in the Platform database and their IDs can be located through associations and assignments) are added to the existing CCAdv configuration and included in the rollup. The Include in Rollup property can be controlled from the utility; that is, the property's value can be supplied in the relevant column in the blkAllNames table. The value can be Y or N. An empty cell, or any values other than Y or N are interpreted as Y for compatibility with previous versions. The procedure also updates display names based on the content in the columns of the table. If the AppDisplayName column in the table is blank for an application, the existing display name for that application, present in the CCAdv configuration, is removed (replaced



with the blank name).

- Associates contact groups, where specified, with applications and assigns these contact groups to the contact center, application group, geographic region, reporting region, and operating unit specified in the row with the contact group. The procedure also includes the contact group in the rollup. The `Include in Rollup` property can be controlled from the utility; that is, the property's value can be supplied in the relevant column in the `blkAllNames` table. The value can be Y or N. An empty cell, or any values other than Y or N are interpreted as Y for compatibility with the previous versions.
- Associates the contact group with the specified contact group display name. If the `CgDisplayName` column is blank, the existing display name of the contact group (present in WA configuration) is replaced with the blank name.
- Establishes relationships between applications and agent groups contained in the `blkAllAgntGr` table.
- Establishes relationships between contact groups and agent groups contained in the `blkAllAgntGr` table. Each contact group displays in a row with the relevant agent group based on the specified agent group contact center. The contact group inherits the properties of the application contained in the same row of the table as the contact group.
- Records the outcome in the `blkAllLog` table, which you can examine after the procedure exits.

## Exporting CCAdv/WA Configuration

You can export the existing CCAdv/WA configuration into a set of temporary structures compatible with CCAdv/WA bulk configuration. You can then export the structures into delimited files, edit them by adapting to the bulk configuration format, and then use those for CCAdv/WA configuration in another environment. You can also use the exported structures to compare the actual CCAdv/WA configuration to your expected configuration.

Run the `blkCfgExp.sql` script in your Oracle or MS SQL Server installation to export the data.

The script creates and populates, or updates, the following two tables:

- `blkExpAllNames`
- `blkExpAllAgntGr`

All entries for which there is a problem contain an explanation of the issue in the `Message` column of each table. Make sure you always review the content of this column.

The export utility exports data into four tables:

- `blkExpAllNames`
- `blkExpAllAgntGr`
- `blkAllAgntGr`
- `blkAllNames`

The first two `blkExp` tables contain expanded configuration data that is presented in a redundant form for diagnostic purposes. The `Message` field contains a warning or error information, where applicable.



The other two blk tables contain a "clean", non-redundant copy of your Advisors configuration that can be further used "as is" by the bulk configuration tool. If, at the time of export, the Advisors Platform schema already contains the two blkAll tables, the utility will create a backup copy of each table with the name containing a timestamp.

For example:

- blk12MAY15063407AllAgntGr
- blk12MAY15063407AllNames

The timestamp format is: DD MON YY HH24 MI SS

Once the content of blkAllAgntGr and blkAllNames is saved into the timestamped backup tables, the tables are cleared and the current Advisors configuration is loaded into them.

There is no need to adapt the exported diagnostic blkExp data in order to craft the Advisor configuration blk structures. The content recorded into the blk tables by the export utility can be used as a data source for the bulk configuration tool. The data can be used for migration to another schema or for re-loading the saved configuration into the same schema after you apply the configuration removal procedure. Genesys recommends that you first verify the content of the diagnostic export tables before loading the configuration data from the blk tables created by the export tool.

The export utility can also be used for saving the versions of Advisors configuration while you are in the process of configuring Advisors. The blkExp data will help to capture and correct a problem as soon as you run the export utility. Any copy of the backup data can be loaded into the blk tables and used for reverting the configuration to any earlier, saved version. Genesys recommends that you use the bulk configuration removal procedure before each configuration load.



---

# CCAdv Bulk Configuration – Independent Mode

This section describes the bulk configuration of CCAdv objects; the bulk configuration tool configures CCAdv outside of the Advisors Administration module.

You can use the tool to rapidly configure CCAdv based on the lists of objects you define and export from other systems and load into temporary structures in the Advisors Platform database. The bulk configuration tool retrieves the data from the temporary structures, validates it, and transforms it into CCAdv rollup configuration. This tool is designed for use in independent configuration mode. For information about the configuration modes and how to set the mode, see [Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor Administrator User's Guide](#). You must select the configuration mode before you perform bulk configuration.

**NEW** In releases prior to release 8.5.2, the bulk configuration tool required the presence of the business hierarchy objects (regions, operating units, application groups, and contact centers) in the Advisors configuration. You had to first add the business hierarchy data to the Genesys Configuration Server's **Business Attributes** folder, and then manually activate the same objects using the Advisors administration module. Starting with release 8.5.2, none of that is necessary prior to using the bulk configuration tool; the bulk configuration tool now has a business hierarchy bulk configuration feature. All business hierarchy names will be automatically added to the Advisors configuration and activated. All new business attributes can then be added to the Genesys Configuration Server's **Business Attributes** folder using the migration wizard supplied in the installation package.

## Database Structures, Scripts, and Procedures

An object creation script, `blkObjectsCre.sql`, is supplied in the installation package, in the `\bulkconfig\independent\ccadv-bulkload` folder. You must execute `blkObjectsCre.sql` as a script – not as a statement – if opened and executed from the SQL Developer SQL Worksheet.

You must apply the `blkObjectsCre.sql` script to the Platform schema to create the following tables; the tables are required for CCAdv bulk configuration:

- `blkAppNames`
- `blkAppAgntGr`
- `blkAgntGrNames`
- `blkAppLog`

All of the preceding tables created by the script must be present at the point when you apply the bulk configuration procedure, but the content is optional. Any or all tables can remain empty. Empty tables do not impact the configuration in any way.



Objects already present in CCAdv configuration, but absent from these tables, remain in the CCAdv configuration after you perform the bulk configuration procedure.

### Stored Procedure for Bulk Configuration

You implement the bulk configuration by running a stored procedure, `spblkConfigCCAdvIndependent`, which is also created when you run the `blkObjectsCre.sql` script. You execute the procedure against the Platform schema after all base data is prepared in the tables created by running the `blkObjectsCre.sql` script.

### Script to Remove Database Objects Used in Bulk Configuration Process

The `blkObjectsDrop.sql` script removes all database objects used in the bulk configuration (such as the tables and procedures that the `blkObjectsCre.sql` script creates). You can execute this script whenever necessary. There is no negative impact because of the presence of these objects; they can be retained. The `blkObjectsDrop.sql` script does not remove any configuration or bulk export tables. You must execute the `blkObjectsDrop.sql` script before you switch to another configuration mode and use bulk configuration tools for that mode.

### Stored Procedure for Removing Configuration

You can quickly and completely remove all CCAdv applications, agent groups, and agent group contact centers configured in CCAdv inside or outside the bulk configuration tool. To remove CCAdv configuration, run the `spblkRemoveConfigCCAdv` stored procedure, which is created during the Platform database/schema deployment and which is identical for any configuration mode. Run the `spblkRemoveConfigCCAdv` stored procedure against the Platform schema.

### Important

The procedure will remove all data left from previous configurations that might have a negative impact on the new configurations. It can be very useful when the configuration mode must be changed.

In order to be able to restore the configuration, you must have a reliable set of bulk configuration files or blk tables that you can use to re-load the configuration. Before you execute the procedure, make sure that such data exists.

If you do not have a copy of your bulk configuration files or blk tables, you can use the export utility to generate a "clean" copy of blk tables from the existing application configuration before you run the configuration removal procedure. See additional details in [Exporting CCAdv Configuration](#).

You also can execute the bulk configuration removal procedure if you are comfortable with the current configuration loss and want to re-configure the applications from the beginning.

The configuration removal procedure does not remove the data from blk files. Those are always preserved unless the tables are dropped by running the `blkObjectsDrop.sql` script.



## Prerequisites and Preparations

**NEW** Starting with release 8.5.2, the contact centers, regions, operating units, and application groups that you will use in the bulk configuration structures do not need to be present in the Genesys Configuration Server, nor do they need to be visible in the Advisors configuration pages at the time that you run the bulk configuration procedure. The bulk configuration tool automatically adds all hierarchy objects to the Advisors configuration as long as they are entered in the bulk configuration structures, and if they are not currently present in the Advisors configuration. No existing configuration is removed when using the CCAdv bulk configuration tool. If any objects are already configured, or any application-to-agent group relationships are added manually, they are not removed by the bulk configuration tool. The tool adds to the configuration or changes the mappings of the existing configured objects based on the data contained in the temporary structures.

**NEW** Review the following considerations before using the bulk configuration import procedure:

- A contact center will be added to the configuration only if the corresponding Geographic Region name is supplied.
- If a contact center is already present in your configuration, then the bulk configuration import process will make no changes to the existing contact center configuration.
- A contact center that is automatically added to the configuration as part of the bulk configuration process will be assigned the default value for opening ("00:00") and the default value for closing time ("23:59"). If you need to change those values, then you must adjust those properties manually using the **Contact Center** page in the administration module.
- A contact center that is automatically added to the configuration as part of the bulk configuration process will be assigned the local time zone if the contact center name does not match any geographic location in the list of time zones. If the matching location is found in the time zone list, then the time zone associated with that geographic location will be assigned to the contact center. An administrator can adjust the time zone property at any time. It is important to adjust the time zone property in accordance with the actual contact center time zone if the open and close times are different than the default values ("00:00"/"23:59").
- A contact center that is automatically added to the configuration as part of the bulk configuration process will always be of the "Network" type. If you need to create a "Site" contact center, then you must manually configure it on the **Contact Center** configuration page of the Advisors administration module *before* you execute the bulk configuration procedure.
- The application server and XML Generator service must be up and successfully running until the required data (see the following bullet point) displays on the pages of the Advisors Administration module. To ensure that the import runs successfully, check the XML Generator log for import-related errors.
- All relevant applications and agent groups have been automatically imported by XML Generator, and are available for configuration.

If an AGCC does not already exist, one is created by the bulk configuration procedure under every network call center (NCC) where each application mapped to it (that is, to the NCC) is also mapped to an agent group and that agent group is mapped to an AGCC.

### Considerations for SL Threshold Bulk Configuration

**NEW** The bulk configuration tool now accepts the SL Threshold property, which you enter in the CustomSLThreshold field. For more information, see [Data Preparations](#) below.



**NEW** Be sure to follow these rules if you use SL Threshold values that are not the default value (20 seconds):

- The CustomSLThreshold field is measured in seconds; enter values accordingly.
- If you do not supply a value in the CustomSLThreshold field before you run the bulk configuration import procedure, the default value of 20 seconds will be assigned to the corresponding application, even if the current value is different.
- Only the predetermined SL Threshold values shown in the THRESHOLD\_VALUE column of the database table are allowed:

| NAME    | THRESHOLD_VALUE |
|---------|-----------------|
| Unknown | 0               |
| 10 sec  | 10              |
| 20 sec  | 20              |
| 30 sec  | 30              |
| 40 sec  | 40              |
| 45 sec  | 45              |
| 50 sec  | 50              |
| 60 sec  | 60              |
| 70 sec  | 70              |
| 80 sec  | 80              |
| 90 sec  | 90              |
| 5 min   | 300             |
| 8 min   | 480             |

If you enter an SL Threshold value in the bulk configuration structure that is not listed in the SL\_THRESHOLD database tables, the configuration of the related application will be skipped and an error will be registered in the bulk configuration log file.

## Bulk Configuration of CCAdv in Independent Configuration Mode

The following procedure summarizes the steps to perform bulk configuration of CCAdv when you use the application in independent configuration mode. The information following this procedure provides additional information to assist you.



## Procedure:

### Steps

1. Start Advisors Application Server and XML Generator.
2. Watch the XML Generator and Geronimo logs. The logs must be free of any import-related errors.
3. Allow the Advisors application to run for approximately 10 minutes.
4. Open the Administration module in the browser.
5. Open each of the following pages and ensure that you can see objects among the available and/or configured object lists, as applicable:
  - a. Application Configuration page
  - b. Agent Group Configuration page
6. Connect to the Oracle or SQL Server instance as the platform user.
7. Execute the blkObjectsCre.sql script. You must execute blkObjectsCre.sql as a script, not as a statement, if opened and executed from the SQL Developer SQL Worksheet.
8. Populate the blk database tables with your application and agent group configuration data.

For information about preparing your data, see [Data Preparations](#)

For information about importing data from spreadsheets to the database, see [Loading Data from Spreadsheets into Temporary Database Structures](#) section.

9. Execute the spblkConfigCCAdvIndependent procedure; for example, use the following string with an Oracle schema:

```
DECLARE
M VARCHAR2(200);
R NUMBER;
BEGIN
"spblkConfigCCAdvIndependent"
(
M => M,
R => R
);
END;
```

In an MS SQL Server installation, execute the procedure as follows:

```
USE <name of Advisors platform database>
GO
```

```
DECLARE
    @r int,
    @m varchar(255)

EXEC spblkConfigCCAdvIndependent
    @r = @r OUTPUT,
    @m = @m OUTPUT
```



```
SELECT      @r as N'@r',
            @m as N'@m'
```

```
GO
```

10. Verify the log stored in the blkAppLog table.

For information about logs related to the bulk configuration, see [Bulk Configuration Validation and Logs](#).

11. Correct the data, if necessary, and go back to [Step 9](#).
12. Examine all relevant configuration pages in the Advisors Administration module to verify the configuration.
13. Examine the CCAdv dashboard to verify the configuration.
14. Do one of the following:
  - a. If you are satisfied with the resulting configuration, and you do not plan to use the WA independent configuration tool, connect to the Oracle instance as platform user and execute the blkObjectsDrop.sql script to remove all temporary structures and bulk load procedures.
  - b. If you are not satisfied with the resulting configuration, go to [Step 11](#). Alternatively, if you see unpredictable results, and you have a reliable set of bulk configuration data loaded into blk tables, you can remove the whole CCAdv configuration by executing the CCAdv configuration removal procedure. After that you can reload the configuration as described in [Step 9](#).

To remove the entire configuration in Oracle installations, execute the following:

```
DECLARE
M VARCHAR2(200);
R NUMBER;
BEGIN
"spblkRemoveConfigCCAdv"
(
M => M,
R => R
);
END;
```

To remove the entire configuration in MS SQL Server installations, the procedure calls are done as follows:

```
USE <name of Advisors platform database>
GO
```

```
DECLARE
            @m varchar(255),
            @r int

EXEC spblkRemoveConfigCCAdv
            @m = @m OUTPUT,
            @r = @r OUTPUT

SELECT @m as N'@m',
       @r as N'@r'
```

```
GO
```



---

## Data Preparation for Application names, Application Display names, and Aggregated Object Names

You can use spreadsheets or CSV files to collect the CCAdv configuration information into a simple file structure that can be loaded into blk database tables.

Alternatively, you can omit the file preparation and load the data directly into blk database tables from the sources available through your relational database management system (RDBMS).

If you use spreadsheets or CSV files to collect your CCAdv configuration data, use the following sections as guides.

### Object Names

Your spreadsheet or CSV file contains the list of all the application names that need to be configured, as well as the corresponding application display names, contact center names, application group names, geographic region, reporting region, and operating unit names. **NEW** Starting with release 8.5.2, your file must contain eight columns with headers (headers are mandatory). If you need to provide a "custom" SL Threshold (that is, the value is something other than the default value of 20 seconds), then you will have nine columns because you will have to provide your custom SL Threshold value (in seconds). Provide the following information in the file:

- Application Name
- Application Display Name
- Contact Center Name
- **NEW** Geographic Region Name (to allow Contact Center bulk configuration)
- Application Group Name
- Reporting Region Name
- Operating Unit Name
- **NEW** Custom SL Threshold Value (provide this only if you use a value other than the default value of 20 seconds)
- Application Include in Rollup Property

Add relevant data to the spreadsheet or file under the corresponding column headers. You then import this data into the blkAppNames database table. To expedite the import of the data from the file into the database table, use the column names exactly as they are used in the blkAppNames database table.

### Guidelines

Use the following guidelines when you create the spreadsheets to import information about object names to be used for CCAdv bulk configuration:

- If a display name, geographic region, reporting region, or operating unit is not defined, you must leave



the related cell empty (that is, do not populate the cell with N/A or any other identifier). Where used, the reporting region or the operating unit must have a valid name – both cells cannot be empty. If the geographic region is not provided, and the associated contact center is not yet present in the Advisors configuration, the contact center will not be created and the application configuration will not be added. A corresponding message will be written in the blkAppLog table. If the geographic region is not supplied, but the contact center is already present, no error will be logged, and the application configuration will be added to the Advisors rollup configuration, unless other issues are detected. If a contact center is already present in the Advisors configuration, but the geographic region that is supplied in the bulk configuration data does not match the existing geographic region property, no changes will be made to the existing contact center geographic region property. The whole content of the data row is rejected if any incomplete configuration is detected or there are names that cannot be resolved (objects with those names are not found among the imported objects and, therefore, their IDs cannot be located through associations and assignments).

- Each application name (that is, the application name shown on the **Application** rollup page in the Administration module) must match the name contained in the tmpImportCallType.PeripheralName, tmpImportInteractionQueue.PeripheralName, or tmpImportApp.PeripheralName column of the Platform database.
- An empty cell, or any values in the Include in Rollup property that are different from Y or N are interpreted as Y (for information about the Application Include in Rollup Property column, see **Object Names** above).

## Applications and Agent Group Relationships

To configure application-to-agent group relationships, your spreadsheet or CSV file contains the list of application names, as well as the agent group names and AGCC names. If the related agent groups must also be assigned to agent group contact centers, the names of these contact centers are specified with the agent groups. If a specified AGCC does not exist, the bulk configuration tool creates it, but only if the related application is already mapped to a contact center (that is, it is listed in the blkAppNames structure). If no AGCC needs to be specified, leave the field empty.

Your file must contain the following columns with headers and provide the following information:

- Application Name
- Agent Group Name
- Agent Group Contact Center Name

Add relevant data to the spreadsheet or file under the column headers. You then import this data into the blkAppAgntGr database table. To expedite the import of the data from the file into the database table, use the column names exactly as they are used in the blkAppAgntGr database table.

### Guidelines

Use the following guidelines when you create the spreadsheets to import configuration information about application and agent group relationships:

- Each agent group name must match the name contained in the tmpImportSkill.EnterpriseName column of the Platform database.

You can prepare agent group descriptive names in a separate blkAgntGrNames file, if required. The blkAgntGrNames table is shared between the CCAdv and WA bulk configuration tools for Independent mode.



## Loading Data from Spreadsheets into Temporary Database Structures

Import content from the spreadsheets or files into the relevant columns of the corresponding database tables using the Oracle SQL Developer or the MS SQL import option. Follow the procedure for each table.

### Importing Content into Tables (Oracle)

#### Procedure:

##### Steps

1. Open SQL Developer and register a connection to the Advisors Platform schema.
2. Navigate to the Advisors platform schema, then to each created table.
3. Right-click on a table and select the **Import Data ...** option from the menu.
4. Navigate to the relevant file and select it.
5. Follow the SqlDeveloper Import Data Wizard instructions; the wizard guides you through the import process.

Ensure that you verify the data for each step of the Data Import Wizard, in particular:

- Review the data on the Data Preview screen to ensure accuracy.
- Ensure you exclude any unrelated columns that might be present in the file. It is best if you remove unwanted columns from the file before you start the import, rather than excluding columns each time you run the import wizard.
- Ensure that you correctly map columns in the database table to columns in the file. Verify each and every column.
- Verify the parameters before import.

See the SQL Developer documentation if you have questions related to data import using SQL Developer.

### Importing Content into Tables (MS SQL)

You must match each spreadsheet with a destination table. Ensure you choose the table that was the created for bulk configuration.



## Procedure:

### Steps

1. Open Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio and register a connection to Advisors Platform database
2. Navigate to the Advisors Platform database and launch the import tool for one of the created tables.
3. Following the import wizard instructions.
4. Import the data from each file that contains prepared configuration data.  
Using MS SQL Server, data can be loaded in one import session if you use Microsoft Excel and the data is consolidated into one spreadsheet with tabs representing the content of each table.

Ensure that you verify the data for each step of the Data Import Wizard, in particular:

- Review the data on the Data Preview screen to ensure accuracy.
- Ensure you exclude any unrelated columns that might be present in the file. It is best if you remove unwanted columns from the file before you start the import, rather than excluding columns each time you run the import wizard.
- Ensure that you correctly map columns in the database table to columns in the file. Verify each and every column.

See the MS SQL Server documentation if you have questions related to data import using Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio.

MS SQL Server Import is very sensitive to special characters which, if present in the files, can trigger import failure accompanied by a message that may seem completely unrelated and will not explain the actual reason. Make sure that the files are clean. Special characters are often invisible and to avoid import failure, you need to check the files for unnecessary empty trailing spaces, empty rows or formatting and remove them before you proceed with the import. While preparing the data, do not copy it from web pages or forms that may contain such characters.

## Bulk Configuration Validation and Logs

The bulk configuration procedure (spblkConfigCCAdvIndependent) validates each record in the database blk structures. The procedure does not add any configuration if any data contained in the corresponding tables fails to pass validation or cannot be found (or created) in the database. Instead, the procedure records a message in the blkAppLog table and proceeds to the next record. See



**Prerequisites and Preparations and Data Preparation for Application names, Application Display names, and Aggregated Object Names** for information about correct data preparation.

Examine the log to see if you encountered errors when performing the bulk configuration. If there are errors reported in the log, correct the data in the spreadsheets or files, and reload the content to the related tables and columns. You can also correct the data directly in the tables.

Re-run the procedure to complete or correct the configuration using the updated data. Repeat the process as many times as necessary. The procedure does not reduce the existing configuration. The procedure applies all modifications and additions that occurred in the blk tables after your previous execution of the procedure. Any deletion of data, however, is ignored.

The resulting configuration can be verified from the Advisor Administration module and on the dashboard.

## Correct Configuration Validation in Advisors Administration Module

Execution of the spblkConfigCCAdvIndependent procedure results in the following configuration, which you can validate in the Advisors Administration module:

- Associates applications contained in the blkAppNames table with contact centers, application groups, geographic regions, reporting regions, and operating units contained in the associated columns. The applications for which all names are resolved (all objects with those names are found in the Platform database and their IDs can be located through associations and assignments) are added to the existing CCAdv configuration and included in the rollup. The Include in Rollup property can be controlled from the utility; that is, the property's value can be supplied in the relevant column in the blkAppNames table. The value can be Y or N. An empty cell, or any values other than Y or N are interpreted as Y for compatibility with previous versions. The procedure also updates display names based on the content in the columns of the table. If the AppDisplayName column in the table is blank for an application, the existing display name for that application, present in the CCAdv configuration, is removed (replaced with the blank name).
- Establishes relationships between applications and agent groups contained in the blkAppAgntGr table.
- Records the outcome in the blkAppLog table, which you can examine after the procedure exits.

## Exporting CCAdv Configuration

You can export the existing CCAdv configuration into a set of temporary structures compatible with CCAdv bulk configuration. You can then export the structures into delimited files, edit them by adapting to the bulk configuration format, and use those for CCAdv configuration in the current or another environment. You can also use the exported structures to compare the actual CCAdv configuration to your expected configuration.

Run the blkCfgExp.sql script in your Oracle or MS SQL Server installation to export the data.

The script creates and populates, or updates, the following three tables:

- blkExpAppNames
  - blkExpAppAgntGr
-



- blkExpAgntGrNames

All entries for which there is a problem contain an explanation of the issue in the Message column of each table. Make sure you always review the content of this column.

The export utility exports data into six tables:

- blkExpAppNames
- blkExpAppAgntGr
- blkExpAgntGrNames
- blkAppNames
- blkAppAgntGr
- blkAgntGrNames

The first three blkExp tables contain expanded application configuration data that is presented in a redundant form for diagnostic purposes. The Message field contains a warning or error information, where applicable. The other three blk tables contain a "clean" non-redundant copy of your Advisors application configuration that can be further used "as is" by the bulk configuration tool.

If, at the time of the export, the Advisors Platform schema already contains the three blk tables, the utility will create a backup copy of each table with the name containing a timestamp.

For example:

- blk12MAY15063407AppAgntGr
- blk12MAY15063407AppNames
- blk12MAY15063407AgntGrNames

The timestamp format is: DD MON YY HH24 MI SS

Once the content of blkAppNames, blkAppAgntGr, and blkAgntGrNames is saved into the timestamped backup tables, the tables are cleared and the current Advisors application configuration is loaded into them.

There is no need to adapt the exported diagnostic blkExp data in order to craft the Advisor application configuration blk structures. The content recorded into the blk tables by the export utility can be used as a data source for the bulk configuration tool. The data can be used for migration to another schema or for re-loading the saved configuration into the same schema after you apply the configuration removal procedure. Genesys recommends that you first verify the content of the diagnostic export tables before loading the configuration data from the blk tables created by the export tool.

The export utility can also be used for saving the versions of Advisors configuration while you are in the process of configuring Advisors. The blkExp data will help to capture and correct a problem as soon as you run the export utility. Any copy of the backup data can be loaded into the blk tables and used for reverting the configuration to any earlier, saved version. Genesys recommends that you use the bulk configuration removal procedure before each configuration load.



# WA Bulk Configuration – Independent Mode

This page describes the bulk configuration of Workforce Advisor (WA) contact groups; the bulk configuration tool configures WA rollups outside of the Advisors administration module.

You can use the tool to rapidly configure WA based on the lists of objects you define and export from other systems and load into temporary structures in the Advisors Platform database. The bulk configuration tool retrieves the data from the temporary structures, validates it, and transforms it into WA rollup configuration. This tool is designed for use in independent configuration mode. For information about the configuration modes and how to set the mode, see [Contact Center Advisor and Workforce Advisor Administrator User's Guide](#). You must select the configuration mode before you perform bulk configuration.

**NEW** In releases prior to release 8.5.2, the bulk configuration tool required the presence of the business hierarchy objects (regions, operating units, application groups, and contact centers) in the Advisors configuration. You had to first add the business hierarchy data to the Genesys Configuration Server's **Business Attributes** folder, and then manually activate the same objects using the Advisors administration module. Starting with release 8.5.2, none of that is necessary prior to using the bulk configuration tool; the bulk configuration tool now has a business hierarchy bulk configuration feature. All business hierarchy names will be automatically added to the Advisors configuration and activated. All new business attributes can then be added to the Genesys Configuration Server's **Business Attributes** folder using the migration wizard supplied in the installation package.

If the independent configuration mode is set, then:

- Agent group-to-application relationships created in CCAdv are not propagated to the configured contact groups mapped to these applications. Instead, the direct network contact center (NCC) contact group-to-agent group mappings are used.
- Applications mapped to contact groups inherit all aggregation properties from those contact groups that are mapped to them. All properties that applications acquire in CCAdv configuration are ignored.
- Agent groups mapped to agent group contact centers (AGCC) inherit all the properties from the contact groups that are mapped to those AGCC. Each contact group can be mapped to only one contact center.

You can map contact groups, which are not mapped to AGCCs, to applications. You can map each such contact group (a contact group mapped to an application) directly to an agent group. In the independent configuration mode, mapping a contact group to an application does not trigger the automatic mapping of all the agent groups already assigned to that application.

You can map contact groups, which are mapped to AGCCs, only to agent groups. Each contact group configured under an agent group contact center has a parent in the form of a contact group mapped to the related network contact center. A combination of participating aggregated objects is derived from the specified parent, and an agent group contact center is automatically created under the derived network contact center, if one does not already exist.

All contact group-related aggregated objects that are derived from the parent (AGCCs, application groups, regions, and operating units) are automatically assigned to the children contact groups. All agent groups associated with the contact group that is mapped to an AGCC are mapped to this same AGCC automatically. Initially, these agent groups are excluded from CCAdv rollup by the bulk configuration tool, unless the agent group is already assigned to a contact center and included in



CCAdv.

## Database Structures, Scripts, and Procedures

An object creation script, `blkObjectsCre.sql`, is supplied in the installation package, in the `\bulkconfig\independent\wa.-bulkload` folder. You must execute `blkObjectsCre.sql` as a script – not as a statement – if opened and executed from the SQL Developer SQL Worksheet.

You must apply the `blkObjectsCre.sql` object creation script to the Platform schema to create the following tables, which are required for the contact group bulk configuration:

- `blkCgNames`
- `blkAgCgNames`
- `blkCgApp`
- `blkCgAgntGr`
- `blkAgntGrNames`
- `blkCgLog`

You must create all of the preceding tables, but the content is optional. Any or all tables can remain empty. Empty tables do not impact the configuration in any way.

Objects already present in WA configuration, but absent from these tables, remain in the WA configuration after you perform the bulk configuration procedure.

### Stored Procedure for Bulk Configuration

You implement the bulk configuration by running a stored procedure, `spblkConfigWAIndependent`, which is also created when you run the `blkObjectsCre.sql` script. You execute the procedure against the Platform schema after all base data is prepared in the tables created by running the `blkObjectsCre.sql` script.

### Script to Remove Database Objects Used in Bulk Configuration Process

The `blkObjectsDrop.sql` script removes all database objects used in the bulk configuration (such as the tables and procedures that the `blkObjectsCre.sql` script creates). You can execute this script whenever necessary. There is no negative impact because of the presence of these objects; they can be retained. The `blkObjectsDrop.sql` script does not remove any configuration or bulk export tables.

### Stored Procedure for Removing Configuration

You can quickly and completely remove all configured WA contact groups, their relationships to applications and agent groups, and agent group contact centers created inside or outside the bulk configuration tool. To remove WA configuration, run the `spblkRemoveConfigWA` stored procedure, which is created during the Platform database/schema deployment and which is identical for any configuration mode. Run the `spblkRemoveConfigWA` stored procedure against the Platform schema.



## Important

The procedure will remove all data left from previous configurations that might have a negative impact on the new configurations. It can be very useful before the configuration mode must be changed.

In order to be able to restore the configuration, you must have a reliable set of bulk configuration files or blk tables that you can use to re-load the configuration. Before you execute the configuration removal procedures, make sure that such data exists.

If you do not have a copy of your bulk configuration files or blk tables, you can use the export utility to generate a "clean" copy of blk tables from the existing contact group configuration before you run the configuration removal procedure. See additional details in [Exporting WA Configuration](#).

You also can execute the bulk configuration removal procedures if you are comfortable with the current configuration loss and want to re-configure the applications from the beginning.

The configuration removal procedure does not remove the data from blk files. Those are always preserved unless the tables are dropped by running the blkObjectsDrop.sql script.

## Prerequisites and Preparations

**NEW** Starting with release 8.5.2, the contact centers, regions, operating units, and application groups that you will use in the bulk configuration structures do not need to be present in the Genesys Configuration Server, nor do they need to be visible in the Advisors configuration pages at the time that you run the bulk configuration procedure. The bulk configuration tool automatically adds all hierarchy objects to the Advisors configuration as long as they are entered in the bulk configuration structures, and if they are not currently present in the Advisors configuration. No existing configuration is removed when using the WA bulk configuration tool. If any objects are already configured, or any applications or agent groups are added manually using the Administration module, they are not removed by the bulk configuration tool. The tool adds to the configuration – or changes the mappings of the existing configured objects – based on the data contained in the temporary structures.

**NEW** Review the following considerations before using the bulk configuration import procedure:

- A contact center will be added to the configuration only if the corresponding Geographic Region name is supplied.
- If a contact center is already present in your configuration, then the bulk configuration import process will make no changes to the existing contact center configuration.
- A contact center that is automatically added to the configuration as part of the bulk configuration process will be assigned the default value for opening ("00:00") and the default value for closing time ("23:59"). If you need to change those values, then you must adjust those properties manually using the **Contact Center** page in the administration module.
- A contact center that is automatically added to the configuration as part of the bulk configuration process will be assigned the local time zone if the contact center name does not match any geographic location in the list of time zones. If the matching location is found in the time zone list, then the time zone associated with that geographic location will be assigned to the contact center. An administrator



can adjust the time zone property at any time. It is important to adjust the time zone property in accordance with the actual contact center time zone if the open and close times are different than the default values ("00:00"/"23:59").

- A contact center that is automatically added to the configuration as part of the bulk configuration process will always be of the "Network" type. If you need to create a "Site" contact center, then you must manually configure it on the **Contact Center** configuration page of the Advisors administration module *before* you execute the bulk configuration procedure.
- The application server and XML Generator service must be up and successfully running until the required data (see the following two bullet points) displays on the pages of the Advisors Administration module. To ensure that the import runs successfully, check the XML Generator log for import-related errors.
- All relevant applications and agent groups have been automatically imported by XML Generator, and are available for configuration.
- All relevant contact groups have been automatically imported by the WA server from the WFM system(s) specified during Advisors installation, and are available for configuration.

If an AGCC does not already exist, one is created by the bulk configuration procedure under every network call center where contact groups have children (in the form of contact groups mapped to agent groups).

## Bulk Configuration of Contact Groups in WA independent Configuration Mode

The following procedure summarizes the steps to perform contact group bulk configuration when you use WA in independent configuration mode. The information following this procedure provides additional information to assist you.

### Procedure:

#### Steps

1. Start Advisors Application Server and XML Generator.
2. Watch the XML Generator and Geronimo logs. The logs must be free of any import-related errors.
3. Allow the Advisors application to run for approximately 10 minutes.
4. Open the Administration module in the browser.
5. Open each of the following pages and ensure that you can see objects among the available and/or configured object lists, as applicable:



- a. Application Configuration page
  - b. Agent Group Configuration page
  - c. Contact Group Configuration page
6. Connect to the Oracle or SQL Server instance as the platform user.
  7. Execute the blkObjectsCre.sql script in the WA bulk configuration section. You must execute blkObjectsCre.sql as a script, not as a statement, if opened and executed from the SQL Developer SQL Worksheet.
  8. Populate the database tables with your contact group configuration data.
    - For information about preparing your contact group data, see [Data Preparation for Contact Group Names, Contact Group Display Names and Aggregated Object Names](#).
    - For information about importing the contact group data from spreadsheets to the database, see [Loading Data from Spreadsheets into Temporary Database Structures](#).
  9. Execute the spblkConfigWAIdependent procedure; for example, use the following string with an Oracle schema:

```
DECLARE
M VARCHAR2(200);
R NUMBER;
BEGIN
"spblkConfigWAIdependent"(
M => M,
R => R
);
END;
```

In an MS SQL Server installation, execute the procedure as follows:

```
USE <name of Advisors database>
GO
DECLARE @return_value int,
@r int,
@m varchar(255)
EXEC spblkConfigWAIdependent
@r = @r OUTPUT,
@m = @m OUTPUT
SELECT @r as N'@r',
@m as N'@m'
GO
```

10. Verify the log stored in the blkCgLog table.
 

For information about logs related to the bulk configuration, see [Bulk Configuration Validation and Logs](#).
11. Correct the data, if necessary, and go back to [Step 9](#). If no correction is necessary, go to the next Step.
12. Examine the Contact Group Configuration page in the Advisors Administration module to verify the configuration.
13. Examine the WA dashboard to verify the configuration.
14. Do one of the following:
  - a. If you are satisfied with the resulting configuration, connect to the Oracle instance as platform user and execute the blkObjectsDrop.sql script to remove all temporary structures and bulk load procedures.



- b. If you are not satisfied with the resulting configuration, go to [Step 11](#). Alternatively, if you see unpredictable results, and you have a reliable set of bulk configuration data loaded into blk tables, you can remove the whole WA configuration by executing the WA configuration removal procedure. After that you can reload the configuration as described in [Step 9](#). You can remove the whole configuration by executing the `spblkRemoveConfigWA` procedure.

To remove the entire configuration in Oracle installations, execute the following:

```
DECLARE
M VARCHAR2(200);
R NUMBER;
BEGIN
"spblkRemoveConfigWA"
(
M => M,
R => R
);
END;
```

To remove the entire configuration in MS SQL Server installations, the procedure calls are done as follows:

```
USE <name of Advisors platform database>
GO

DECLARE
        @m varchar(255),
        @r int

EXEC spblkRemoveConfigWA
        @m = @m OUTPUT,
        @r = @r OUTPUT

SELECT  @m as N'@m',
        @r as N'@r'

GO
```

## Data Preparation for Contact Group Names, Contact Group Display Names and Aggregated Object Names

You can use spreadsheets or CSV files to collect contact group configuration information into a simple file structure that can be loaded into blk database tables.

Alternatively, you can omit the file preparation and load the data directly into blk database tables from the sources available through your relational database management system (RDBMS).

If you use spreadsheets or CSV files to collect your contact group data, use the following sections as guides.



## Contact Groups mapped to Objects other than AGCC

Your spreadsheet or CSV file contains the list of all contact group names that must be configured, together with the corresponding contact group display names, network contact center names, application group names, geographic region, reporting region, and operating unit names. **NEW** Starting with release 8.5.2, your file must contain eight columns with headers (headers are mandatory). If you need to provide a "custom" SL Threshold (that is, the value is something other than the default value of 20 seconds), then you will have nine columns because you will have to provide your custom SL Threshold value (in seconds). Provide the following information in the file:

- Contact Group Name
- Contact Group Display Name
- Contact Center Name
- **NEW** Geographic Region Name (to allow Contact Center bulk configuration)
- Application Group Name
- Reporting Region Name
- Operating Unit Name
- Contact Group Include in Rollup Property

Add relevant data to the spreadsheet or file under the corresponding column headers. You then import this data into the blkCgNames database table. To expedite the import of the data from the file into the database table, use the column names exactly as they are used in the blkCgNames database table.

### Guidelines

Use the following guidelines when you create the spreadsheets to import configuration information about contact groups mapped to objects other than AGCC:

- If a display name, geographic region, reporting region, or operating unit is not defined, you must leave the related cell empty (that is, do not populate the cell with N/A or any other identifier). Where used, the reporting region or the operating unit must have a valid name – both cells cannot be empty for any given contact group. If the geographic region is not provided, and the associated contact center is not yet present in the Advisors configuration, the contact center will not be created and the application configuration will not be added. A corresponding message will be written in the blkCgLog table. If the geographic region is not supplied, but the contact center is already present, no error will be logged, and the application configuration will be added to Advisors rollup configuration, unless other issues are detected. If a contact center is already present in the Advisors configuration, but the geographic region that is supplied in the bulk configuration data does not match the existing geographic region property, no changes will be made to the existing contact center geographic region property. The whole content of the data row is rejected if any incomplete configuration is detected or there are names that cannot be resolved.
- An empty cell, or any values in the Include in Rollup properties that are different from Y or N are interpreted as Y (for information about the Contact Group Include in Rollup Property column, see [Contact Groups mapped to Objects other than AGCC](#) above).



## Contact Groups mapped to AGCC

The mapping of contact groups-mapped-to-AGCC to aggregated objects is derived from their parent contact groups, which are already mapped to the relevant network contact centers. Your spreadsheet or CSV file for this information contains the list of all contact group names that must be mapped to agent group contact centers, and further to agent groups.

Your file must contain the following columns with headers and provide the following information:

- Contact Group Name
- Name of AGCC to which contact group is related
- Parent Contact Group Name
- Contact Group Display Name
- Contact Group Include in Rollup Property

The parent contact group name is the name of the contact group mapped to the associated network contact center.

Add relevant data to the spreadsheet or file under the column headers. You then import this data into the blkAgCgNames database table. To expedite the import of the data from the file into the database table, use the column names exactly as they are used in the blkAgCgNames database table.

If you supply data in a file related to contact groups mapped to AGCC, then the bulk configuration tool creates a WA configuration with participating agent group contact centers. If the blkAgCgNames database table remains empty, no agent group contact centers are added to the WA configuration. To be included in WA configuration, the child contact group must be specified in a pair with a parent contact group that is already mapped to a network contact center and other aggregated objects. That is, the parent contact group exists among the assigned contact groups in the current WA configuration, or it exists in the blkCgNames database table.

### Guidelines

Use the following guidelines when you create the spreadsheets to import configuration information about contact groups mapped to AGCC:

- If a display name is not defined, you must leave the related cell empty (that is, do not populate the cell with N/A or any other identifier).
- Each contact group name and parent contact group name must match the name contained in the CONTACT\_GROUP.NAME column of the Platform DB.
- An empty cell, or any values in the Include in Rollup properties that are different from Y or N are interpreted as Y (for information about the Contact Group Include in Rollup Property column, see [Contact Groups mapped to AGCC](#) above).

## Contact Groups and Related Applications

The word *application*, as used with Advisors WA component, refers to Advisors objects that originate from the following:

- Genesys ACD and virtual queues



- Genesys DN Groups
- CISCO call types
- CISCO services

Relationships between contact groups and applications is a necessary part of WA configuration. The functionality of the bulk configuration tool assumes that only contact groups associated with anything other than agent group contact centers can be associated also with applications. Your spreadsheet or CSV file for this information contains two columns:

- Contact Group Name
- Application Name

Add relevant data to the spreadsheet or file under the corresponding column headers. You then import this data into the blkCgApp database table. To expedite the import of the data from the file into the database table, use the column names exactly as they are used in the blkCgApp database table.

### Guidelines

Use the following guidelines when you create the spreadsheets to import configuration information about contact groups and associated applications:

- Each contact group name must match the name contained in the CONTACT\_GROUP.NAME column of the Platform DB. A contact group will be mapped to the specified application only if this contact group is already mapped to something other than an agent group contact center. That is, the contact group exists among assigned contact groups or is mentioned in the blkAgCgNames DB table.
- Each application name must match the name contained in the tmplImportCallType.PeripheralName or tmplImportApp.PeripheralName column of the Platform database.

## Contact Groups and Related Agent Groups

You can associate contact groups that are mapped to network contact centers with agent groups.

Contact groups that are related to AGCC can be mapped only to agent groups that are mapped to AGCC and are identified as agent groups to include in WA.

Your spreadsheet or CSV file for this information contains three columns:

- Contact Group Name
- Agent Group Name
- AGCC Name

Add relevant data to the spreadsheet or file under the corresponding column headers. You then import this data into the blkCgAgntGr database table. To expedite the import of the data from the file into the database table, use the column names exactly as they are used in the blkCgAgntGr database table.



## Guidelines

- Each contact group name must match the name contained in the CONTACT\_GROUP.NAME column of the Platform database.
- Each agent group name must match the name contained in the tmpImportSkill.EnterpriseName column of the Platform database.
- If necessary, agent group descriptive (display) names can be prepared in a separate file blkAgntGrNames. If the blkAgntGrNames table is populated, the bulk configuration tool applies the agent group descriptive names. The following table shows an example of a blkAgntGrNames file.

Example of content in an blkAgntGrNames file

| AGNTGRNAME                                               | AGNTGRDISPLAYNAME         |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| V_THO_PK_TR_EntertainIP_Generalist_KristallRetention_100 | KristallRetention_100_cca |
| [Tenant1] V_IDR_PK_CF_Kundenbindung_120                  | Kundenbindung_120         |

## Loading Data from Spreadsheets into Temporary Database Structures

Import content from the spreadsheets or files into the relevant columns of the corresponding database tables using the Oracle SQL Developer import option (**Import Data ...**). Follow the procedure below.

### Importing Content into Tables

#### Procedure:

##### Steps

1. Open SQL Developer and register a connection to the Advisors Platform schema.
2. Navigate to the Advisors platform schema, then to each created table.
3. Right-click on a table and select the **Import Data ...** option from the menu.
4. Navigate to the relevant file and select it.
5. Follow the SqlDeveloper Import Data Wizard instructions; the wizard guides you through the import process.



Ensure that you verify the data for each step of the Data Import Wizard, in particular:

- Review the data on the Data Preview screen to ensure accuracy.
- Ensure that you correctly map columns in the database table to columns in the file. Verify each and every column.
- Verify the parameters before import.

See the SQL Developer documentation if you have questions related to the import of data.

## Bulk Configuration Validation and Logs

The contact group bulk configuration procedure (spblkInsertIntoCg) validates each record in the database blk structures. The procedure does not add a contact group or a relationship to the WA configuration if any data contained in the corresponding tables fails to pass validation or cannot be found (or created) in the database. Instead, the procedure records a message in the blkCgLog table and proceeds to the next record. See [Prerequisites and Preparations](#) and [Data Preparation for Contact Group Names, Contact Group Display Names and Aggregated Object Names](#) for information about correct data preparation.

Examine the log to see if you encountered errors when performing the bulk configuration. If there are errors reported in the log, correct the data in the spreadsheets or files, and reload the content to the related tables and columns. You can also correct the data directly in the tables. You can correct only some of the records leaving the rest intact. When you execute the bulk configuration procedure, the procedure applies changes to objects present in WA configuration and in the bulk configuration tables.

Re-run the procedure to complete or correct the configuration using the updated data. Repeat the process as many times as necessary. The procedure does not remove the mapping of objects already present in WA configuration, but not present in the blkCgNames table, or otherwise damage existing configuration. The procedure applies all modifications and additions that occurred in the blk tables after your previous execution of the procedure. Any deletion of data, however, is ignored.

The resulting configuration can be verified from the Advisor Administration module and on the dashboard.

## Correct Configuration Validation in Advisors Administration Module

Execution of the spblkConfigWAIndependent procedure results in the following configuration, which you can validate in the Advisors Administration module:

- Associates contact groups contained in the blkCgNames table with contact centers (excluding agent group contact centers), application groups, geographic regions, reporting regions, and operating units contained in the related columns. The contact groups for which all the names are resolved (all objects whose names are found in the Platform database) are added to the existing WA configuration and included in the rollup. The procedure also updates display names based on the content in the related column. For example, if the CGDISPLAYNAME column is blank, the existing display name of the contact group, present in the WA configuration, is replaced with the blank name.



- Associates contact groups contained in the blkAgCgNames table with parent contact groups (contact groups associated with network call centers).
- Creates agent group contact centers associated with the derived network contact centers, if the AGCC are not already present.
- Associates contact groups contained in the blkAgCgNames table with agent group contact centers, derived application groups, geographic regions, reporting regions, and operating units. The procedure also includes these contact groups in the rollup and assigns contact group display names. If the CGDISPLAYNAME column is blank, the existing display name of the contact group, present in the WA configuration, is replaced with the blank name.
- Establishes relationships between contact groups and agent groups contained in the blkCgAgntGr table. The table can contain contact groups mapped to contact centers of any type. Each contact group mapped to an agent group contact center is mapped to this agent group contact center, to the contact group related to this agent group contact center, and is indirectly mapped to the parent contact group that is mapped to a network contact center. Each contact group mapped to something other than an agent group contact center is mapped to the specified agent groups directly.
- Assigns descriptive names to agent groups if the blkAgntGrNames table is populated.
- Records the outcome in the blkCgLog table, which you can examine after the procedure exits.

## Exporting WA Configuration

You can export the existing WA configuration into a set of temporary structures compatible with WA bulk configuration. You can then export the structures into delimited files, edit them by adapting to the bulk configuration format and use those for WA configuration in the current or another environment. You can also use the exported structures to compare the actual WA configuration to your expected configuration. Run the blkCfgExp.sql script in your Oracle or MS SQL Server installation to export the data. The script creates and populates, or updates, the following six tables:

- blkExpAgntGrNames
- blkExpCgNames
- blkExpAgccCgNames
- blkExpAgCgNames
- blkExpCgApp
- blkExpCgAgntGr

All entries for which there is a problem contain an explanation of the issue in the Message column of each table. Make sure you always review the content of this column.

The export utility exports data into 12 tables:

- Diagnostic tables
  - blkExpAgntGrNames
  - blkExpCgNames



- blkExpAgccCgNames
- blkExpAgCgNames
- blkExpCgApp
- blkExpCgAgntGr
- Clean configuration tables
  - blkAgntGrNames
  - blkCgNames
  - blkAgccCgNames
  - blkAgCgNames
  - blkCgApp
  - blkCgAgntGr

The first six blkExp tables contain expanded configuration data that is presented in a redundant form for diagnostic purposes. The Message field contains a warning or error information, where applicable. The other six blk tables contain a "clean" non-redundant copy of your Advisors contact group configuration that can be further used "as is" by the bulk configuration tool.

If, at the time of the export, the Advisors Platform schema already contains the six blk tables, the utility will create a backup copy of each table with the name containing a timestamp.

For example:

- blk12MAY15063407AgntGrNames
- blk12MAY15063407CgNames
- blk12MAY15063407AgccCgNames
- blk12MAY15063407AgCgNames
- blk12MAY15063407CgApp
- blk12MAY15063407CgAgntGr

The timestamp format is: DD MON YY HH24 MI SS

Once the content of the six blk tables is saved into the timestamped backup tables, the tables are cleared and the current Advisors contact group configuration is loaded into them.

There is no need to adapt the exported diagnostic blkExp data in order to craft Advisor contact group configuration blk structures. The content recorded into the blk tables by the export utility can be used as a data source for the bulk configuration tool. The data can be used for migration to another schema or for re-loading the saved configuration into the same schema after you apply the configuration removal procedure. Genesys recommends that you first verify the content of the diagnostic export tables before loading the configuration data from the blk tables created by the export tool.

The export utility can also be used for saving the versions of Advisors configuration while you are in the process of configuring Advisors. The blkExp data will help to capture and correct a problem as soon as you run the export utility. Any copy of the backup data can be loaded into the blk tables and



---

used for reverting the configuration to any earlier, saved version. Genesys recommends that you use the bulk configuration removal procedure before each configuration load.



# Frontline Advisor

This section contains information and procedures to help you change configuration for Frontline Advisor after you have deployed the module.



# Frontline Advisor Configuration Parameters

This page contains information about the Frontline Advisor (FA) configuration properties file (<Advisors>/conf/FrontlineAdvisor.properties). Use this information to help you to edit the FA configuration. All of the parameters listed are either specified during installation of Frontline Advisor, or set to an appropriate default, and are generally not expected to need to be changed.

| Parameter                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| __failure_notification_fromAddress             | Sender email address used for notifications sent from Frontline Advisor                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| __failure_notification_toAddress               | Email address where notifications from Frontline Advisor should be directed to                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| plt.database.type                              | Indicates what RDBMS is being used for the Advisors Platform database: either Oracle or Microsoft SQL Server                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| link.out.url.template                          | A legacy parameter of the Frontline Advisor Agent Advisor dashboard which is no longer present in the 8.5.2 release.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| __checkDBConnectivity_JobFrequency_inMilliSecs | Frequency (in milliseconds) Frontline Advisor will check for DB connection issues and send notifications to the FA administrator if one is discovered. The impact of this check on the database during normal operation should be negligible and not normally need to be adjusted.                                  |
| __resetStateMachine_JobFrequency_inMilliSecs   | Specifies how often (in milliseconds) the system will check for a High Availability (HA) or connectivity status initiated aggregation process reset. The default (5 sec) is a negligible fraction of the total time required for resetting of the aggregation process, and should not normally need to be adjusted. |
| __allowed_state_refresh_rates                  | Specified which time intervals are available for selection in FA administration for state metrics. Note: Do not change these values unless you are sure the values are supported by the Connector                                                                                                                   |
| __allowed_performance_rule_refresh_rates       | Specified which time intervals are available for selection in FA administration for performance metrics. Note: Do not change these values unless you are sure the values are supported by the Connector                                                                                                             |
| hierarchy.tenantname.{0,1,2}                   | The Configuration Server Tenant that the corresponding hierarchy path (see hierarchy.root.foldername.{0,1,2}) belongs to.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| hierarchy.root.foldername.{0,1,2}              | Path(s) to the root(s) of the Frontline Advisor hierarchy in the Configuration Server. If multiple hierarchy roots are configured they will be displayed together under a combined "Enterprise" root element in the Advisors dashboard                                                                              |



| Parameter                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| hierarchy.reload.cronExpression        | Specifies a schedule for reloading of the entire FA hierarchy. By default this is configured to run daily at 02:55 based on the system time (generally outside of business hours). If you wish to adjust this schedule refer to <a href="#">documentation on the cron trigger syntax</a>                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| hierarchy.dynamicUpdate.maxBatchSize   | All update events which can be read from the Configuration Server at one time will be batched together for reconciling with FA adapter(s). This parameter allows for specifying a maximum batch size to limit the batch size and ensure that changes are eventually reflected within FA in situations where there is an indefinitely long or continuous stream of updates. Any series of updates smaller in number than this maximum size is of course applied immediately. |
| hierarchy.dynamicUpdate.subscribe      | Toggles subscription to update events from the Configuration Server which are used to update the FA hierarchy. Enabled by default, but can be disabled if the hierarchy is not changed, or changes do not need to be reflected in Frontline Advisor immediately. Scheduled reload of the hierarchy will still take place.                                                                                                                                                   |
| message.listening.port                 | Port on which FA listens for connections from Adapter for source metric reporting. Set this to a static port, or zero, in which case any available port will be used                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| is.distributed                         | Indicates if Frontline Advisor will persist its data in the Advisors distributed cache. Note: This is not intended to be set to false. The new Advisors Web Services serves data for all Advisors modules now. The serving of FA data for single-instance only configurations from a non-distributed cache is no longer supported.                                                                                                                                          |
| enable.rollup.engine                   | Specifies if the rollup engine (aggregation process) should run. Note: This is not intended to be changed after installation since installing with the aggregation process enabled also requires high availability (HA) integration with the Genesys Management Framework. Enabling/disabling this process after installation may result in Frontline Advisor failing to start or working incorrectly                                                                       |
| rollup.engine.timeout                  | Timeout in minutes to wait for an actively running aggregation process to complete before initiating high availability (HA) failover                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| accessibleDashboard.nodeDisplayLimit   | Maximum number of teams, agents, folders which can be displayed in the FA accessible dashboard. Note: increasing this limit may negatively impact the performance of Advisors                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| accessibleDashboard.metricDisplayLimit | Maximum number of metrics which can be displayed in the FA accessible dashboard. Note: increasing this limit may negatively impact the                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |



| Parameter | Description             |
|-----------|-------------------------|
|           | performance of Advisors |



# Features Overview

The Features Overview section contains descriptions of the Performance Management Advisors features and functionality. Use the information in this section to help you understand how Advisors work.



# Advisors Clusters

Every system on which you install a module in the Advisors suite, where the module uses an Advisors Platform database, is a **node** in a cluster. It can be a physical computer, or a virtual machine on a VM host. It has an IP address.

A node in a cluster is also referred to as a *member* of the cluster.

Even if you install Advisors on only one system, that system is a node in a cluster containing that one system.

A **module** is an application in the Advisors suite that you can install separate from other applications. For example, WA Server is a module, and Contact Center Advisor XML Generator is a module.

Members of the cluster communicate to share data that is cached in memory. They also communicate via messages, to perform workflows that require more than one module.

A system that is a node in a cluster can run one Advisors module, or more than one Advisors module.

For example, the WA Server and Advisors Web Services are two modules, and you can install both on the same node. Alternatively, you can install the WA server on one cluster member, and Advisors web services on another cluster member.

Another example: WA Server and CCAdv XML Generator are two modules, and you can install them both on the same node or on different nodes. In the first case, you would have one cluster member, and in the second case, you would have two. See [diagrams of possible configurations](#).

For instructions about how to modify a cluster after you have installed Advisors, see [Change Advisors Cluster Membership](#).



# Integration with Solution Control Server and Warm Standby

Performance Management Advisors support warm standby – a form of high availability (HA) in which a backup server application remains initialized and ready to take over the operations of the primary server. Warm standby mode does not ensure the continuation of interactions in progress when a failure occurs.

In a Genesys environment, an application that supports HA is typically integrated with the Genesys Management Layer, specifically the Local Control Agent (LCA), the Solution Control Server (SCS), and a Genesys configuration interface, such as Genesys Administrator. LCA, SCS, and the management interface manage the primary/backup pair of applications.

The Advisors modules that support warm standby must be integrated with and installed with the LCA and SCS, even if you do not have a licence for an HA deployment.

## Additional Information

For information about Genesys Management Layer, see [Management Framework Deployment Guide](#) and [Management Layer User's Guide](#).

## Integration with Solution Control Server

Some Advisors modules must integrate with the Solution Control Server, while others do not need to. For those that do, you must create Application and Host objects for those modules whether you are installing a basic deployment or a warm standby deployment. See the following sections for the list of modules that require integration with the management layer and the list of modules that do not.

### [+] Advisors Modules Natively Integrated With SCS

The following Advisors modules are integrated with the LCA, SCS, and the Genesys Management Layer user interface (for example, Genesys Administrator) to support warm standby.

- Advisors Genesys Adapter
- Contact Center Advisor XML Generator
- Workforce Advisor WA Server
- Frontline Advisor FA Server (that is, FA with the rollup engine)



Because the preceding modules are integrated with the Management Layer, proceed as follows. For exact instructions on carrying out the following tasks, see [Deploying Components Controlled by Solution Control Server](#).

- install and run the LCA on a system that runs any of the preceding modules
- configure a Host for the system in your Genesys configuration interface, such as Genesys Administrator
- configure an Application in your Genesys configuration interface for each Advisors server that runs one or more of the preceding modules
- if you have a licence for an HA deployment, configure a second Application in your Genesys configuration interface for the secondary server, and associate the two Applications as a primary and backup pair for failover
- specify the properties, during installation, that permit the Advisors server to integrate with the LCA, SCS, the Application, and the Host
- do not create a Windows or Linux service to control this module, because SCS will control it.

## **[+] Advisors Modules Not Natively Integrated With SCS**

The following Advisors modules are not implemented to be integrated with SCS. You can install each of these modules on more than one system – you do not configure them as primary-backup pairs:

- Advisors Web Services

Because the preceding module is independent of LCA, SCS, or other parts of the Management Layer:

- it is unnecessary to install the LCA on a system that runs any it
- it is unnecessary to configure a Host or Application for the system or module in your Genesys configuration interface.
- you may create a Windows or Linux service to control this module.
- you may configure this module as a "third party" Application in the Configuration Server, and stop and start it from SCS in that way.

## **[+] Advisors Modules that do not Support HA**

The following Advisors modules are not automatically highly-available:

- Advisors Administration module
- Resource Management Console

### **Tip**

You can use different operating systems on primary and backup servers. For example, the host for your primary instance of the WA server can be a Windows-based system, while the host running the backup instance of the WA server uses a Linux platform.



## Limitations and Special Configuration

### Does Not Support Stop Gracefully

Advisors do not support the Stop Gracefully functionality available in the Solution Control Server UI. If you choose Stop Gracefully, it is the same as choosing Stop.

### Multiple Advisors Servers on One System

You can install more than one Advisors server, all part of the same cluster, on one system.

For example, you can install both CCAdv XML Generator and WA Server on one system. XML Generator does not require Advisors Platform to run, but the WA Server does.

For this deployment, you must create two Application objects in Configuration Server. One Application object is for CCAdv XML Generator, and the other is for the Geronimo instance that runs WA Server.

For a diagram illustrating such a deployment, see [Applications, Advisors Servers, and Cluster Nodes](#).

### Separating Advisors Servers that SCS Controls from Those That It Does Not

Genesys recommends that you install the Advisors modules that SCS controls, and the modules that it does not, on different systems. For example, Genesys recommends that you not install Workforce Advisor WA Server and Advisors Web Services on the same system. This is because it is easier to think about the deployment of Advisors if you keep them separate.

For example, imagine the following: you install WA Server and Advisors Web services on the same system, in one Advisors server. Because that server runs WA Server, it must be controlled by SCS via an application in the CME. WA Server communicates with SCS and indicates its status in the SCI, but web services does not communicate with SCS.

Here are some consequences of that:

- If WA web services fails and stops sending data to WA dashboards, the SCS UI will not indicate this. The application's status in the SCS UI will be Running.
- In the SCS UI, the execution mode of the application will not always reflect the state of Advisors Web Services. For example, if the application's execution mode is Backup, WA Web Services will still actually be running and will respond to requests from dashboards. This is because the module does not know about execution modes, and is not controlled by SCS.

If you think you can keep such things in mind and deal with the consequences, feel free to combine the installation of Advisors modules in servers however you please.

### Advisors Genesys Adapter

When configuring AGA instances on primary and backup systems, use the following rules:

- Configure the same number of adapter instances on both the systems. For example, if the primary system has two CCAdv/WA adapters, then the backup system should also have two adapters for CCAdv/WA.
  - Configure the same Stat Servers exactly on the adapters of the two systems.
-



## Frontline Advisor

Frontline Advisor requires integration with SCS and supports HA only when installed with the FA rollup engine. The following two configurations do this.

- FA installed as a cluster member with the rollup engine.
- FA installed standalone, which automatically includes the rollup engine.

## Administration Module

The Advisors Administration module does not have separate warm standby configuration. The following sections describe the two HA solutions for the Administration module.

### Fellow-Traveller Warm Standby

You could install the Administration module on the same system with either WA Server or FA with the rollup engine. Because the resulting Advisors server communicates with LCA and SCS, it does support warm standby. If that server fails, SCS will fail over to its backup, on which you have installed the same Advisors modules, including the Administration module.

The Administration module can sync Person objects from Configuration Server and users in the Platform database. Only one Advisors server should be configured to perform this task. In this scenario, configure only one of the servers to do this. The reason is that the Administration module does not know about execution modes. If both primary and backup servers are configured to synch users, and both servers are started at the same time, both will synch users at the same time, and both will fail.

### Cold Standby

Deploy a second installation of the module, with the platform to support it. If the primary installation fails, manually switch to the second installation, **as described in Cold Standby Configuration and Switchover**.

### Warm Standby and the FA Admin

When a deployment of Advisors includes Frontline Advisor, then in the Administration module, there is an FA Admin command in the navigation menu.



That command takes you to the FA Administration pages.

The functionality for the FA Admin pages is not in the Administration module. Instead, it is included in



the same server as the FA Server. This is a requirement for the FA Administration to operate. This means that if primary and backup FA Server installations exist, then primary and backup FA Admin modules also exist.

## Failover Scenarios

In an HA deployment of Advisors, failover from the primary system to the backup system might occur for the following reasons.

| Problem                                                                                                                                                                     | Solution                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Machine or Virtual machine (VM) is not available.                                                                                                                           | Processing fails over to the waiting backup VM or machine running the same modules.     |
| An Advisors server is not available, although the VM is still running.                                                                                                      | Processing fails over to a similarly-configured backup server on another VM or machine. |
| An important process in the Advisors server does not complete before a timeout period. The process, and the timeout period, are different for the various Advisors modules. | Processing fails over to a similarly-configured backup server on another VM or machine. |

An Advisors server does not fail over from primary to backup if the reason for the failure is something that would also cause the backup to fail. In this case, there is no point failing over.

Contact Center Advisor XML Generator does not fail over from primary to backup if its connections to a database fail. Functionality in XML Generator from before 8.5.1 re-tries the connections to the database for a configured interval, until the connection is restored.

## Managing Failover with the Solution Control Server

As with other Genesys products, the SCS manages failovers for primary-backup pairs. You can use Genesys Administrator or the Solution Control Interface (SCI) to manually switch processing from the primary Application to the backup, or to stop or start a primary or backup Application. See also [Deploying Components Controlled by Solution Control Server](#), particularly [Step 6](#) of the procedure.

The SCS controls the request to fail over, however the primary and backup server in a pair also communicate with each other, as a backup mechanism for failover. This is important because the SCS or LCA can sometimes fail, or a network communication path between the server and the SCS can fail.

## Advisors Warm Standby and Databases

All Advisors components are designed to restore the loss of database connectivity automatically. Ensure a backup Advisors application instance uses the same database as the primary application instance.

The solution for High availability of the Advisors databases relies on the respective database vendor's

---



solutions. Advisors support the following HA solutions for databases:

- Oracle Database with Oracle Real Application Clusters (Oracle RAC) and combinations with RAC for scalability and disaster recovery offered by Oracle.
- Microsoft SQL Server Failover Cluster. Advisors databases can be installed on a Failover Cluster Instance (FCI) where FCI is a single instance installed across Windows Server Failover Clustering (WSFC) nodes. MSSQL 2012 FCI with multiple subnets is also supported.

### Important

Database mirroring, log shipping, and MSSQL 2012 AlwaysOn Availability Groups feature are not supported because of the Simple recovery model requirement for all Advisors MSSQL databases.



# Scaling the Web Services to Increase Capacity

This page provides information about scaling your Performance Management Advisors Web Services in order to increase capacity in your environment.

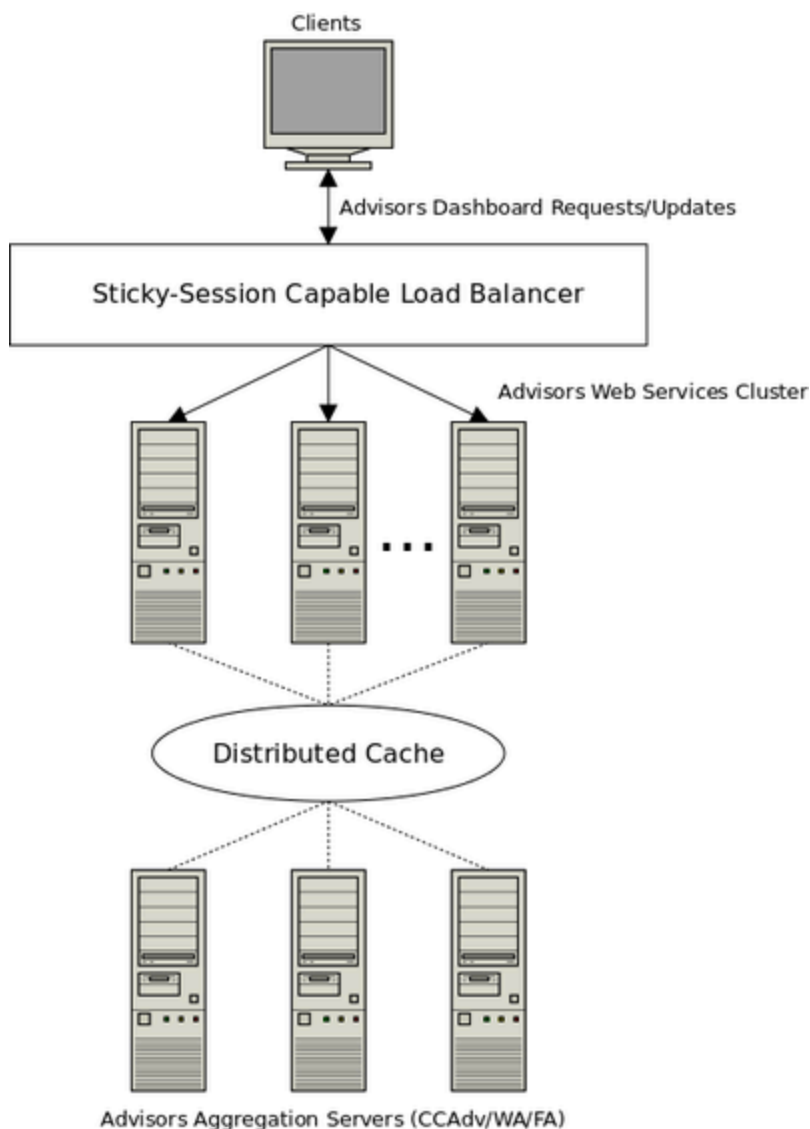
## Advisors Web Services Module

The Advisors Web Services module is offered as part of the Platform installation package. It contains the Web services responsible for delivering updates to, and handling requests for, the Contact Center Advisor, Workforce Advisor, and Frontline Advisor dashboards. These Web services retrieve the data produced by the Advisors aggregation servers, and which is held in a shared distributed cache, and deliver it to the Advisors user's dashboards that are running in a Web browser.

### Layout

The following diagram provides a high-level view of how a scalable Web services deployment is structured. Note that, for simplicity, other supporting Advisors/Genesys components are not included in the diagram.





## Scaling

To serve more Advisors dashboard users, you can deploy additional instances of the Advisors Web Services module. The Web services handle requests and updates for all Advisors modules. When adding additional user capacity, you deploy the same type of instance, regardless of the particular Advisors module that users are planning to use.

## Recommendations

- For best performance, the Advisors Web Services module should be deployed to its own server, which is not running any other major Advisors and/or Genesys components. Because the responsiveness of the Advisors dashboards at any given moment depends on the performance of these Web services, it is important to ensure that they have the necessary system resources available at all times. Avoid running resource-intensive jobs, and so on, on these instances for the best experience.



- 
- Users accessing the Web services instances are ideally distributed equally across the cluster. This might be challenging because established, persistent connections cannot be redirected to other servers. Investigating the different load distribution strategies available in your particular load balancer might be helpful in trying to maintain a healthy balance as users connect/disconnect.
  - In addition to providing load distribution, many load balancers also offer options to redirect traffic away from unresponsive servers. For availability purposes, consider having additional capacity in your Web services cluster. The Web service instances provide a health check resource that can be accessed without authentication by load balancers and other devices as a means of checking the instance's availability. See the notes on the [Health Check API](#) for technical details.



# Simplified High Availability Architecture

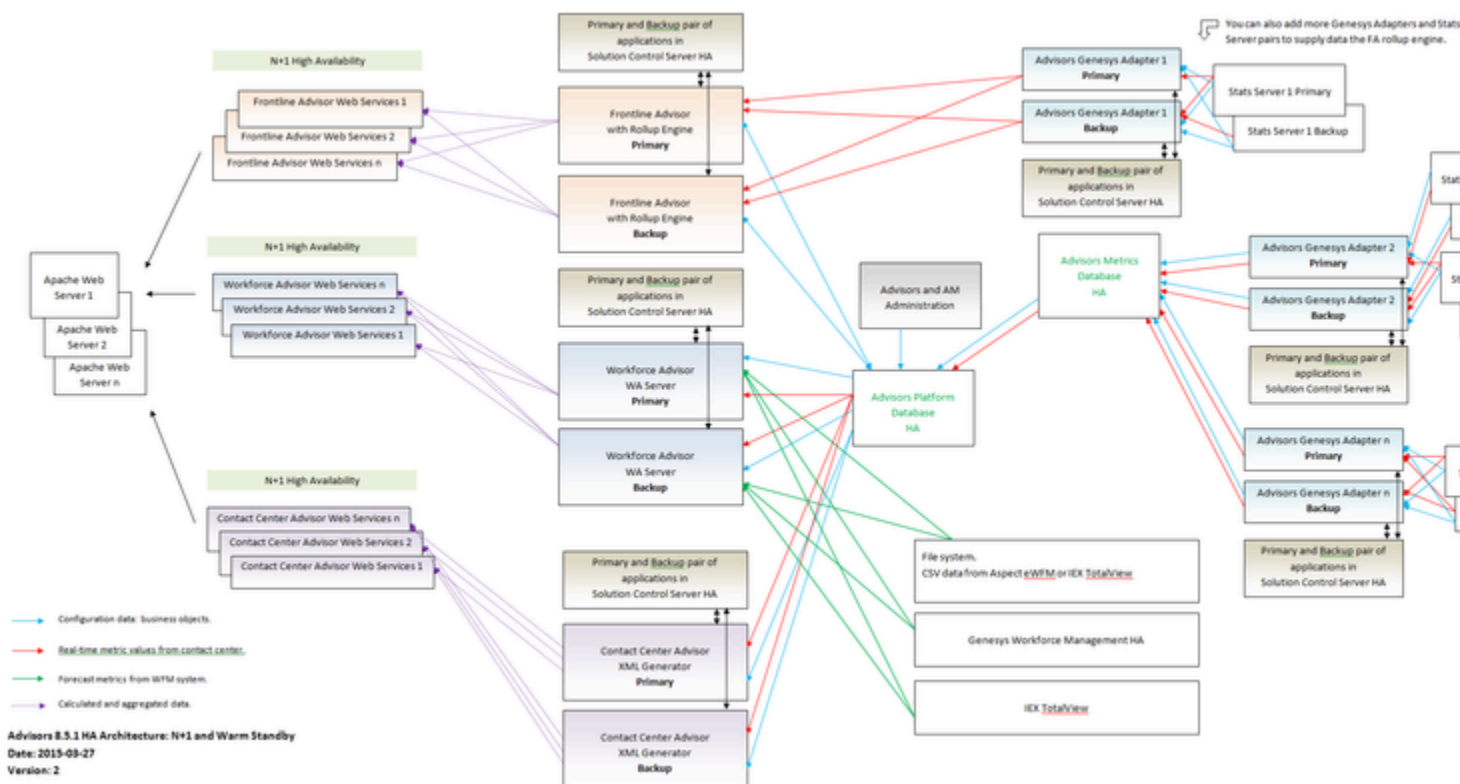
The Figure on this page shows that Advisors supports two kinds of High Availability (HA), by default.

For an N+1 HA form of HA, you can deploy the web services modules any number of times, each on a different cluster node.

For the warm standby form of HA, other modules can be deployed as primary and backup servers, each on a different cluster node and controlled by Solution Control Server.

For more details on the different kinds of support and the requirements of each, see [Integration With Solution Control Server](#).

You can also manually configure any Advisors module to offer [Cold Standby HA](#).

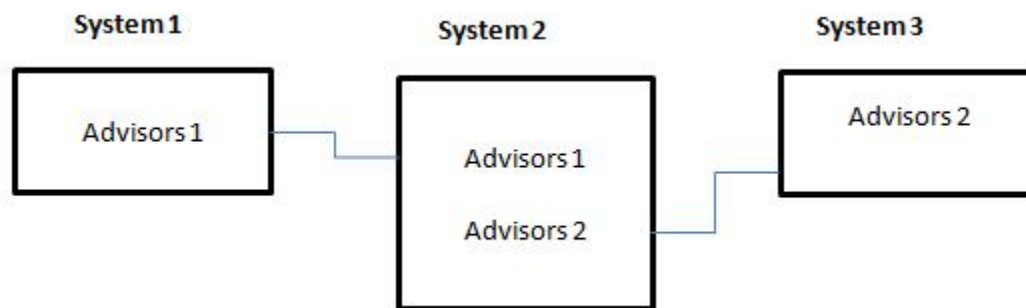


Simplified Advisors Architecture in Warm Standby Configuration



# Multiple Advisors Deployments on One System

You can deploy more than one distinct Advisors deployment on one system (see the Figure – Multiple Advisors Deployments on one System). Each Advisors deployment has its own independent configuration, and its own databases.



Multiple Advisors Deployments on one System

To manage this:

- There are three port numbers that Advisors modules use to communicate; these are stored in properties files after installation:
  - `ActiveMQ.properties` governs aspects of Java Message Service (JMS) communication.
  - `Caching.properties` defines the port used by the distributed caching facility.
- The Platform installer accepts and sets values for Apache Tomcat configurable ports. The properties of the Apache Tomcat configurable ports are defined in `apache-tomcat-<version>\conf\catalina.properties`.

The Platform application server will not work correctly if there are ports that are not defined or if there are invalid port numbers.

The Advisors installer supplies default values for these ports. It saves the values you choose, default or different, in the properties file created by the installation. You can change these values for a second deployment of Advisors, and preserve the values in the `ant.install.properties` file to be used when re-installing.

The default value in the Platform installer for the Java `activeMQ.port` is 61616.

The default values in the Platform installer for the distributed caching ports are:

- `distributed.caching.port=11211`
- `distributed.caching.maxport=11212`

The default values in the Platform installer for the Apache Tomcat configurable ports are the



following:

- HTTP Port=8080
- HTTPS Port=8443
- AJP Port=8009
- JMX Port=9999
- Management Port=8005

The following Table shows the configuration file associated with each installer screen on which you enter port-related values. The Table also shows the port properties that are saved, and which you can re-configure post-installation.

| Platform Installer Screen                | Corresponding Configuration File                 | Port Property                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Application Server Configuration         | apache-tomcat-<version>\conf\catalina.properties | HTTPPort, HTTPSPort, JMXPort, managementPort, AJPPort                                                                          |
| Cluster Node Configuration               | conf/ActiveMQ.properties                         | ActiveMQ.port                                                                                                                  |
| Cache Configuration                      | conf/Caching.properties                          | distributed.caching.port<br>distributed.caching.maxport                                                                        |
| Workforce Advisor Server - IEX TotalView | conf/WorkforceUtilization.properties             | ftpService.port<br><br>Workforce Advisor contains an FTP server that accepts data directly from the IEX TotalView data source. |

### Example

The nodes of an Advisors deployment (Advisors 1) use a set of values for the ports on every system on which the nodes are installed. For example:

- ActiveMQ.port 61616
- distributed.caching.port 11211
- distributed.caching.maxport 11212
- HTTPPort=8080
- HTTPSPort=8443
- JMXPort=9999
- AJPPort=8009
- managementPort=8005
- ftpService.port=6021

The nodes of a second Advisors deployment (Advisors 2) must use different values for the ports. For example:

- ActiveMQ.port 61617



- `distributed.caching.port 11213<`
- `distributed.caching.maxport 11214`
- `HTTPPort=8081`
- `HTTPSPort=8444`
- `JMXPort=10000`
- `AJPPort=8010`
- `managementPort=8006`
- `ftpService.port=6022`

## Recommendations for Configuration

Genesys recommends the following configuration for multiple deployments on one system:

- Separate the two Advisors deployments by tenant in the Genesys Configuration Server. If you cannot do this for any reason, then separate the object permissions for the respective connection users (that is, the Advisors user for each of the nodes) in the Configuration Server so objects are not used in both nodes.
- Use two separate Object Configuration users; one for each deployment.
- Deploy two separate Apache instances. Ensure the Apache configuration file (`httpd.conf`) for the Advisors Platform node for which you entered port numbers (that is, the node that does not use the default port numbers) includes the same HTTP and AJP ports as specified in the Platform installer. For example, if you specified AJP port 8019 and HTTP port 8015 for your second Platform instance, then the Apache configuration file must use those same port numbers for AJP and HTTP proxy passes in the `ProxyPass` sections.



# Tenant-based Routing of Advisors Objects Among Multiple Adapters and Stat Servers

You can configure a pool of adapters for both Contact Center Advisor and Frontline Advisor, and each adapter can be configured to use a pool of Stat Servers. Data Manager and the adapters use a round-robin mechanism to determine the selection of Stat Servers from the pool when requesting statistics for a given source object.

In multi-tenant configuration, each object's tenant must be considered for object routing, but not all of the Stat Servers are necessarily connected to all of the tenants. When statistics are requested on a Stat Server that is not connected to the necessary tenant, an error occurs and the Stat Server cannot report on the objects. To avoid the necessity of having to connect all of the Stat Servers to all of the tenants, Advisors applications use tenant-based routing. Tenant-based routing uses the Stat Server-tenant link, which you configure with a Genesys configuration interface such as Genesys Administrator, to determine how Data Manager will route objects to the pool of adapters and how each adapter will route objects to a particular Stat Server within the pool of Stat Servers.

Linked tenants display in the **Server Info** section of a Stat Server Application object. At startup, Data Manager and the adapters read the Stat Server-to-tenant associations that are present in Configuration Server. They use that information to determine to which Stat Server to route the statistics request for a particular source object.

For information about how to create an Application object, including how to add a tenant to the Application, see the [Applications](#) page in the *Genesys Administrator Extension Help*.

Carefully plan and configure the Stat Server-tenant links. Tenant-based routing of objects among Stat Servers can sometimes result in an unequal distribution of statistics among the configured pool of Stat Servers, which can, in turn, lead to an unequal distribution of statistics among the adapters. When configuring the tenant connections to Stat Servers, try to take into account the number of source objects that will be served from each linked tenant. If certain tenants have fewer objects for Advisors than others, then consider linking multiple tenants to each Stat Server as a way to avoid overloading some of the Stat Servers with large numbers of objects.

## Making Updates to Stat Server-Tenant Links after Initial Configuration

Genesys recommends that you avoid making changes to the Stat Server-tenant links after the Stat Servers are in use in an Advisors deployment. Making changes to the Stat Server-tenant links after the configuration is established and in use can negatively impact performance in the Advisors installation because an existing, stored distribution mapping of objects-to-Stat Servers is always used as long as it is relevant. That means that the mapping is not modified for the sake of equal re-distribution of statistics.

For example, if you add a new tenant to a Stat Server, the Stat Server and the corresponding adapter would be considered only for any *new* source objects from that tenant. No automatic re-routing of



statistics is performed for objects that have been requested previously from other Stat Servers. If, on the other hand, you remove a tenant from a Stat Server, the process of closing the corresponding object's statistics on that Stat Server could take a long time to finish. There is no automated process for closing the statistics in this scenario.

If something changes in your enterprise, and you must make a change to the Stat Server-tenant links, then you can force a re-distribution of statistics among the group of Stat Servers. See the following procedure.

## Procedure: Forcing the re-distribution of statistics among an adapter's pool of Stat Servers

**Purpose:** Use this procedure to force a re-distribution of statistics among the Stat Servers when you add a Stat Server (or more than one) to an adapter's configuration.

### Steps

1. Before making any changes, remove all of the existing Stat Server connections from the adapter's Application object.
2. Restart the adapter with no Stat Server connections.
3. Add the new Stat Server connection(s).
4. Restart the adapters, XML Generator, and Frontline Advisor.

## Tenant-Based Routing and the Backup Stat Server

If you use redundant Stat Server pairs in your environment, then tenants that are linked to a backup Stat Server must exactly match the list of tenants that are linked to the primary Stat Server. The Stat Server type (CORE, MULTIMEDIA, or THIRDPARTYMEDIA) must also match exactly on the primary and backup Stat Servers of a given pair. The Genesys configuration interface (for example, Genesys Administrator) automatically updates the configuration on the backup Stat Server Application when you modify the tenant or Stat Server type configuration on the primary Stat Server Application, provided that the backup Stat Server is correctly configured on the primary Stat Server Application object.

## Migration Information

If you already have an Advisors deployment running, the default behavior is for the existing object-to-Stat Server mapping to be used for the distribution after you migrate to release 8.5.2. Distributing



statistics based on the Stat Server tenant is not used by default, but is used for any new object that you add to configuration. However, after migrating to release 8.5.2, tenant-based statistics routing can be enforced for the existing objects by removing the existing object-Stat Server mappings that are stored in the Advisors Platform database. The procedure for this is the same as the procedure for redistributing the statistics when new Stat Servers are added to the configuration.



---

# Application Monitoring

## JMX

There is a variety of application information which can be accessed via the Java Management Extensions (JMX). This information can be accessed in a customized fashion using the JMX API, or more generically using popular JMX clients like [jconsole](#), [jvisualvm](#), etc.

JMX connections can be made by adding the appropriate Java options in Tomcat. These options have already been added to the `setenv.sh` and `setenv.bat` files in the Advisors installation Tomcat bin directory. Uncommenting these options and adding the port and host information for your environment will allow for the establishing of JMX connections.

## MBean Resources

The following is not a comprehensive list of all MBeans in Advisors, but some which may be useful.

### Catalina

These MBeans include

- Tomcat connector statistics. Includes various connection-related statistics
- Server configuration and port information
- Classloader configuration
- Database connection information

### `com.genesys.advisors.advws.websocket`

Exposes information for managed websocket connections

- Number of users currently connected.
- Number of user-sessions currently established. Individual users may have multiple open connections in separate machines, browsers, tabs, etc
- Number of users actively using the system within the last x minutes

### `com.genesys.advisors.datamanager`

Advisors Genesys Adapter related information

- Adapter configuration information. Note: This includes a warning that it should not be invoked for large hierarchies



## `com.genesys(lab).advisors.fa.engine`

These MBeans are only present when connected to installations which include the FA aggregation server. Includes

- Various metric aggregation process information
- Activity information for incoming data from adapters configured for FA

## Application Profiling

The Java Virtual Machine (JVM) exposes performance and resource utilization information via JMX. This may be useful for monitoring things such as:

- CPU and memory utilization
- Thread activity
- Garbage collection activity



# Health Check API for the Platform Web Services Node

Starting with release 8.5.2, the Advisors Web services provide an API to check the health of the Web server nodes. For example, you can configure the load balancer to access the `http://<host:port>/adv/rest/health` URL to check the health of an Advisors Web services node. This is an unauthenticated resource; it can be accessed without first logging in.

The service returns an HTTP status code of 200 when the Web server is up and running. The service returns a non-200 HTTP status code when the Web server is not reachable.



# Establishing a TLS Connection to Genesys Configuration Server

Performance Management Advisors supports an optional TLS connection to the Genesys Configuration Server. Both the Advisors Suite Server (the Platform server) and the Advisors Genesys Adapter (AGA) can establish individual TLS connections to the Configuration Server. Contact Center Advisor (CCAdv), Workforce Advisor (WA), and Frontline Advisor (FA) have a secure connection to the Configuration Server if you enable a TLS connection on Advisors Platform.

TLS 1.2 is supported on connections to the Configuration Server starting with Advisors release 8.5.2. No additional configuration is required on the Advisors client side to enable TLS 1.2. For information about possible additional configuration on the server side for your environment, see the [protocol compatibility section](#) of the *Management Framework Deployment Guide*.

If you plan to connect to the Configuration Server using TLS, you must first do the following:

1. Create a TLS properties file, as explained in the **TLS Properties File** section below.
2. Configure a secure port for Genesys Configuration Server. For more information, see the [Genesys Security Deployment Guide](#).
3. Configure security certificates.
4. Configure the security providers and issue security certificates. For more information, see the [Genesys Platform SDK Developer's Guide](#).
5. Assign a certificate to the Configuration Server host. For more information, see the [Genesys Security Deployment Guide](#).

You can use the same certificates for both AGA and Advisors Platform if you enable a TLS connection on both, because all the same components are involved in the subsequent interactions across the TLS connection.

To configure a TLS connection to the Configuration Server, you can select the option to do so on the installation screen when you deploy Advisors Platform and AGA, or you can enable TLS post-deployment using the properties files. If you have a backup Genesys Configuration Server and you enable a TLS connection to the primary Configuration Server when deploying AGA, AGA also connects to the backup Configuration Server using TLS.

If a TLS connection to Configuration Server cannot be established when you start the installed instance of Advisors Platform or AGA, error messages are logged in the log file. You can correct the TLS properties supplied during installation in the relevant property file post-installation.

## Advisors Configuration Properties Files for TLS

The Advisors Platform properties file, <PLATFORM\_INSTALL>/conf/GenesysConfig.properties, has the following TLS-related properties:

---



- `genesys.configServer.tlsproperties.file`
- `genesys.configServer.tls.port`
- `genesys.configServer.tls.enabled`

The AGA properties file, `<AGA_INSTALL>/conf/inf_genesys_adapter.properties`, has the following TLS-related properties:

- `genesys_connector.configServer.tls.enabled`
- `genesys_connector.configServer.tls.port`
- `genesys_connector.configServer.tlsproperties.file`

You can enable or disable the TLS connection to Configuration Server by changing the `configServer.tls.enabled` flag to `true` (enables TLS) or `false` (disables TLS) on a Platform installation or on an AGA installation.

### Important

If you did not enable TLS initially during deployment, you can change the `configServer.tls.enabled` flag to `true`, but you must also add the TLS port and the TLS property file information using the relevant properties file (Platform or AGA) to fully enable TLS support post-installation.

## Supported TLS Port Mode and Providers

Configure the port mode on the Configuration Server. Although there are three port modes for TLS configuration, only the upgrade port mode is supported for an Advisors TLS connection to Genesys Configuration Server. The upgrade port mode allows an unsecured connection to be established; the connection switches to TLS mode only after Advisors retrieves the TLS settings from Configuration Server.

## Supported TLS Providers

Advisors support the following security providers:

- PEM
- MSCAPI
- PKCS#11



## TLS Properties File

The TLS properties file is not supplied with Advisors; it is unique to your enterprise.

### Important

You must create a TLS properties file before deploying Advisors Platform or AGA if you intend to enable a TLS connection to the Genesys Configuration Server during Advisors installation. The Advisors Platform and AGA installers prompt for the location of the TLS properties file.

The TLS configuration required to support each provider varies slightly, but each can be configured uniquely in a properties file. You can save the TLS properties file using any filename you choose.

### Important

On a Windows OS, do not use a backslash (/) in the file path to separate folders; use a slash (/) only.

The TLS properties file uses a simple key value pair format. On each line of the file, a key is followed by an equal sign (=), which is followed by a value for the key. For example:

```
provider=PEM
certificate=C:/advisors/security/conf/client1-cert.pem
certificate-key=C:/advisors/security/conf/client1-key.pem
trusted-ca=C:/advisors/security/conf/ca.pem
tls-crl=C:/advisors/security/conf/crl.pem
tls-mutual=0
```

In the preceding example, the provider key has a value of PEM, identifying the security provider type. For this particular provider, additional security parameters (keys) must be supplied, and which are included in the example. You must copy the certificate files to a folder on the local hard drive.

The TLS properties file path you enter during installation (or in the Advisors Platform or AGA properties file post-installation) points to those security files.

### Important

The TLS property flags `tls=0` and `tls=1` are valid properties to indicate whether the TLS connection is enabled or disabled, but the `Advisors configServer.tls.enabled` property flag overrides the TLS property set in the TLS properties file. That is, setting or resetting the TLS property to indicate TLS is enabled or disabled in the `tls.properties` file has no effect on an Advisors connection to Configuration Server.



For information about supported TLS properties, see the relevant section in the [Genesys Platform SDK Developer's Guide](#).

## Troubleshooting the TLS Connection

When Advisors Platform or AGA attempt to establish the TLS connection to Configuration Server, progress is written in the log file. You can ignore a warning message in the log file that indicates that there is no TLS configuration for Advisors found in the Configuration Server. Advisors is not an application configured in Configuration Server, therefore it returns an empty configuration and relies on the TLS configuration supplied by the connection properties.

For information about troubleshooting issues with TLS connections, see [Genesys Security Deployment Guide](#).



---

# Data Manager

The Advisors Data Manager provides the following functionality:

- Support for multiple Genesys and Cisco Adapters.
- Load balancing across multiple adapters using the same data source in a single Genesys environment.
- Management of the flow of statistics from Advisors Genesys Adapters (AGA) to both Frontline Advisor (FA) and Contact Center Advisor/Workforce Advisor (CCAdv/WA).
- Maintenance of the authoritative configuration data. Data Manager monitors adapters to ensure that the issued statistics conform to its configuration.
- Use of statistics template definitions to determine the statistics requests that need to be sent to each AGA for each Advisors module (such as CCAdv or FA).
- Use of a handshake protocol to establish connection with all adapters.

## Installation and Configuration

During the installation of any adapter, the installation wizard might prompt you for the following information:

- The connection details for the Platform database.
- A unique name for the adapter and the source environment (the latter is requested only in a Cisco environment).

This information, along with the adapter's host name, port, and type (GENESYS or CISC0) is written to the Platform database. Data Manager uses this configuration information to establish connections to all installed adapters.

The adapter type is always set to either GENESYS or CISC0. You must register all AGAs, although you can choose to bypass Advisors Cisco adapter registration.

## Object Configuration User account

You must configure a user account in Configuration Server so that security permissions can be assigned to allow object configuration for the CCAdv module in the Advisors Administration module (**Base Object Configuration** page). This is the *Object Configuration User*. See [Create the Data Manager Base Object Configuration User](#) for more information.

### Important

This user must be created in the Configuration Server *before* you install Advisors Platform. Advisors Platform installer prompts you for the account name.



## Account Permissions for Data Manager

**Object Configuration User**—You must create the Object Configuration User account in the Genesys Configuration Layer. You create this user account in Configuration Server as a container for security permissions for objects (agent groups, queues, and calling lists). The Object Configuration User requires Read permission for any object that should be considered a configured or monitored object.

**Platform Configuration Server User**—The Platform Configuration Server user (that is, the Advisors User account) also requires specific permissions to manage object configuration related to Data Manager in the Genesys configuration interface. See [Create the Advisors User Account](#).

## Configuration in Advisors Administration Module

In the administration module, the link to the **Base Object Configuration** page is under **Genesys Adapters** (the **Genesys Adapters** page is read-only). You use the **Base Object Configuration** page to manage objects.

### Base Object Configuration Considerations

You must deploy the Contact Center Advisor application (including XML Generator) and configure the Genesys metric sources before you can use the Genesys **Base Object Configuration** page in the Advisors administration module. Data manager requests no statistics for pre-configured objects until the CCAdv module, XML Generator, and Genesys metric data sources are deployed and working.

The **Base Object Configuration** page has the following characteristics:

- The object configuration is done once and independently of any underlying adapters.
- You can identify and filter objects by object type on both mapping screens that display on the page.
- The page displays the count of configured objects. Calling list objects are counted as queues.
- The page prevents contradictory configuration. If you select **No Filter** for an object and then later attempt to assign a filter, you receive an error message. You must de-select **No Filter** before you can assign a filter to that object.
- The associations that display on the **Base Object Configuration** page represent a global configuration for CCAdv/WA.

## Configuration Server Integration

Data Manager uses the Configuration Server connection provided by Advisors Platform to load Genesys object metadata from Configuration Server. Changes in configuration made on the **Base Object Configuration** page are saved in the Configuration Server for incorporation. Therefore, the Configuration Server system user that is configured on the Advisors Platform installation (that is, the Advisors user account) should have Change and Change Permissions privileges on the agent groups or queues that are monitored, as well as Read and Read Privilege access permissions for the Advisors User account (see [Create the Advisors User Account](#)).

---



Using your Genesys configuration interface, you create the Object Configuration User account and assign security permissions for objects (agent groups, calling lists, and queues) to the account. The agent groups, calling lists, and queues to which the Object Configuration User has **Read** access permission are treated as the configured objects for CCAdv/WA. If this user has access to agent groups, calling lists, or queues when Data Manager starts, Data Manager immediately issues statistics requests to the configured Genesys Adapter(s).

## How Configuration Objects Are Identified

The Configuration Server metadata includes:

- Object Type
- Object ID
- External ID
- Source Environment

The Object Type/Object ID combination (known as the *node ID*) enables an object to be uniquely identified. This node ID is used when applications need to reference a specific object in Configuration Server. The object referenced by the node ID will have a different identifier in the external source environment. Data Manager is responsible for translating the node ID provided by the application into the appropriate external ID when forwarding requests to the appropriate adapter.

The object identifier in metadata is composed of the following:

- ObjectID: The DBID for the object (provided by Configuration Server)
- ObjectType: One of Agent, AgentGroup, or Queue
- TenantName
- ObjectName:
  - For Genesys agents: EmployeeId
  - For Agent Groups and Queues: the name provided by Configuration Server
  - For Cisco Agents: N/A

Genesys recommends that one single data source supplies all statistics of a specific statistic type for a given object.

## Propagation of Configuration Changes Made in Configuration Server

Changes made to configured objects (agent groups, queues, calling lists, or interaction queues) affect the **Base Object Configuration** page in the Advisors administration module in the following ways:

- The addition of an object to the Configuration Server is reflected on the **Base Object Configuration** page when the page is reloaded.
  - A name change to an existing object is reflected on the **Base Object Configuration** page when the page is reloaded.
  - Any change in an object's Annex properties, such as Filter or Queue Type, is reflected on the **Base Object Configuration** page on restart of the Platform server.
-



- The addition of the **Read** permission for an object (either new or existing) for the Object Configuration User is reflected on the **Base Object Configuration** page only after the overnight refresh or on restart of the Platform server. If you change one or more configuration objects to make them monitored objects, the additional statistics for those additional objects are not immediately requested; instead, they are scheduled to be picked up during the overnight refresh. Similarly, if you remove the **Read** permission on an object for the Object Configuration User, statistics are not closed immediately—that happens during the overnight refresh.

If you need any of the above changes (adding an object or removing an object to or from being monitored) to be immediately available, make the changes on the **Base Object Configuration** page instead of making them in your Genesys configuration interface.

## Base Object Configuration Page Users and Permissions

The master list of objects on the **Base Object Configuration** page in the Advisors administration module is the list of agent groups, calling lists, and queues for which the Advisors User account has Read access permission.

When the administrator adds more objects to monitor, the Object Configuration User is automatically granted Read access permission for those objects in Configuration Server. When the administrator removes existing configured objects, the Read access permission for those objects is revoked for the Object Configuration User.

The objects for which the Object Configuration User has Read permission should always be the same set or a subset of the objects for which the Advisors User account has Read access permission.

### Important

- If there are objects for which the Object Configuration User has Read access permission, but the Advisors User account does not, those objects are not considered and do not display on the **Base Object Configuration** page.
- Genesys recommends that you always configure the Advisors User account and the Object Configuration User to be two distinct accounts (not one user account used as both). If one account is used for both users, the administrative user could not add new objects using the **Base Object Configuration** page (all objects would be configured objects); the user could view and remove currently-configured objects only.

## Filter Configuration

The master list of filters for Advisors (for CCAdv, WA, or FA) comes from the Business Attributes configured in the Configuration Server. You can see the list under **Advisors Filters** in the Advisors Business Attributes section of your Genesys configuration interface.

### Important

The Advisors Filters business attribute must exist on one—and only one—tenant.



Genesys recommends you configure the Advisors Filters business attribute on a tenant that is the default tenant for the Advisors suite installation, on which you configure all Advisors metadata. If there are Advisors Filters business attributes configured on multiple tenants, an error message displays when AGA starts, and the filters are not loaded.

## Configuring the Advisors Filters

You can find an Advisors filter expression in your Genesys configuration interface. For example, in Configuration Manager, the filter expression is in the **Description** field on the **General** tab of the filter's **Properties** window.

### Tip

In a migration scenario, the Migration utility migrates existing filters from the previously-used Stat Server configuration to be the Advisors Filter business attributes, and populates the **Description** field with the filter expression. You configure any additional filters you require by entering the filter expression as the description of the filter.

When filters are associated with configured objects on the **Base Object Configuration** page in the Advisors administration module, the filter and object combination is stored on the **Annex** tab of the object's **Properties** window in the Genesys configuration interface.

Data Manager uses the configured filters from the **Annex** properties of the object when it requests statistics. When one or more filter combinations are applied, Data Manager requests statistics for each filter. If no filters are applied to an object, then only one statistic is requested for each source metric for that object. However, as an example, if three filters (Gold, Silver and Platinum) are combined with an ACD Queue object, then three variations of CallsHandled would be requested. The three filters are individually applied to yield three statistics: CallsHandled.Gold, CallsHandled.Silver, and CallsHandled.Platinum.

## Filters and Interaction Queues

Filter categorization is not applicable for interaction queue statistics. **No Filter** is the only option you can successfully apply to interaction queues. If you attempt to combine filters with an interaction queue, the filters are discarded and the **No Filter** option is automatically selected again.

## Filters and Calling Lists

Do not associate a statistic filter with a calling list because Stat Server ignores this type of filter on a calling list statistic.



## Frontline Advisor Base Object Configuration

For each source environment in which a given object is present, a corresponding object must exist in the Genesys environment.

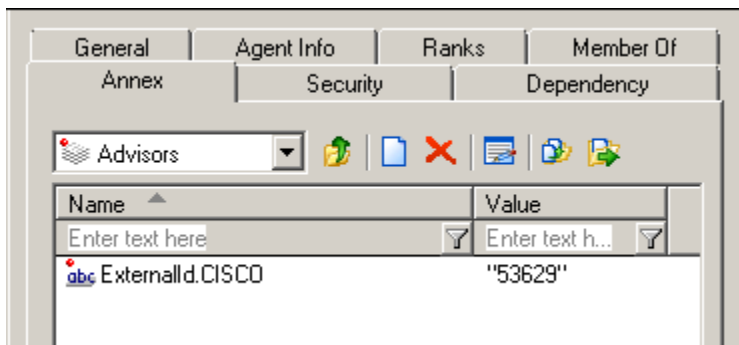
When the object already exists in the Genesys environment (that is, it handles interactions monitored by Genesys components), the External ID has the format: [ Tenant Name ] Employee ID

For all other source environments, the object must be created and an entry must be added to the object's **Annex** tab under an Advisors section. The key for each such entry has the format: ExternalId.SourceEnvironment

The value is the ExternalID itself.

- For AGAs, the source environment is always GENESYS.
- The Advisors Cisco Adapter (ACA) installation wizard prompts for the environment name, with the default value CISCO.

For example, if you are using an ACA, and you want to set the External ID to be the Agent Skill ID, the configuration would look as shown in the following figure:



Setting the External ID for a Cisco agent to be the agent's Agent Skill ID

## Load Balancing

When two or more adapters share the same source environment, they are connected to the same underlying data provider infrastructure and, therefore, are all able to provide the same set of source metrics. Data Manager is free to select from any adapter with the same source environment to issue a given statistic. Data Manager attempts to distribute sets of statistics for a given source evenly across all adapters associated with that source.

If you add adapters to your deployment after the initially-installed adapters are running, the existing statistics are not automatically re-routed to the newly-added adapters. That is, load balancing is not redistributed among all the adapters, including the ones you added. For the procedure to redistribute the statistics load balancing to include newly-deployed adapters, see [Re-distribute Stats Load when Adapters are Added](#).



Once a statistic is opened with an adapter for a given object, all subsequent statistics for that object will be opened using the same adapter. This helps maintain (but does not guarantee) consistency among related metrics reported for this object.

Statistics for a given object can span multiple adapters, but only if the associated metrics have different Stat Server Type (SST) attributes. Examples of SST include Core (which all Stat Servers can provide), Interaction Queue, and Open Media. Statistics are partitioned by (object, SST). Each (object, SST) group is issued against the same adapter. The adapter requires the following:

- A source environment that matches the object's External ID
- A Stat Server Type supported by the adapter

If a limited number of adapters support metrics of a specific Stat Server Type, such as Open Media, statistics of this type constitute the bulk of statistics issued to these adapters. Statistics for more generally-supported metrics, such as Voice, are concentrated with adapters that do not support such specialized statistic types.

If you have multiple adapter instances installed, make sure that you start, or restart, all of them at the same time.

## Cisco Impact

Advisors Cisco Adapter is used with Frontline Advisor only. Because ACA automatically collects metrics for all agents in that source environment, there is no benefit to load balancing across multiple instances. The only scenario in which multiple ACAs should be installed is if they provide metrics from separate HDS/AWDB source environments.

## Troubleshooting Data Manager

If you are experiencing issues with Data Manager, check for the problems described in this section.

### The adapter is unavailable

If there is one or more AGA installed and configured for a given module, but the adapter is not running or is unreachable, Data Manager cannot request statistics for that module. Monitor the status of the AGA applications in Genesys Administrator or the Solution Control Interface (SCI).

### Data Manager does not redistribute statistics requests to other adapters when one adapter's service is stopped

When one or more adapter (ACA or AGA) instances are installed, ensure that they are always in use. A deployed adapter that is not running can prevent Data Manager from sending requests to the other live adapters. If you have a deployed adapter that is not going to be in use, Genesys recommends that you remove the adapter configuration from the Advisors Platform table ADAPTER\_INSTANCES to prevent disruption of service in the active adapters.

If you have multiple adapter instances installed, make sure that you start, or restart, all of them at the same time.



If you have a deployed but inactive adapter, use the following procedure to remove all the objects from its configuration.

## Procedure:

### Steps

1. Determine which objects are associated with the inactive adapter:
  - a. Run the following statement against the Advisors Platform database – this provides the ID value for each adapter instance:

```
select adapter_instance_id, name from adapter_instances
```
  - b. Run the following statement against the Advisors Platform database – this shows you which Stat Server pairs are associated with the adapter and which objects are associated with the Stat Server pair for each adapter:



---

```
SELECT * FROM STAT_GROUP_OBJ_MAPPING where STAT_GROUP_ID in (select STAT_GROUP_ID from STAT_GROUP_CONFIG where  
ss_pair_id in (select ss_pair_id from ADAPTER_STAT_SERVER where ADAPTER_INSTANCE_ID = <ID of adapter>))
```



Remove the objects associated with the Stat Server pair for the adapter that you must delete from the table.

2. To remove the identified objects, run the following statement:



---

```
DELETE FROM STAT_GROUP_OBJ_MAPPING where STAT_GROUP_ID in (select STAT_GROUP_ID from STAT_GROUP_CONFIG where  
ss_pair_id in (select ss_pair_id from ADAPTER_STAT_SERVER where ADAPTER_INSTANCE_ID = <ID of adapter>))
```



3. To remove the Stat Server pair rows associated with the adapter, run the following statement:

```
Delete from adapter_stat_server where adapter_instance_id = <ID of adapter to delete>
```

4. To delete the adapter\_instance row, run the following statement:

```
Delete from adapter_instances where adapter_instance_id = <ID of adapter to delete>
```

## No Object Configuration User specified when installing Advisors Platform

For the CCAdv module, an Object Configuration User must be specified when you install Advisors Platform. The same is true when you install CCAdv XML Generator; you must specify the Object Configuration User. If configuration of this user name is omitted, no statistics are issued with the adapters. This is indicated by an information message in the XML Generator log file. The information message indicates that no statistics are requested because no agent groups and queues are found. To correct this:

1. Update `genesys.configServer.objectconfig-username` in the `Platform GenesysConfig.properties` file.
2. Restart the Advisors server and XML Generator after you update the properties file.

## No Object Configuration User exists in Configuration Server

If the Object Configuration User does not exist in the Genesys Configuration Server, an error message is logged in the form of an exception. To correct this issue:

1. Create the user in Configuration Server.
2. Update `genesys.configServer.objectconfig-username` in the `Platform GenesysConfig.properties` file.
3. Restart the Advisors server and XML Generator after you update the properties file.

## Base Object Configuration page is empty – unable to publish CCAdv base objects

Ensure the administration user who is logged in to the Advisors administration module (workbench) has been assigned the Read permission for the tenant under which the source objects exist that the user must monitor.

## Data Manager reports an error – no Stat Server connections are open

If Data Manager reports that no Stat Server connections are open, check the following:

- Ensure your Advisors Genesys Adapters are configured with Stat Servers. See [Manage Advisors Stat Server Instances](#).



- 
- Ensure that the configured Stat Servers are up and running.



# Providing a User Interface for Users with Visual Impairment

Contact Center Advisor, Workforce Advisor, and Frontline Advisor support JAWS Standard software, so you can provide an accessibility interface for users with visual impairment. JAWS software provides audio and a series of keyboard shortcuts for navigating the tabulated information on the screen. If you have users in your enterprise who require this type of user interface, you must ensure those users have Internet Explorer 6 or higher (Genesys recommends that you use Internet Explorer 8) to use the JAWS functionality.

The CCAAdv login page URL uses the following format:

`http(s)://<server>[:port]/ca-xml/accessibleDashboard?language=<en|de|fr>`

The WA login page URL uses the following format:

`http(s)://<server>[:port]/wu/accessibleDashboard?language=<en|de|fr>`

The FA login page URL uses the following format:

`http(s)://<server>[:port]/fa/accessibleSupervisorDashboard?language=<en|de|fr>`

See Release Notes specific to your Advisors software release for the list of supported languages—not all languages are supported in all releases.

The server and port variables relate to the server or servers on which you have installed FA, CCAAdv, and WA accessibility services respectively. Users specify their language preference as part of the URL; again, no additional configuration is required to provide language options.



# Advisors Software Distribution Contents

Click the links below to view the software contents that Genesys provides for each Performance Management Advisors product.

## [+] Advisors Platform

| Distribution Artifacts                                                                             | Contents                                                 | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| advisors-platform-installer-<br><version>.jar                                                      | The installation file for Advisors Platform.             | In release 8.5.2, you use the Advisors Platform installation wizard to install the Advisors Web services and to configure available integration with Genesys Pulse. For detailed information about the Advisors Platform installation wizard, see <a href="#">Deploying Advisors Platform</a> . |
| baseweb-<version>-static-web.zip                                                                   | A copy of the static files that can be served by Apache. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>supplement/</b><br>advisors-migration-wizard-<version>.jar<br>user-migration-util-<version>.zip | The Advisors migration utilities.                        | See <a href="#">User Migration Utility and Object</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |



| Distribution Artifacts                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <a href="#">Migration Utility</a> in the <i>Genesys Performance Management Advisors Migration Guide</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>platform-database-sql/mssql/</b><br><br>advisors-platform-new-database-<version>.sql<br>advisors-platform-migrateSchema_<from-versions>_<to-version>.sql<br>Readme-advisors-platform-migrate_<from-versions>_<to-version>.txt | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. ...-new-database-8.5.202.09.sql<br/>Creates database objects for the MS SQL Platform database after the Platform database is created.</li> <li>2. ...-migrateSchema_8.5.101(102)_8.5.202.09.sql<br/>The scripts to update an existing MS SQL Platform database. The scripts are applicable to Advisors release 8.5.102 and to the release immediately preceding 8.5.102 (that is, release 8.5.101.21).</li> </ol> | For additional details, see the ReadMe file, if present. The Readme-advisors-platform-migrate_8.5.101(102)_ file is applicable to Advisors release 8.5.102 and to the release immediately preceding 8.5.102 (that is, release 8.5.101.21). Also see the <a href="#">Release Notes</a> .<br><br>To create an MS SQL database for Advisors, see instructions on the <a href="#">Creating a SQL Server Database</a> page in this Guide. |



| Distribution Artifacts                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>To migrate an Advisors Platform database, see instructions on the <a href="#">Migrating Databases to Advisors Release 8.5.2</a> page in the <i>Genesys Performance Management Advisors Migration Guide</i>.</p>                                                |
| <p><b>platform-database-sql/oracle/</b></p> <p>advisors-platform-&lt;version&gt;_INMEMORY.sql<br/> advisors-platform-&lt;version&gt;_NO_INMEMORY.sql<br/> advisors-platform-&lt;version&gt;_ObjectsCustom.sql<br/> advisors-platform-&lt;version&gt;_ObjectsDefault.sql<br/> advisors-platform-&lt;version&gt;_ObjectsPlus.sql<br/> advisors-platform-&lt;version&gt;_Schema.sql<br/> advisors-platform-&lt;version&gt;_TBS.sql<br/> advisors-platform-&lt;version&gt;_User.sql<br/> advisors-platform-migrateSchema_&lt;from-versions&gt;_&lt;to-version&gt;.sql<br/> Readme-advisors-platform-migrate_&lt;from-versions&gt;_&lt;to-version&gt;.txt</p> <p>Any additional files in the folder are not to be executed manually. They are called automatically within the sql*Plus script during runtime.</p> | <p>The creation scripts for the Platform database for Oracle.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. ..._TBS.sql<br/> To be executed by a database user who has permission to create tablespaces. The script generates a resulting script, runTbsCre.sql, based on the user dialog input. The script issues a prompt which allows you to postpone the execution of the resulting script. If necessary, the resulting script can be customized to meet your needs and environment and executed later. A minimum requirement is to create at least one user default tablespace and a separate user temporary tablespace exclusively for the Platform user/schema.</li> </ol> <p>In most cases, tablespaces are created by your DBA. The file can be used for DBA information as it shows sizing and possible table distribution among multiple tablespaces. Note, the sizing must be adjusted before the script execution. If created by the DBA, the DBA provides the tablespaces information to the engineer who proceeds with the installation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. ..._User.sql<br/> Creates Platform user and schema. To be executed by a database user who has permission to create other users. In most cases, users are created by your DBA. The file can be used as is or for DBA information as it shows user permission</li> </ol> | <p>The distribution contains several folders:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The files contained in the platform database - sql\oracle folder are for deployment/migration with an Oracle database that has Java Virtual Machine JServer</li> </ul> |



| Distribution Artifacts | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                        | and tablespace requirements. If the user/schema is created by DBA, the DBA provides the relevant information to the engineer who proceeds with the installation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | installed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                        | 3. ..._ObjectsPlus.sql<br>An SQL*Plus script that creates all platform database objects. To be executed by the previously-created Platform user and after all planned tablespaces are created.                                                                                                                                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The files contained in the platform database - sql\oracle\oracleNoJServer are for deployment/migration with an Oracle database that does not have the Java Virtual Machine JServer installed.</li> </ul> |
|                        | 4. ..._ObjectsCustom.sql<br>An alternate script that has the same purpose as ..._ObjectsPlus.sql, but can be executed from Oracle Sql Developer by the previously-created Platform user and after all planned tablespaces are created. The script allows table and index distribution among multiple tablespaces by issuing pop-up prompts.                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                        | 5. ..._ObjectsDefault.sql<br>An alternate script similar to ..._ObjectsCustom.sql that has the same purpose as ..._ObjectsPlus.sql. To be executed from Oracle Sql Developer by the previously-created Platform user. The script does not issue any pop-up prompts and creates all Platform database objects in the Platform user default tablespace assigned during Platform user creation. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                        | 6. ..._Schema.sql<br>Creates the Platform user, schema, and all database objects. To be executed by a database user who has permission to create other users. An alternate script that replaces, and has the same purpose as ..._User.sql and ..._ObjectsPlus.sql combined.                                                                                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The CISC0 folder contains a script that must be applied in installations with a CISC0</li> </ul>                                                                                                         |
|                        | 7. ..._INMEMORY.sql<br>You use this script if you run the Oracle 12C In-Memory option. For information about using this script, see <a href="#">Migrating Databases to Advisors Release 8.5.2</a> in the <i>Genesys Performance Management Advisors Migration Guide</i> .                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                        | 8. ..._NO_INMEMORY.sql<br>You use this script to revert the changes to the metrics schema if you previously executed the ..._INMEMORY.sql script. For information about using this script, see                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |



| Distribution Artifacts | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>data source, in addition to the regular deployment or migration script.</p> <p>For additional details, see the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Read me - advisors - platform - &lt;version&gt;.txt, if present. Otherwise, see the <a href="#">Release Notes</a>.</li> <li>Read me - advisors - platform - migrate_8.5.101(102)_8.5.202.09.txt, if present.</li> </ul> |
|                        | <p><a href="#">Migrating Databases to Advisors Release 8.5.2</a> in the <i>Genesys Performance Management Advisors Migration Guide</i>.</p> <p>9. advisors-platform-migrateSchema_8.5.101(102)_8.5.202.09.sql</p> <p>The scripts to update an existing Oracle Platform database. The scripts are applicable to Advisors release 8.5.102 and to the release immediately preceding 8.5.102 (that is, release 8.5.101.21).</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |



| Distribution Artifacts                    | Contents                                                                                                                                               | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                           |                                                                                                                                                        | The ReadMe file is applicable to Advisors release 8.5.102 and to the release immediately preceding 8.5.102 (that is, release 8.5.101.21). Otherwise, see the <a href="#">Release Notes</a> . |
| .../bulkconfig/independent/ccadvbulkload/ | The CCAdv bulk configuration tool for deployments in which you have specified the independent configuration mode for CCAdv (and WA, if you deploy it). | To use the CCAdv bulk configuration tool, see instructions on the <a href="#">CCAdv Bulk Configuration - Independent Mode</a> page in this Guide.                                            |
| .../bulkconfig/independent/wa-bulkload/   | The WA bulk configuration tool for deployments in which you have specified the independent configuration mode for CCAdv and WA.                        | To use the WA bulk configuration tool, see instructions on the <a href="#">WA Bulk Configuration</a>                                                                                         |



| Distribution Artifacts                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Notes                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | – <a href="#">Independent Mode</a> page in this Guide.                                                                                                                 |
| .../bulkconfig/integrated/ccadv-wa-bulkload/                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | The CCAdv/WA bulk configuration tool for deployments in which you have specified the integrated configuration mode for CCAdv and WA.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | To use the CCAdv/WA bulk configuration tool, see instructions on the <a href="#">CCAdv/WA Bulk Configuration</a> – <a href="#">Integrated Mode</a> page in this Guide. |
| <b>metric-graphing-database-sql/mssql-...</b><br>mg-new-database-<version>.sql                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>The creation script for the metric graphing database on MS SQL.</p> <p>This script is located in the metric-graphing-database-sql directory.</p> <p>The IP includes the following folders:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>mssql-standard (for installations that use MS SQL Standard Edition)</li> <li>mssql-enterprise (for installations that use MS SQL Enterprise Edition)</li> </ul> <p>Ensure you use the files from the folder that corresponds to your edition of Microsoft SQL Server.</p>                               |                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>metric-graphing-database-sql/oracle-...</b><br>mg-<version>_INMEMORY.sql<br>mg-<version>_NO_INMEMORY.sql<br>mg-<version>_ObjectsCustom.sql<br>mg-<version>_ObjectsDefault.sql<br>mg-<version>_ObjectsPlus.sql<br>mg-<version>_Schema.sql<br>mg-<version>_TBS.sql<br>mg-<version>_User.sql<br>migrate_mg_<from-version>_<to-version>.sql | <p>The creation scripts for the metric graphing database on Oracle.</p> <p>The scripts are located in the metric-graphing-database-sql directory.</p> <p>The IP includes the following folders:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>oracle-without-partitions (for installations that use Oracle without the partitioning option)</li> <li>oracle-with-partitions (for installations that use Oracle with the partitioning option)</li> </ul> <p>Ensure you use the files from the folder that corresponds to your edition of Oracle.</p> | For additional details, see the Readme file, if present. Otherwise, see the <a href="#">Release Notes</a> .                                                            |



| Distribution Artifacts | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Notes |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
|                        | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. <code>_Schema.sql</code><br/>Creates the Platform user, schema, and all database objects. To be executed by a database user who has permission to create other users. An alternate script that replaces, and has the same purpose as <code>...User.sql</code> and <code>...ObjectsPlus.sql</code> combined.</li> <li>2. <code>..._TBS.sql</code><br/>To be executed by a database user who has permission to create tablespaces. The script generates a resulting script, <code>runTbsCre.sql</code>, based on the user dialog input. The script issues a prompt that allows you to postpone execution of the generated resulting script. If necessary, the resulting script can be customized to meet your needs and environment and executed later. A minimum requirement is to create at least one user default tablespace and a separate user temporary tablespace exclusively for the CCA/WA metric graphing user/schema. Note, the sizing must be adjusted before the script execution.<br/><br/>In most cases tablespaces are created by your DBA. The file can be used for DBA information as it shows sizing and possible table distribution among multiple tablespaces. If created by the DBA, the DBA provides the tablespaces information to the engineer who proceeds with the installation.</li> <li>3. <code>..._User.sql</code><br/>Creates the CCAAdv/WA metrics graphing user and schema. To be executed by a database user who has permission to create other users. In most cases, users are created by your DBA. The file can be used as is or for DBA information as it shows user permission and tablespace requirements. If the user/schema is created by the DBA, the DBA provides the relevant information to the engineer who proceeds with the installation.</li> <li>4. <code>..._ObjectsPlus.sql</code><br/>An SQL*Plus script that creates all CCA/WA database objects necessary for metrics graphing. To be executed by the previously-created CCAAdv/WA metric graphing user and after all planned</li> </ol> |       |



| Distribution Artifacts | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Notes |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
|                        | <p>tablespaces are created.</p> <p>5. ..._ObjectsCustom.sql<br/>An alternate script that has the same purpose as ..._ObjectsPlus.sql, but can be executed from Oracle Sql Developer by the previously-created CCAdv/WA metric graphing user and after all planned tablespaces are created. The script allows table and index distribution among multiple tablespaces by issuing pop-up prompts.</p> <p>6. ..._ObjectsDefault.sql<br/>An alternate script similar to ..._ObjectsCustom.sql that has the same purpose as ..._ObjectsPlus.sql. To be executed from Oracle Sql Developer by the previously-created CCAdv/WA metric graphing user. The script does not issue any pop-up prompts and creates all platform database objects in the Platform user default tablespace assigned during Platform user creation.</p> <p>7. ..._INMEMORY.sql<br/>You use this script if you run the Oracle 12C In-Memory option. For information about using this script, see <a href="#">Migrating Databases to Advisors Release 8.5.2</a> in the <i>Genesys Performance Management Advisors Migration Guide</i>.</p> <p>8. ..._NO_INMEMORY.sql<br/>You use this script to revert the changes to the metrics schema if you previously executed the ..._INMEMORY.sql script. For information about using this script, see <a href="#">Migrating Databases to Advisors Release 8.5.2</a> in the <i>Genesys Performance Management Advisors Migration Guide</i>.</p> <p>9. migrate_mg_8.5.101.15_8.5.202.09.sql<br/>A metric graphing migration script applicable to any release between 8.5.101.15 and 8.5.102.</p> |       |

## [+] Advisors Genesys Adapter

| Distribution Artifacts       | Contents | Notes                              |
|------------------------------|----------|------------------------------------|
| aga-installer-<version >.jar |          | The installer for Genesys Adapter. |
| configuration-schema/mssql/  |          | The creation and migration script  |



| Distribution Artifacts                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Notes                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| gc_metrics_db_<version>.sql                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | for an Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database on MS SQL.                                           |
| <b>configuration-schema/oracle</b><br>gc_metrics_<version>_INMEMORY.sql<br>gc_metrics_<version>_NO_INMEMORY.sql<br>gc_metrics_<version>_ObjectsCustom.sql<br>gc_metrics_<version>_ObjectsDefault.sql<br>gc_metrics_<version>_ObjectsPlus.sql<br>gc_metrics_<version>_Schema.sql<br>gc_metrics_<version>_TBS.sql<br>gc_metrics_<version>_User.sql | <p>1. ..._TBS.sql<br/>To be executed by a database user who has permission to create tablespaces. The script contains some sizing recommendations. The sizing must be adjusted before the script execution. The script issues a prompt that allows you to postpone the actual tablespace creation. Instead, a resulting script, runTbsCre.sql, is generated based on the user dialog input. If necessary, the resulting script can be customized to the needs of the environment and executed later. A minimum requirement is to create at least one user default tablespace and a separate user temporary tablespace exclusively for AGA metrics user/schema.</p> <p>In most cases, tablespaces are created by your DBA. If created by the DBA, the DBA provides the tablespaces information to the engineer who proceeds with the installation.</p> <p>2. ..._User.sql<br/>Creates the AGA metrics user and schema. To be executed by a database user who has permission to create other users. In most cases, users are created by your DBA. The file can be used as is or for DBA information as it shows user</p> | <p>The creation and migration scripts for an Advisors Genesys Adapter metrics database on Oracle.</p> |



| Distribution Artifacts | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Notes |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
|                        | <p>permission and tablespace requirements. If the user/schema is created by the DBA, the DBA provides the relevant information to the engineer who proceeds with the installation.</p> <p>3. ..._ObjectsPlus.sql<br/>An SQL*Plus script that creates all AGA metrics DB objects. To be executed by the previously-created AGA metrics user and after all the planned tablespaces are created.</p> <p>4. ..._ObjectsCustom.sql<br/>An alternate script that has the same purpose as ..._ObjectsPlus.sql, but can be executed from Oracle Sql Developer by the previously-created AGA metrics user and after all the planned tablespaces are created. The script allows table and index distribution among multiple tablespaces by issuing pop-up prompts.</p> <p>5. ..._ObjectsDefault.sql<br/>An alternate script similar to ..._ObjectsCustom.sql that has the same purpose as ..._ObjectsPlus.sql. To be executed from Oracle Sql Developer by the previously-created Platform user. The script does not issue any pop-up prompts and creates all AGA metrics database objects in the Platform user default tablespace assigned during Platform user creation.</p> |       |



| Distribution Artifacts | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Notes |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
|                        | <p>6. ..._INMEMORY.sql<br/>You use this script if you run the Oracle 12C In-Memory option. For information about using this script, see <a href="#">Migrating Databases to Advisors Release 8.5.2</a> in the <i>Genesys Performance Management Advisors Migration Guide</i>.</p> <p>7. ..._NO_INMEMORY.sql<br/>You use this script to revert the changes to the metrics schema if you previously executed the ..._INMEMORY.sql script. For information about using this script, see <a href="#">Migrating Databases to Advisors Release 8.5.2</a> in the <i>Genesys Performance Management Advisors Migration Guide</i>.</p> <p>8. ..._Schema.sql<br/>Creates the AGA metrics user, schema, and all database objects. To be executed by a database user who has permission to create other users. An alternate script that replaces, and has the same purpose as, ...User.sql and ...ObjectsPlus.sql combined.</p> |       |

## [+] Contact Center Advisor/Workforce Advisor

| Distribution Artifacts           | Contents                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ccadv-wa-installer-<version>.jar | The installation file for the Contact Center Advisor (CCAdv) XML Generator application, Workforce Advisor (WA) server, CCAdv accessibility services (optional), WA accessibility services (optional), and the Resource Management Console (optional). | <p>For detailed information about the CCAdv/WA installation wizard, see <a href="#">Deploying CCAdv and WA</a>.</p> <p>In release 8.5.2, you deploy the CCAdv and WA dashboards (Advisors Web services) using the Advisors Platform installation wizard; see also <a href="#">Advisors Platform software distribution contents</a>,</p> |



---

| Distribution Artifacts | Contents | Notes  |
|------------------------|----------|--------|
|                        |          | above. |

**[+] Frontline Advisor**

| Distribution Artifacts            | Contents                                                     | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| fa-server-installer-<version>.jar | The installation file for the Frontline Advisor (FA) server. | <p>For detailed information about the FA installation wizard, see <a href="#">Deploying Frontline Advisor</a>.</p> <p>In release 8.5.2, you deploy the Frontline Advisor dashboard (Advisors Web services) using the Advisors Platform installation wizard; see also <a href="#">Advisors Platform software distribution contents</a>, above.</p> <p>Agent Advisor is discontinued starting with Advisors release 8.5.2.</p> |